



WORLD HEALTH ORGANIZATION
INTERNATIONAL AGENCY FOR RESEARCH ON CANCER

IARC MONOGRAPHS
ON THE
EVALUATION OF THE
CARCINOGENIC RISK
OF CHEMICALS TO HUMANS

Tobacco Habits Other than Smoking;
Betel-Quid and Areca-Nut Chewing;
and Some Related Nitrosamines

VOLUME 37

This publication represents the views and expert opinions
of an IARC Working Group on the
Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans
which met in Lyon,

23-30 October 1984

September 1985

IARC MONOGRAPHS

In 1969, the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) initiated a programme on the evaluation of the carcinogenic risk of chemicals to humans involving the production of critically evaluated monographs on individual chemicals. In 1980, the programme was expanded to include the evaluation of the carcinogenic risk associated with exposures to complex mixtures.

The objective of the programme is to elaborate and publish in the form of monographs critical reviews of data on carcinogenicity for chemicals and complex mixtures to which humans are known to be exposed, and on specific occupational exposures, to evaluate these data in terms of human risk with the help of international working groups of experts in chemical carcinogenesis and related fields, and to indicate where additional research efforts are needed.

This project was supported by PHS Grant No. 1 UO1 CA33193-03 awarded by the US National Cancer Institute, Department of Health and Human Services.

© International Agency for Research on Cancer 1985

ISBN 92 832 1237 1 (soft-cover edition)

ISBN 92 832 1537 0 (hard-cover edition)

ISSN 0250-9555

Distributed for the International Agency for Research on Cancer by the Secretariat of the World Health Organization

PRINTED IN FRANCE

NO

LIS

PRE

E

C

S

V

E

I

C

GE

TH

SL

CL

CONTENTS

NOTE TO THE READER	5
LIST OF PARTICIPANTS	7
PREAMBLE	11
Background	11
Objective and Scope	11
Selection of Chemicals and Complex Exposures for Monographs	12
Working Procedures	12
Data for Evaluations	13
The Working Group	13
General Principles	13
Explanatory Notes on the Monograph Contents	20
GENERAL REMARKS ON THE HABITS AND SUBSTANCES CONSIDERED	31
THE MONOGRAPHS	
Tobacco habits other than smoking	37
Betel-quid and areca-nut chewing	141
Glossary	201
Some related nitrosamines	
4-(Methylnitrosamino)-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal (NNA)	205
4-(Methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (NNK)	209
<i>N</i> '-Nitrosoanabasine (NAB)	225
<i>N</i> '-Nitrosoanatabine (NAT)	233
<i>N</i> '-Nitrosornicotine (NNN)	241
Some <i>N</i> -nitrosamines derived from areca-nut alkaloids.....	263
3-Methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde (MNPA)	
3-Methylnitrosaminopropionitrile (MNPN)	
<i>N</i> -Nitrosoguvacine (NGC)	
<i>N</i> -Nitrosoguvacoline (NGL)	
SUPPLEMENTARY CORRIGENDA TO VOLUMES 1-36	269
CUMULATIVE INDEX TO THE MONOGRAPH SERIES	271

**IARC WORKING GROUP ON THE EVALUATION OF THE
CARCINOGENIC RISK OF CHEMICALS TO HUMANS:
TOBACCO HABITS OTHER THAN SMOKING;
BETEL-QUID AND ARECA-NUT CHEWING;
AND SOME RELATED NITROSAMINES**

Lyon, 23-30 October 1984

Members¹

- S.V. Bhide, Head, Carcinogenesis Division, Cancer Research Institute, Tata Memorial Centre, Parel, Bombay 400012, India
- E. Boyland, TUC Centenary Institute of Occupational Health, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, Keppel Street (Gower Street), London WC1E 7HT, UK
- D.L. Davis, Director, Tobacco and Health Research Institute, University of Kentucky, Lexington, KY 40406, USA
- P.C. Gupta, Tata Institute of Fundamental Research, Basic Dental Research Unit, Homi Bhabha Road, Bombay 400005, India
- S.S. Hecht, Chief, Division of Chemical Carcinogenesis, Naylor Dana Institute for Disease Prevention, American Health Foundation, Dana Road, Valhalla, NY 10595, USA
- J.M. Hirsch, Head, Public Dental Service, Oral Surgery, Emergency Clinic, Stampgatan 2, 411 01 Göteborg, Sweden
- D. Hoffmann, Associate Director, Naylor Dana Institute for Disease Prevention, American Health Foundation, Dana Road, Valhalla, NY 10595, USA
- E. Huberman, Director, Division of Biological and Medical Research, Argonne National Laboratory, 9700 South Case Avenue, Argonne, IL 60439, USA

¹Unable to attend: N.A. Jafarey, Department of Pathology, Jinnah Postgraduate Medical Centre, Karachi, Pakistan

D.G. Kaufman, Department of Pathology, The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Preclinical Educational Building 228 H, Chapel Hill, NC 27514, USA

A. Knaap, Laboratory for Carcinogenesis and Mutagenesis, National Institute of Public Health and Environmental Hygiene, PO Box 1, 3720 BA Bilthoven, The Netherlands

P.N. Magee, Director, Fels Research Institute, Temple University, School of Medicine, 3420 North Broad St, Philadelphia, PA 19140, USA (*Chairman*)

A.J. McMichael, CSIRO, Division of Human Nutrition, Kintore Avenue, Adelaide, SA 5000, Australia

J.J. Pindborg, Professor of Oral Pathology, Royal Dental College, Blegdamsvej 3C, 2200 Copenhagen N, Denmark

J.M. Ratcliffe, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, R.A. Taft Laboratories, 4676 Columbia Parkway, Cincinnati, OH 45226, USA

J.K. Reddy, Department of Pathology, Northwestern University, The Medical School, Ward Memorial Building, 303 East Chicago Avenue, Chicago, IL 60611, USA

H.F. Stich, Head, Environmental Carcinogenesis Unit, British Columbia Cancer Research Centre, 601 West 10th Avenue, Vancouver BC V5Z 1L3, Canada

P.F. Swann, Courtauld Institute of Biochemistry, Middlesex Hospital Medical School, Mortimer Street, London W1P 7PN, UK

S.R. Tannenbaum, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 56-311, Department of Nutrition and Food Science, 77 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA

V. Turusov, Cancer Research Centre, USSR Academy of Medical Sciences, Karshirskoye Shosse 24, 115478 Moscow, USSR (*Vice-Chairman*)

Representative of the National Cancer Institute

D.M. Winn, Environmental Epidemiology Branch, National Cancer Institute, Landow Building, Room 3C16, Bethesda, MD 20205, USA

Representative of SRI International

K.E. McCaleb, Director, Chemical-Environmental Department, SRI International, 333 Ravenswood Avenue, Menlo Park, CA 94025, USA

PARTICIPANTS

9

Observers

A. Englund, Bygghalsän, Box 26055, 10041 Stockholm, Sweden

B.H. MacGibbon, Senior Principal Medical Officer, Department of Health and Social Security, Hannibal House, Elephant and Castle, London SE1 6TE, UK

S. Olin, Tracor Jitco, Inc., 1601 Research Boulevard, Rockville, MD 20850, USA

K. Stanley, Cancer Unit, WHO, 1211 Geneva 27, Switzerland

M.-Th. van der Venne, Health and Safety Directorate, Commission of the European Communities, Bâtiment Jean Monnet (C4/83), 2920 Luxembourg, Grand Duchy of Luxembourg

Secretariat

H. Bartsch, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis

J.R.P. Cabral, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis

M. Friesen, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis

L. Haroun, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis (*Secretary*)

E. Heseltine, Editorial and Publications Services

J. Kaldor, Division of Epidemiology and Biostatistics

D. Miettinen, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis

R. Montesano, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis

C.S. Muir, Division of Epidemiology and Biostatistics

J. Nair, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis

I. O'Neill, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis

C. Partensky, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis

I. Peterschmitt, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis, Geneva, Switzerland

S. Poole, Birmingham, UK

E. Riboli, Division of Epidemiology and Biostatistics

L. Simonato, Division of Epidemiology and Biostatistics

L. Tomatis, Director

H. Vainio, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis (*Head of the Programme*)

J. Wahrendorf, Division of Epidemiology and Biostatistics

J. Wilbourn, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis

H. Yamasaki, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis

D. Zaridze, Division of Epidemiology and Biostatistics

Secretarial assistance

J. Cazeaux

M.-J. Ghes

M. Lézre

S. Reynaud

K. Zouhair

IARC MONOGRAPHS PROGRAMME ON THE EVALUATION OF THE CARCINOGENIC RISK OF CHEMICALS TO HUMANS¹

PREAMBLE

1. BACKGROUND

In 1969, the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) initiated a programme to evaluate the carcinogenic risk of chemicals to humans and to produce monographs on individual chemicals. Following the recommendations of an ad-hoc Working Group, which met in Lyon in 1979 to prepare criteria to select chemicals for *IARC Monographs* (1), the *Monographs* programme was expanded to include consideration of exposures to complex mixtures which may occur, for example, in many occupations or as a result of human habits.

The criteria established in 1971 to evaluate carcinogenic risk to humans were adopted by all the working groups whose deliberations resulted in the first 16 volumes of the *IARC Monographs* series. This preamble reflects subsequent re-evaluation of those criteria by working groups which met in 1977(2), 1978(3), 1982(4) and 1983(5).

2. OBJECTIVE AND SCOPE

The objective of the programme is to elaborate and publish in the form of monographs critical reviews of data on carcinogenicity for chemicals, groups of chemicals, industrial processes and other complex mixtures to which humans are known to be exposed, to evaluate the data in terms of human risk with the help of international working groups of experts, and to indicate where additional research efforts are needed. These evaluations are intended to assist national and international authorities in formulating decisions concerning preventive measures. No recommendation is given concerning legislation, since this depends on risk-benefit evaluations, which seem best made by individual governments and/or other international agencies.

The *IARC Monographs* are recognized as an authoritative source of information on the carcinogenicity of environmental and other chemicals. A users' survey, made in 1984, indicated that the monographs are consulted by various agencies in 45 countries. As of July

¹This project is supported by PHS Grant No. 1 U01 CA33193-03 awarded by the US National Cancer Institute, Department of Health and Human Services.

1985, 37 volumes of the *Monographs* had been published or were in press. Four supplements have been published: two summaries of evaluations of chemicals associated with human cancer, an evaluation of screening assays for carcinogens, and a cross index of synonyms and trade names of chemicals evaluated in the series(6).

3. SELECTION OF CHEMICALS AND COMPLEX EXPOSURES FOR MONOGRAPHS

The chemicals (natural and synthetic, including those which occur as mixtures and in manufacturing processes) and complex exposures are selected for evaluation on the basis of two main criteria: (a) there is evidence of human exposure, and (b) there is some experimental evidence of carcinogenicity and/or there is some evidence or suspicion of a risk to humans. In certain instances, chemical analogues are also considered. The scientific literature is surveyed for published data relevant to the *Monographs* programme; and the IARC *Survey of Chemicals Being Tested for Carcinogenicity*(7) often indicates those chemicals that may be scheduled for future meetings.

As new data on chemicals for which monographs have already been prepared become available, re-evaluations are made at subsequent meetings, and revised monographs are published.

4. WORKING PROCEDURES

Approximately one year in advance of a meeting of a working group, a list of the substances or complex exposures to be considered is prepared by IARC staff in consultation with other experts. Subsequently, all relevant biological data are collected by IARC; recognized sources of information on chemical carcinogenesis and systems such as CANCERLINE, MEDLINE and TOXLINE are used in conjunction with US Public Health Service Publication No. 149(8). The major collection of data and the preparation of first drafts for the sections on chemical and physical properties, on production and use, on occurrence, and on analysis are carried out by SRI International, Menlo Park, CA, USA, under a separate contract with the US National Cancer Institute. Most of the data so obtained refer to the USA and Japan; IARC supplements this information with that from other sources in Europe. Representatives from industrial associations may assist in the preparation of sections describing industrial processes. Bibliographical sources for data on mutagenicity and teratogenicity are the Environmental Mutagen Information Center and the Environmental Teratology Information Center, both located at the Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, TN, USA.

Six months before the meeting, reprints of articles containing relevant biological data are sent to an expert(s), or are used by IARC staff, to prepare first drafts of monographs. These drafts are then compiled by IARC staff and sent, prior to the meeting, to all participants of the Working Group for their comments.

The Working Group then meets in Lyon for seven to eight days to discuss and finalize the texts of the monographs and to formulate the evaluations. After the meeting, the master copy of each monograph is verified by consulting the original literature, then edited by a professional editor and prepared for reproduction. The aim is to publish monographs within nine months of the Working Group meeting. Each volume of monographs is printed in 4000 copies for distribution to governments, regulatory agencies and interested scientists. The monographs are also available via the WHO Distribution and Sales Service.

5. DATA FOR EVALUATIONS

With regard to biological data, only reports that have been published or accepted for publication are reviewed by the working groups, although a few exceptions have been made; in certain instances, reports from government agencies that have undergone peer review and are widely available are considered. The monographs do not cite all of the literature on a particular chemical or complex exposure: only those data considered by the Working Group to be relevant to the evaluation of carcinogenic risk to humans are included.

Anyone who is aware of data that have been published or are in press which are relevant to the evaluations of the carcinogenic risk to humans of chemicals or complex exposures for which monographs have appeared is asked to make them available to the Unit of Carcinogen Identification and Evaluation, Division of Environmental Carcinogenesis, International Agency for Research on Cancer, Lyon, France.

6. THE WORKING GROUP

The tasks of the Working Group are five-fold: (a) to ascertain that all data have been collected; (b) to select the data relevant for evaluation; (c) to ensure that the summaries of the data enable the reader to follow the reasoning of the Working Group; (d) to judge the significance of the results of experimental and epidemiological studies; and (e) to make an evaluation of the carcinogenicity of the chemical or complex exposure.

Working Group participants who contributed to the consideration and evaluation of chemicals or complex exposures within a particular volume are listed, with their addresses, at the beginning of each publication. Each member serves as an individual scientist and not as a representative of any organization or government. In addition, observers are often invited from national and international agencies and industrial associations.

7. GENERAL PRINCIPLES APPLIED BY THE WORKING GROUP IN EVALUATING CARCINOGENIC RISK OF CHEMICALS OR COMPLEX MIXTURES

The widely accepted meaning of the term 'chemical carcinogenesis', and that used in these monographs, is the induction by chemicals (or complex mixtures of chemicals) of neoplasms that are not usually observed, the earlier induction of neoplasms that are commonly observed, and/or the induction of more neoplasms than are usually found - although fundamentally different mechanisms may be involved in these three situations. Etymologically, the term 'carcinogenesis' means the induction of cancer, that is, of malignant neoplasms; however, the commonly accepted meaning is the induction of various types of neoplasms or of a combination of malignant and benign tumours. In the monographs, the words 'tumour' and 'neoplasm' are used interchangeably. (In the scientific literature, the terms 'tumorigen', 'oncogen' and 'blastomogen' have all been used synonymously with 'carcinogen', although occasionally 'tumorigen' has been used specifically to denote a substance that induces benign tumours.)

(a) Experimental Evidence**(i) Evidence for carcinogenicity in experimental animals**

The Working Group considers various aspects of the experimental evidence reported in the literature and formulates an evaluation of that evidence.

Qualitative aspects: Both the interpretation and evaluation of a particular study as well as the overall assessment of the carcinogenic activity of a chemical (or complex mixture) involve several considerations of qualitative importance, including: (a) the experimental parameters under which the chemical was tested, including route of administration and exposure, species, strain, sex, age, etc.; (b) the consistency with which the chemical has been shown to be carcinogenic, e.g., in how many species and at which target organ(s); (c) the spectrum of neoplastic response, from benign neoplasm to multiple malignant tumours; (d) the stage of tumour formation in which a chemical may be involved: some chemicals act as complete carcinogens and have initiating and promoting activity, while others may have promoting activity only; and (e) the possible role of modifying factors.

There are problems not only of differential survival but of differential toxicity, which may be manifested by unequal growth and weight gain in treated and control animals. These complexities are also considered in the interpretation of data.

Many chemicals induce both benign and malignant tumours. Among chemicals that have been studied extensively, there are few instances in which the neoplasms induced are only benign. Benign tumours may represent a stage in the evolution of a malignant neoplasm or they may be 'end-points' that do not readily undergo transition to malignancy. If a substance is found to induce only benign tumours in experimental animals, it should nevertheless be suspected of being a carcinogen, and it requires further investigation.

Hormonal carcinogenesis: Hormonal carcinogenesis presents certain distinctive features: the chemicals involved occur both endogenously and exogenously; in many instances, long exposure is required; and tumours occur in the target tissue in association with a stimulation of non-neoplastic growth, although in some cases hormones promote the proliferation of tumour cells in a target organ. For hormones that occur in excessive amounts, for hormone-mimetic agents and for agents that cause hyperactivity or imbalance in the endocrine system, evaluative methods comparable with those used to identify chemical carcinogens may be required; particular emphasis must be laid on quantitative aspects and duration of exposure. Some chemical carcinogens have significant side effects on the endocrine system, which may also result in hormonal carcinogenesis. Synthetic hormones and anti-hormones can be expected to possess other pharmacological and toxicological actions in addition to those on the endocrine system, and in this respect they must be treated like any other chemical with regard to intrinsic carcinogenic potential.

Complex mixtures: There is an increasing amount of data from long-term carcinogenicity studies on complex mixtures and on crude materials obtained by sampling in occupational environments. The representativity of such samples must be considered carefully.

Quantitative aspects: Dose-response studies are important in the evaluation of carcinogenesis: the confidence with which a carcinogenic effect can be established is strengthened by the observation of an increasing incidence of neoplasms with increasing exposure.

The assessment of carcinogenicity in animals is frequently complicated by recognized differences among the test animals (species, strain, sex, age), and route and schedule of administration; often, the target organ at which a cancer occurs and its histological type may vary with these parameters. Nevertheless, indices of carcinogenic potency in particular experimental systems (for instance, the dose-rate required under continuous exposure to halve the probability of the animals remaining tumourless(9)) have been formulated in the hope that, at least among categories of fairly similar agents, such indices may be of some predictive value in other species, including humans.

Chemical carcinogens share many common biological properties, which include metabolism to reactive (electrophilic(10-11)) intermediates capable of interacting with DNA. However, they may differ widely in the dose required to produce a given level of tumour induction. The reason for this variation in dose-response is not understood, but it may be due to differences in metabolic activation and detoxification processes, in different DNA repair capacities among various organs and species or to the operation of qualitatively distinct mechanisms.

Statistical analysis of animal studies: It is possible that an animal may die prematurely from unrelated causes, so that tumours that would have arisen had the animal lived longer may not be observed; this possibility must be allowed for. Various analytical techniques have been developed which use the assumption of independence of competing risks to allow for the effects of intercurrent mortality on the final numbers of tumour-bearing animals in particular treatment groups.

For externally visible tumours and for neoplasms that cause death, methods such as Kaplan-Meier (i.e., 'life-table', 'product-limit' or 'actuarial') estimates(9), with associated significance tests(12,13), have been recommended. For internal neoplasms that are discovered 'incidentally'(12) at autopsy but that did not cause the death of the host, different estimates(14) and significance tests(12,13) may be necessary for the unbiased study of the numbers of tumour-bearing animals.

The design and statistical analysis of long-term carcinogenicity experiments were reviewed in Supplement 2 to the *Monographs* series(15). That review outlined the way in which the context of observation of a given tumour (fatal or incidental) could be included in an analysis yielding a single combined result. This method requires information on time to death for each animal and is therefore comparable to only a limited extent with analyses which include global proportions of tumour-bearing animals.

Evaluation of carcinogenicity studies in experimental animals: The evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals is assessed by the Working Group and judged to fall into one of four groups, defined as follows:

- (1) *Sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity is provided when there is an increased incidence of malignant tumours: (a) in multiple species or strains; or (b) in multiple experiments (preferably with different routes of administration or using different dose levels); or (c) to an unusual degree with regard to incidence, site or type of tumour, or age at onset. Additional evidence may be provided by data on dose-response effects.
- (2) *Limited evidence* of carcinogenicity is available when the data suggest a carcinogenic effect but are limited because: (a) the studies involve a single species, strain or experiment; or (b) the experiments are restricted by inadequate dosage levels,

inadequate duration of exposure to the agent, inadequate period of follow-up, poor survival, too few animals, or inadequate reporting; or (c) the neoplasms produced often occur spontaneously and, in the past, have been difficult to classify as malignant by histological criteria alone (e.g., lung adenomas and adenocarcinomas, and liver tumours in certain strains of mice).

- (3) *Inadequate evidence* is available when, because of major qualitative or quantitative limitations, the studies cannot be interpreted as showing either the presence or absence of a carcinogenic effect.
- (4) *No evidence* applies when several adequate studies are available which show that, within the limits of the tests used, the chemical or complex mixture is not carcinogenic.

It should be noted that the categories *sufficient evidence* and *limited evidence* refer only to the strength of the experimental evidence that these chemicals or complex mixtures are carcinogenic and not to the extent of their carcinogenic activity nor to the mechanism involved. The classification of any chemical may change as new information becomes available.

(ii) *Evidence for activity in short-term tests*¹

Many short-term tests bearing on postulated mechanisms of carcinogenesis or on the properties of known carcinogens have been developed in recent years. The induction of cancer is thought to proceed by a series of steps, some of which have been distinguished experimentally (16-20). The first step — initiation — is thought to involve damage to DNA, resulting in heritable alterations in or rearrangements of genetic information. Most short-term tests in common use today are designed to evaluate the genetic activity of a substance. Data from these assays are useful for identifying potential carcinogenic hazards, in identifying active metabolites of known carcinogens in human or animal body fluids, and in helping to elucidate mechanisms of carcinogenesis. Short-term tests to detect agents with tumour-promoting activity are, at this time, insufficiently developed.

Because of the large number of short-term tests, it is difficult to establish rigid criteria for adequacy that would be applicable to all studies. General considerations relevant to all tests, however, include (a) that the test system be valid with respect to known animal carcinogens and noncarcinogens; (b) that the experimental parameters under which the chemical (or complex mixture) is tested include a sufficiently wide dose range and duration of exposure to the agent and an appropriate metabolic system; (c) that appropriate controls be used; and (d) that the purity of the compound or, in the case of complex mixtures, the source and representativity of the sample being tested be specified. Confidence in positive results is increased if a dose-response relationship is demonstrated and if this effect has been reported in two or more independent studies.

Most established short-term tests employ as end-points well-defined genetic markers in prokaryotes and lower eukaryotes and in mammalian cell lines. The tests can be grouped according to the end-point detected:

Tests of DNA damage. These include tests for covalent binding to DNA, induction of DNA breakage or repair, induction of prophage in bacteria and differential survival of DNA repair-proficient/-deficient strains of bacteria.

¹Based on the recommendations of a Working Group which met in 1983(5).

Tests of *mutation* (measurement of heritable alterations in phenotype and/or genotype). These include tests for detection of the loss or alteration of a gene product, and change of function through forward or reverse mutation, recombination and gene conversion; they may involve the nuclear genome, the mitochondrial genome and resident viral or plasmid genomes.

Tests of *chromosomal effects*. These include tests for detection of changes in chromosome number (aneuploidy), structural chromosomal aberrations, sister chromatid exchanges, micronuclei and dominant-lethal events. This classification does not imply that some chromosomal effects are not mutational events.

Tests for *cell transformation*, which monitor the production of preneoplastic or neoplastic cells in culture, are also of importance because they attempt to simulate essential steps in cellular carcinogenesis. These assays are not grouped with those listed above since the mechanisms by which chemicals induce cell transformation may not necessarily be the result of genetic change.

The selection of specific tests and end-points for consideration remains flexible and should reflect the most advanced state of knowledge in this field.

The data from short-term tests are summarized by the Working Group and the test results tabulated according to the end-points detected and the biological complexities of the test systems. The format of the table used is shown below. In these tables, a '+' indicates that the compound was judged by the Working Group to be significantly positive in one or more assays for the specific end-point and level of biological complexity; '-' indicates that it was judged to be negative in one or more assays; and '?' indicates that there were contradictory results from different laboratories or in different biological systems, or that the result was judged to be equivocal. These judgements reflect the assessment by the Working Group of the quality of the data (including such factors as the purity of the test compound, problems of metabolic activation and appropriateness of the test system) and the relative significance of the component tests.

Overall assessment of data from short-term tests

	Genetic activity			Cell transformation
	DNA damage	Mutation	Chromosomal effects	
Prokaryotes				
Fungi/green plants				
Insects				
Mammalian cells (in vitro)				
Mammals (in vivo)				
Humans (in vivo)				

An overall assessment of the evidence for *genetic activity* is then made on the basis of the entries in the table, and the evidence is judged to fall into one of four categories, defined as follows:

- (i) *Sufficient evidence* is provided by at least three positive entries, one of which must involve mammalian cells *in vitro* or *in vivo* and which must include at least two of three end-points — DNA damage, mutation and chromosomal effects.
- (ii) *Limited evidence* is provided by at least two positive entries.
- (iii) *Inadequate evidence* is available when there is only one positive entry or when there are too few data to permit an evaluation of an absence of genetic activity or when there are unexplained, inconsistent findings in different test systems.
- (iv) *No evidence* applies when there are only negative entries; these must include entries for at least two end-points and two levels of biological complexity, one of which must involve mammalian cells *in vitro* or *in vivo*.

It is emphasized that the above definitions are operational, and that the assignment of a chemical or complex mixture into one of these categories is thus arbitrary.

In general, emphasis is placed on positive results; however, in view of the limitations of current knowledge about mechanisms of carcinogenesis, certain cautions should be respected: (i) At present, short-term tests should not be used by themselves to conclude whether or not an agent is carcinogenic, nor can they predict reliably the relative potencies of compounds as carcinogens in intact animals. (ii) Since the currently available tests do not detect all classes of agents that are active in the carcinogenic process (e.g., hormones), one must be cautious in utilizing these tests as the sole criterion for setting priorities in carcinogenesis research and in selecting compounds for animal bioassays. (iii) Negative results from short-term tests cannot be considered as evidence to rule out carcinogenicity, nor does lack of demonstrable genetic activity attribute an epigenetic or any other property to a substance(5).

(b) Evaluation of Carcinogenicity in Humans

Evidence of carcinogenicity can be derived from case reports, descriptive epidemiological studies and analytical epidemiological studies.

An analytical study that shows a positive association between an exposure and a cancer may be interpreted as implying causality to a greater or lesser extent, on the basis of the following criteria: (a) There is no identifiable positive bias. (By 'positive bias' is meant the operation of factors in study design or execution that lead erroneously to a more strongly positive association between an exposure and disease than in fact exists. Examples of positive bias include, in case-control studies, better documentation of the exposure for cases than for controls, and, in cohort studies, the use of better means of detecting cancer in exposed individuals than in individuals not exposed.) (b) The possibility of positive confounding has been considered. (By 'positive confounding' is meant a situation in which the relationship between an exposure and a disease is rendered more strongly positive than it truly is as a result of an association between that exposure and another exposure which either causes or prevents the disease. An example of positive confounding is the association between coffee consumption and lung cancer, which results from their joint association with

cigarette smoking.) (c) The association is unlikely to be due to chance alone. (d) The association is strong. (e) There is a dose-response relationship.

In some instances, a single epidemiological study may be strongly indicative of a cause-effect relationship; however, the most convincing evidence of causality comes when several independent studies done under different circumstances result in 'positive' findings.

Analytical epidemiological studies that show no association between an exposure and a cancer ('negative' studies) should be interpreted according to criteria analogous to those listed above: (a) there is no identifiable negative bias; (b) the possibility of negative confounding has been considered; and (c) the possible effects of misclassification of exposure or outcome have been weighed. In addition, it must be recognized that the probability that a given study can detect a certain effect is limited by its size. This can be perceived from the confidence limits around the estimate of association or relative risk. In a study regarded as 'negative', the upper confidence limit may indicate a relative risk substantially greater than unity; in that case, the study excludes only relative risks that are above the upper limit. This usually means that a 'negative' study must be large to be convincing. Confidence in a 'negative' result is increased when several independent studies carried out under different circumstances are in agreement. Finally, a 'negative' study may be considered to be relevant only to dose levels within or below the range of those observed in the study and is pertinent only if sufficient time has elapsed since first human exposure to the agent. Experience with human cancers of known etiology suggests that the period from first exposure to a chemical carcinogen to development of clinically observed cancer is usually measured in decades and may be in excess of 30 years.

The evidence for carcinogenicity from studies in humans is assessed by the Working Group and judged to fall into one of four groups, defined as follows:

1. *Sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity indicates that there is a causal relationship between the exposure and human cancer.
2. *Limited evidence* of carcinogenicity indicates that a causal interpretation is credible, but that alternative explanations, such as chance, bias or confounding, could not adequately be excluded.
3. *Inadequate evidence*, which applies to both positive and negative evidence, indicates that one of two conditions prevailed: (a) there are few pertinent data; or (b) the available studies, while showing evidence of association, do not exclude chance, bias or confounding.
4. *No evidence* applies when several adequate studies are available which do not show evidence of carcinogenicity.

(c) Relevance of Experimental Data to the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk to Humans

Information compiled from the first 29 volumes of the *IARC Monographs*(4,21,22) shows that, of the chemicals or groups of chemicals now generally accepted to cause or probably to cause cancer in humans, all (with the possible exception of arsenic) of those that have been tested appropriately produce cancer in at least one animal species. For several of the chemicals (e.g., aflatoxins, 4-aminobiphenyl, diethylstilboestrol, melphalan, mustard gas and

vinyl chloride), evidence of carcinogenicity in experimental animals preceded evidence obtained from epidemiological studies or case reports.

For many of the chemicals (or complex mixtures) evaluated in the *IARC Monographs* for which there is *sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity in animals, data relating to carcinogenicity for humans are either insufficient or nonexistent. **In the absence of adequate data on humans, it is reasonable, for practical purposes, to regard chemicals for which there is sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in animals as if they presented a carcinogenic risk to humans.** The use of the expressions 'for practical purposes' and 'as if they presented a carcinogenic risk' indicates that, at the present time, a correlation between carcinogenicity in animals and possible human risk cannot be made on a purely scientific basis, but only pragmatically. Such a pragmatic correlation may be useful to regulatory agencies in making decisions related to the primary prevention of cancer.

In the present state of knowledge, it would be difficult to define a predictable relationship between the dose (mg/kg bw per day) of a particular chemical required to produce cancer in test animals and the dose that would produce a similar incidence of cancer in humans. Some data, however, suggest that such a relationship may exist(23,24), at least for certain classes of carcinogenic chemicals, although no acceptable method is currently available for quantifying the possible errors that may be involved in such an extrapolation procedure.

8. EXPLANATORY NOTES ON THE CONTENTS OF MONOGRAPHS ON CHEMICALS AND COMPLEX MIXTURES

The sections 1 and 2, as outlined below, are those used in monographs on individual chemicals. When relevant, similar information is included in monographs on complex mixtures; additional information is provided as considered necessary.

(a) Chemical and Physical Data (Section 1)

The Chemical Abstracts Services Registry Number, the latest Chemical Abstracts Primary Name (Ninth Collective Index)(25) and the IUPAC Systematic Name(26) are recorded in section 1. Other synonyms and trade names are given, but no comprehensive list is provided. Some of the trade names are those of mixtures in which the compound being evaluated is only one of the ingredients.

The structural and molecular formulae, molecular weight and chemical and physical properties are given. The properties listed refer to the pure substance, unless otherwise specified, and include, in particular, data that might be relevant to carcinogenicity (e.g., lipid solubility) and those that concern identification.

A separate description of the composition of technical products includes available information on impurities and formulated products.

(b) Production, Use, Occurrence and Analysis (Section 2)

The purpose of section 2 is to provide indications of the extent of past and present human exposure to the chemical.

Monographs on occupational exposures to complex mixtures or exposures to complex mixtures resulting from human habits include sections on: historical perspectives; description of the industry or habit; manufacturing processes and use patterns; exposures in the workplace; and chemistry of the complex mixture.

(i) *Synthesis*

Since cancer is a delayed toxic effect, the dates of first synthesis and of first commercial production of the chemical are provided. This information allows a reasonable estimate to be made of the date before which no human exposure could have occurred. In addition, methods of synthesis used in past and present commercial production are described.

(ii) *Production*

Since Europe, Japan and the USA are reasonably representative industrialized areas of the world, most data on production, foreign trade and uses are obtained from those countries. It should not, however, be inferred that those areas or nations are the sole or even the major sources or users of any individual chemical.

Production and foreign-trade data are obtained from both governmental and trade publications by chemical economists in the three geographical areas. In some cases, separate production data on organic chemicals manufactured in the USA are not available because their publication could disclose confidential information. In such cases, an indication of the minimum quantity produced can be inferred from the number of companies reporting commercial production. Each company is required to report on individual chemicals if the sales value or the weight of the annual production exceeds a specified minimum level. These levels vary for chemicals classified for different uses, e.g., medicinals and plastics; in fact, the minimal annual sales value is between \$1000 and \$50 000, and the minimal annual weight of production is between 450 and 22 700 kg. Data on production in some European countries are obtained by means of general questionnaires sent to companies thought to produce the compounds being evaluated. Information from the completed questionnaires is compiled, by country, and the resulting estimates of production are included in the individual monographs.

(iii) *Use*

Information on uses is meant to serve as a guide only and is not complete. It is usually obtained from published data but is often complemented by direct contact with manufacturers of a chemical. In the case of drugs, mention of their therapeutic uses does not necessarily represent current practice nor does it imply judgement as to their clinical efficacy.

Statements concerning regulations and standards (e.g., pesticide registrations, maximum levels permitted in foods, occupational standards and allowable limits) in specific countries are mentioned as examples only. They may not reflect the most recent situation, since such legislation is in a constant state of change; nor should it be taken to imply that other countries do not have similar regulations.

(iv) *Occurrence*

Information on the occurrence of a chemical in the environment is obtained from published data, including that derived from the monitoring and surveillance of levels of the chemical in occupational environments, air, water, soil, foods and tissues of animals and humans. When

no published data are available to the Working Group, unpublished reports, deemed appropriate, may be considered. When available, data on the generation, persistence and bioaccumulation of a chemical are also included.

(v) *Analysis*

The purpose of the section on analysis is to give the reader an indication, rather than a complete review, of methods cited in the literature. No attempt is made to evaluate critically or to recommend any of the methods.

(c) *Biological Data Relevant to the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk to Humans (Section 3)*

In general, the data recorded in section 3 are summarized as given by the author; however, comments made by the Working Group on certain shortcomings of reporting, of statistical analysis or of experimental design are given in square brackets. The nature and extent of impurities/contaminants in the chemicals being tested are given when available.

(i) *Carcinogenicity studies in animals*

The monographs are not intended to cover all reported studies. Some studies are purposely omitted (a) because they are inadequate, as judged from previously described criteria(27-30) (e.g., too short a duration, too few animals, poor survival); (b) because they only confirm findings that have already been fully described; or (c) because they are judged irrelevant for the purpose of the evaluation. In certain cases, however, such studies are mentioned briefly, particularly when the information is considered to be a useful supplement to other reports or when it is the only data available. Their inclusion does not, however, imply acceptance of the adequacy of their experimental design or of the analysis and interpretation of their results.

Mention is made of all routes of administration by which the test material has been adequately tested and of all species in which relevant tests have been done(30). In most cases, animal strains are given. Quantitative data are given to indicate the order of magnitude of the effective carcinogenic doses. In general, the doses and schedules are indicated as they appear in the original; sometimes units have been converted for easier comparison. Experiments in which the compound was administered in conjunction with known carcinogens and experiments on factors that modify the carcinogenic effect are also reported. Experiments on the carcinogenicity of known metabolites and derivatives are also included.

(ii) *Other relevant biological data*

LD₅₀ data are given when available, and other data on toxicity are included when considered relevant.

Data on effects on reproduction, on teratogenicity and embryo- and fetotoxicity, and on placental transfer that derive from studies in experimental animals and from observations in humans are included when considered relevant.

Information is given on absorption, distribution and excretion. Data on metabolism are usually restricted to studies that show the metabolic fate of the chemical in experimental animals and humans, and comparisons of data from animals and humans are made when possible.

Data from short-term tests are also included. In addition to the tests for genetic activity and cell transformation described previously (see pages 16-18), data from studies of related effects, but for which the relevance to the carcinogenic process is less well established, may also be mentioned.

The criteria used for considering short-term tests and for evaluating their results have been described (see pages 16-18). In general, the authors' results are given as reported. An assessment of the data by the Working Group which differs from that of the authors, and comments concerning aspects of the study that might affect its interpretation are given in square brackets. Reports of studies in which few or no experimental details are given, or in which the data on which a reported positive or negative result is based are not available for examination, are cited, but are identified as 'abstract' or 'details not given' and are not considered in the summary tables or in making the overall assessment of genetic activity.

For several recent reviews on short-term tests, see IARC(30), Montesano *et al.*(31), de Serres and Ashby(32), Sugimura *et al.*(33), Bartsch *et al.*(34) and Hollstein *et al.*(35).

(iii) *Case reports and epidemiological studies of carcinogenicity to humans*

Observations in humans are summarized in this section. These include case reports, descriptive epidemiological studies (which correlate cancer incidence in space or time to an exposure) and analytical epidemiological studies of the case-control or cohort type. In principle, a comprehensive coverage is made of observations in humans; however, reports are excluded when judged to be clearly not pertinent. This applies in particular to case reports, in which either the clinico-pathological description of the tumours or the exposure history, or both, are poorly described; and to published routine statistics, for example, of cancer mortality by occupational category, when the categories are so broadly defined as to contribute virtually no specific information on the possible relation between cancer occurrence and a given exposure. Results of studies are assessed on the basis of the data and analyses that are presented in the published papers. Some additional analyses of the published data may be performed by the Working Group to gain better insight into the relation between cancer occurrence and the exposure under consideration. The Working Group may use these analyses in its assessment of the evidence or may actually include them in the text to summarize a study; in such cases, the results of the supplementary analyses are given in square brackets. Any comments by the Working Group are also reported in square brackets; however, these are kept to a minimum, being restricted to those instances in which it is felt that an important aspect of a study, directly impinging on its interpretation, should be brought to the attention of the reader.

(d) *Summary of Data Reported and Evaluation (Section 4)*

Section 4 summarizes the relevant data from animals and humans and gives the critical views of the Working Group on those data.

(i) *Exposures*

Human exposure to the chemical or complex mixture is summarized on the basis of data on production, use and occurrence.

(ii) *Experimental data*

Data relevant to the evaluation of the carcinogenicity of the test material in animals are summarized in this section. The animal species mentioned are those in which the carcinogenicity of the substance was clearly demonstrated. Tumour sites are also indicated. If the substance has produced tumours after prenatal exposure or in single-dose experiments, this is indicated. Dose-response data are given when available.

Significant findings on effects on reproduction and prenatal toxicity, and results from short-term tests for genetic activity and cell transformation assays are summarized, and the latter are presented in tables. An overall assessment is made of the degree of evidence for genetic activity in short-term tests.

(iii) *Human data*

Case reports and epidemiological studies that are considered to be pertinent to an assessment of human carcinogenicity are described. Other biological data that are considered to be relevant are also mentioned.

(iv) *Evaluation*

This section comprises evaluations by the Working Group of the degrees of evidence for carcinogenicity of the exposure to experimental animals and to humans. An overall evaluation is then made of the carcinogenic risk of the chemical or complex mixture to humans. This section should be read in conjunction with pages 15-16 and 18 of this Preamble for definitions of degrees of evidence.

When no data are available from epidemiological studies but there is *sufficient evidence* that the exposure is carcinogenic to animals, a footnote is included, reading: 'In the absence of adequate data on humans, it is reasonable, for practical purposes, to regard chemicals for which there is *sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity in animals as if they presented a carcinogenic risk to humans.'

References

1. IARC (1979) Criteria to select chemicals for *IARC Monographs*. *IARC intern. tech. Rep. No. 79/003*
2. IARC (1977) IARC Monograph Programme on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans. Preamble. *IARC intern. tech. Rep. No. 77/002*
3. IARC (1978) Chemicals with *sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity in experimental animals - *IARC Monographs* volumes 1-17. *IARC intern. tech. Rep. No. 78/003*
4. IARC (1982) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, Supplement 4, *Chemicals, Industrial Processes and Industries Associated with Cancer in Humans* (IARC Monographs Volumes 1 to 29)

5. IARC (1983) Approaches to classifying chemical carcinogens according to mechanism of action. *IARC intern. tech. Rep. No. 83/001*
6. IARC (1972-1983) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, Volumes 1-37, Lyon, France
- Volume 1 (1972) Some Inorganic Substances, Chlorinated Hydrocarbons, Aromatic Amines, *N*-Nitroso Compounds and Natural Products (19 monographs), 184 pages
- Volume 2 (1973) Some Inorganic and Organometallic Compounds (7 monographs), 181 pages
- Volume 3 (1973) Certain Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons and Heterocyclic Compounds (17 monographs), 271 pages
- Volume 4 (1974) Some Aromatic Amines, Hydrazine and Related Substances, *N*-Nitroso Compounds and Miscellaneous Alkylating Agents (28 monographs), 286 pages
- Volume 5 (1974) Some Organochlorine Pesticides (12 monographs), 241 pages
- Volume 6 (1974) Sex Hormones (15 monographs), 243 pages
- Volume 7 (1974) Some Anti-thyroid and Related Substances, Nitrofurans and Industrial Chemicals (23 monographs), 326 pages
- Volume 8 (1975) Some Aromatic Azo Compounds (32 monographs), 357 pages
- Volume 9 (1975) Some Aziridines, *N*-, *S*- and *O*-Mustards and Selenium (24 monographs), 268 pages
- Volume 10 (1976) Some Naturally Occurring Substances (22 monographs), 353 pages
- Volume 11 (1976) Cadmium, Nickel, Some Epoxides, Miscellaneous Industrial Chemicals and General Considerations on Volatile Anaesthetics (24 monographs), 306 pages
- Volume 12 (1976) Some Carbamates, Thiocarbamates and Carbazides (24 monographs), 282 pages
- Volume 13 (1977) Some Miscellaneous Pharmaceutical Substances (17 monographs), 255 pages
- Volume 14 (1977) Asbestos (1 monograph), 106 pages
- Volume 15 (1977) Some Fumigants, the Herbicides, 2,4-D and 2,4,5-T, Chlorinated Dibenzodioxins and Miscellaneous Industrial Chemicals (18 monographs), 354 pages
- Volume 16 (1978) Some Aromatic Amines and Related Nitro Compounds — Hair Dyes, Colouring Agents, and Miscellaneous Industrial Chemicals (32 monographs), 400 pages

- Volume 17 (1978) Some *N*-Nitroso Compounds (17 monographs), 365 pages
- Volume 18 (1978) Polychlorinated Biphenyls and Polybrominated Biphenyls (2 monographs), 140 pages
- Volume 19 (1979) Some Monomers, Plastics and Synthetic Elastomers, and Acrolein (17 monographs), 513 pages
- Volume 20 (1979) Some Halogenated Hydrocarbons (25 monographs), 609 pages
- Volume 21 (1979) Sex Hormones (II) (22 monographs), 583 pages
- Volume 22 (1980) Some Non-Nutritive Sweetening Agents (2 monographs), 208 pages
- Volume 23 (1980) Some Metals and Metallic Compounds (4 monographs), 438 pages
- Volume 24 (1980) Some Pharmaceutical Drugs (16 monographs), 337 pages
- Volume 25 (1981) Wood, Leather and Some Associated Industries (7 monographs), 412 pages
- Volume 26 (1981) Some Antineoplastic and Immunosuppressive Agents (18 monographs), 411 pages
- Volume 27 (1981) Some Aromatic Amines, Anthraquinones and Nitroso Compounds, and Inorganic Fluorides Used in Drinking-Water and Dental Preparations (18 monographs), 344 pages
- Volume 28 (1982) The Rubber Industry (1 monograph), 486 pages
- Volume 29 (1982) Some Industrial Chemicals and Dyestuffs (18 monographs), 416 pages
- Volume 30 (1982) Miscellaneous Pesticides (18 monographs), 424 pages
- Volume 31 (1983) Some Food Additives, Feed Additives and Naturally Occurring Substances (21 monographs), 314 pages
- Volume 32 (1983) Polynuclear Aromatic Compounds, Part 1, Chemical, Environmental and Experimental Data (42 monographs), 477 pages
- Volume 33 (1984) Polynuclear Aromatic Compounds, Part 2, Carbon Blacks, Mineral Oils and Some Nitroarenes (8 monographs), 245 pages
- Volume 34 (1984) Polynuclear Aromatic Compounds, Part 3, Industrial Exposures in Aluminium Production, Coal Gasification, Coke Production and Iron and Steel Founding (4 monographs), 219 pages
- Volume 35 (1984) Polynuclear Aromatic Compounds, Part 4, Bitumens, Coal-Tars and Derived Products, Shale-Oils and Soots (4 monographs), 271 pages
- Volume 36 (1985) Allyl Compounds, Aldehydes, Epoxides and Peroxides (15 monographs), 369 pages

Volume 37 (1985) Tobacco Habits Other Than Smoking; Betel-Quid and Areca-Nut Chewing; and Some Related Nitrosamines (8 monographs), 291 pages

Supplement No. 1 (1979) Chemicals and Industrial Processes Associated with Cancer in Humans (IARC Monographs, Volumes 1 to 20), 71 pages

Supplement No. 2 (1980) Long-term and Short-term Screening Assays for Carcinogens: A Critical Appraisal, 426 pages

Supplement No. 3 (1982) Cross Index of Synonyms and Trade Names in Volumes 1 to 26, 199 pages

Supplement No. 4 (1982) Chemicals, Industrial Processes and Industries Associated with Cancer in Humans (IARC Monographs, Volumes 1 to 29), 292 pages

7. IARC (1973-1983) *Information Bulletin on the Survey of Chemicals Being Tested for Carcinogenicity*, Numbers 1-11, Lyon, France

- Number 1 (1973) 52 pages
- Number 2 (1973) 77 pages
- Number 3 (1974) 67 pages
- Number 4 (1974) 97 pages
- Number 5 (1975) 88 pages
- Number 6 (1976) 360 pages
- Number 7 (1978) 460 pages
- Number 8 (1979) 604 pages
- Number 9 (1981) 294 pages
- Number 10 (1983) 326 pages
- Number 11 (1984) 370 pages

8. PHS 149 (1951-1983) Public Health Service Publication No. 149, *Survey of Compounds which have been Tested for Carcinogenic Activity*, Washington DC, US Government Printing Office

- 1951 Hartwell, J.L., 2nd ed., Literature up to 1947 on 1329 compounds, 583 pages
- 1957 Shubik, P. & Hartwell, J.L., Supplement 1, Literature for the years 1948-1953 on 981 compounds, 388 pages
- 1969 Shubik, P. & Hartwell, J.L., edited by Peters, J.A., Supplement 2, Literature for the years 1954-1960 on 1048 compounds, 655 pages
- 1971 National Cancer Institute, Literature for the years 1968-1969 on 882 compounds, 653 pages
- 1973 National Cancer Institute, Literature for the years 1961-1967 on 1632 compounds, 2343 pages
- 1974 National Cancer Institute, Literature for the years 1970-1971 on 750 compounds, 1667 pages
- 1976 National Cancer Institute, Literature for the years 1972-1973 on 966 compounds, 1638 pages
- 1980 National Cancer Institute, Literature for the year 1978 on 664 compounds, 1331 pages
- 1983 National Cancer Institute, Literature for years 1974-1975 on 575 compounds, 1043 pages

9. Pike, M.C. & Roe, F.J.C. (1963) An actuarial method of analysis of an experiment in two-stage carcinogenesis. *Br. J. Cancer*, 17, 605-610
10. Miller, E.C. (1978) Some current perspectives on chemical carcinogenesis in humans and experimental animals: Presidential address. *Cancer Res.*, 38, 1479-1496
11. Miller, E.C. & Miller, J.A. (1981) Searches for ultimate chemical carcinogens and their reactions with cellular macromolecules. *Cancer*, 47, 2327-2345
12. Peto, R. (1974) Guidelines on the analysis of tumour rates and death rates in experimental animals. *Br. J. Cancer*, 29, 101-105
13. Peto, R. (1975) Letter to the editor. *Br. J. Cancer*, 31, 697-699
14. Hoel, D.G. & Walburg, H.E., Jr (1972) Statistical analysis of survival experiments. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 49, 361-372
15. Peto, R., Pike, M.C., Day, N.E., Gray, R.G., Lee, P.N., Parish, S., Peto, J., Richards, S. & Wahrendorf, J. (1980) Guidelines for simple sensitive significance tests for carcinogenic effects in long-term animal experiments. In: *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans, Supplement 2, Long-term and Short-term Screening Assays for Carcinogens: A Critical Appraisal*, Lyon, pp. 311-426
16. Berenblum, I. (1975) *Sequential aspects of chemical carcinogenesis: Skin*. In: Becker, F.F., ed., *Cancer. A Comprehensive Treatise*, Vol. 1, New York, Plenum Press, pp. 323-344
17. Foulds, L. (1969) *Neoplastic Development*, Vol. 2, London, Academic Press
18. Farber, E. & Cameron, R. (1980) The sequential analysis of cancer development. *Adv. Cancer Res.*, 31, 125-126
19. Weinstein, I.B. (1981) The scientific basis for carcinogen detection and primary cancer prevention. *Cancer*, 47, 1133-1141
20. Slaga, T.J., Sivak, A. & Boutwell, R.K., eds (1978) *Mechanisms of Tumor Promotion and Cocarcinogenesis*, Vol. 2, New York, Raven Press
21. IARC Working Group (1980) An evaluation of chemicals and industrial processes associated with cancer in humans based on human and animal data: *IARC Monographs Volumes 1 to 20*. *Cancer Res.*, 40, 1-12
22. IARC (1979) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans, Supplement 1, Chemicals and Industrial Processes Associated with Cancer in Humans*, Lyon
23. Rall, D.P. (1977) *Species differences in carcinogenesis testing*. In: Hiatt, H.H., Watson, J.D. & Winsten, J.A., eds, *Origins of Human Cancer*, Book C, Cold Spring Harbor, NY, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, pp. 1383-1390
24. National Academy of Sciences (NAS) (1975) *Contemporary Pest Control Practices and Prospects: The Report of the Executive Committee*, Washington DC

25. Chemical Abstracts Services (1978) *Chemical Abstracts Ninth Collective Index (9CI)*, 1972-1976, Vols 76-85, Columbus, OH
26. International Union of Pure & Applied Chemistry (1965) *Nomenclature of Organic Chemistry*, Section C, London, Butterworths
27. WHO (1958) Second Report of the Joint FAO/WHO Expert Committee on Food Additives. Procedures for the testing of intentional food additives to establish their safety and use. *WHO tech. Rep. Ser.*, No. 144
28. WHO (1967) Scientific Group. Procedures for investigating intentional and unintentional food additives. *WHO tech. Rep. Ser.*, No. 348
29. Sontag, J.M., Page, N.P. & Saffiotti, U. (1976) Guidelines for carcinogen bioassay in small rodents. *Natl Cancer Inst. Carcinog. tech. Rep. Ser.*, No. 1
30. IARC (1980) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, Supplement 2, Long-term and Short-term Screening Assays for Carcinogens: A Critical Appraisal, Lyon
31. Montesano, R., Bartsch, H. & Tomatis, L., eds (1980) *Molecular and Cellular Aspects of Carcinogen Screening Tests (IARC Scientific Publications No. 27)*, Lyon
32. de Serres, F.J. & Ashby, J., eds (1981) *Evaluation of Short-Term Tests for Carcinogens. Report of the International Collaborative Program*, Amsterdam, Elsevier/North-Holland Biomedical Press
33. Sugimura, T., Sato, S., Nagao, M., Yahagi, T., Matsushima, T., Seino, Y., Takeuchi, M. & Kawachi, T. (1976) *Overlapping of carcinogens and mutagens*. In: Magee, P.N., Takayama, S., Sugimura, T. & Matsushima, T., eds, *Fundamentals in Cancer Prevention*, Tokyo/Baltimore, University of Tokyo/University Park Press, pp. 191-215
34. Bartsch, H., Tomatis, L. & Malaveille, C. (1982) *Qualitative and quantitative comparison between mutagenic and carcinogenic activities of chemicals*. In: Heddle, J.A., ed., *Mutagenicity: New Horizons in Genetic Toxicology*, New York, Academic Press, pp. 35-72
35. Hollstein, M., McCann, J., Angelosanto, F.A. & Nichols, W.W. (1979) Short-term tests for carcinogens and mutagens. *Mutat. Res.*, 65, 133-226

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE HABITS AND SUBSTANCES CONSIDERED

In this thirty-seventh volume of the *IARC Monographs*, the carcinogenic risks of tobacco chewing, snuff taking and related habits and of chewing betel quid and areca nut with and without tobacco are considered. Monographs are also included on some nitrosamines derived from areca nut and some tobacco-specific nitrosamines; one of the latter, *N*'-nitroso-nornicotine, was evaluated earlier, in Volume 17 of the *Monographs* (IARC, 1978), and information gathered since that time has been summarized and evaluated. A group that is to meet in February 1985 will consider the habit of tobacco smoking.

In this volume, the term 'smokeless tobacco' is used to describe any of a variety of products and mixtures that contain tobacco as the principal constituent, and are utilized without combustion. This expression was chosen in preference to several alternatives, including 'non-smoking tobacco', 'non-smoked tobacco', 'unsmoked tobacco' and 'uncombusted tobacco', mainly because of its growing use in the USA among tobacco experts. This consideration outweighed the imprecision of this term in the English language and the potential difficulty in its translation.

The oral and nasal use of tobacco, either finely powdered as snuff or in leaf form for chewing, is as old as its use for smoking in pipes, cigars and cigarettes. In the first half of the twentieth century, the use of chewing tobacco and snuff in the western hemisphere was overtaken by a huge increase in the use of smoking tobacco. In some parts of the world, however, smokeless tobacco is still widely used. The various preparations are called by a wide variety of names, and some are discussed in this volume. Additionally, there has been a renaissance in the use of chewing tobacco and snuff in western countries during recent years. In this volume, only snuff that contains tobacco (and sometimes other materials) is considered, and not snuffs made from other plants.

In South-East Asia, betel leaf or tobacco is mixed with a wide variety of other substances, including one another, and chewing habits vary greatly from one region to another. The most common additives are slaked lime and areca nut, and the possible role of these individual components in the development of cancer is still in dispute. Studies on some of the combinations are evaluated in the first two monographs of this volume.

In India, as in many parts of South-East Asia, oral cancer is a leading type of malignancy. A comparison of the frequency of this cancer in North America and in Middle-South Asia (United Nations Region 15) is given in Table 1.

Oral leukoplakia, assumed to be a precursor stage of oral cancer, is also prevalent in South-East Asia; this precancerous state and other precancerous conditions are also discussed.

In most previous volumes in this *Monographs* series, the epidemiological data evaluated have come predominantly from studies of exposure to single substances, or at least single categories of chemicals. In this volume, however, cancer risks are addressed which are

Table 1. Relative importance of oropharyngeal cancer in North America and Middle-South Asia^a; estimated numbers of new cases, 1975, by sex^b

Ranking ^c	North America		Middle south Asia	
	Site	No. (thousands)	Site	No. (thousands)
Males				
1	Lung	78	Mouth/pharynx	79
2	Prostate	63	Lung	26
3	Colon/rectum	55	Oesophagus	26
4	Bladder	25	Stomach	20
(6)	(Mouth/pharynx)	(18)		
Females				
1	Breast	105	Cervix	98
2	Colon/rectum	56	Breast	61
3	Lung	25	Mouth/pharynx	39
4	Lymphatic system	17	Oesophagus	18
(9)	(Mouth/pharynx)	(8)		

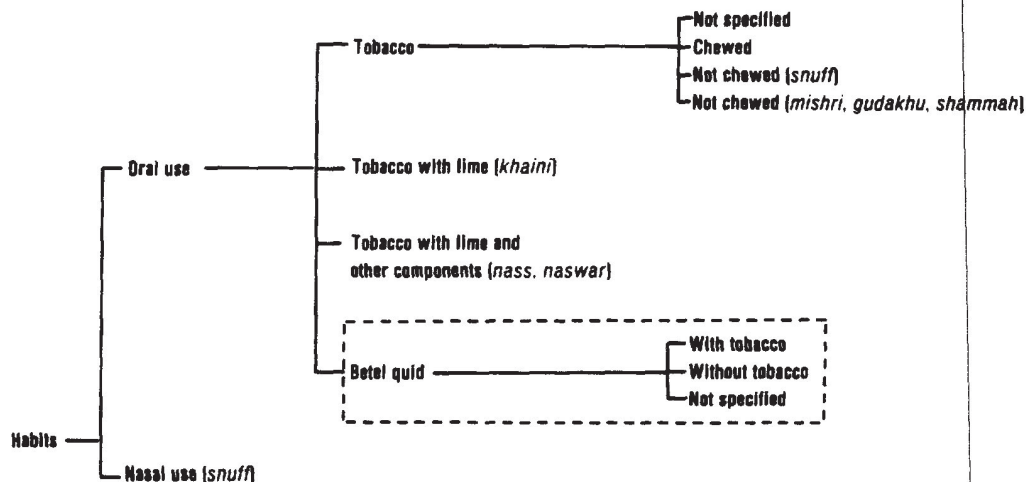
^aUnited Nations Region 15: India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Nepal, Bhutan, Afghanistan, Iran

^bFrom Parkin *et al.* (1984)

^cAmong twelve selected cancer sites

associated with a wide range of complex human behaviours and a variety of complex mixtures of chemicals. The behaviours fall into two major categories: first, habits in which tobacco is used orally or nasally, without combustion and in conjunction with a variety of other additives; second, habits in which betel leaf and areca nut are used with or without the addition of tobacco. Evaluation of the epidemiological data in the first two monographs in this volume has therefore sought to identify distinguishable categories of behaviour and, accordingly, has been formulated in reference to the spectrum shown in Figure 1.

Fig. 1. Categories of behaviour evaluated on the basis of epidemiological data in the first and (for categories within the dotted lines) second monographs in this volume



Although some of the exposure categories shown in Figure 1 equate clearly to certain specific, culturally-based habits (e.g., oral use of tobacco-plus-lime equates to the use of *khaini*), the generic approach of Figure 1 is preferred to ensure that the classification is conceptually comprehensive. This approach also makes explicit the desirability for epidemiological and experimental research in the future to measure and report on the specific components of the exposure and the habit in order to allow apportionment of carcinogenic risk between those components.

Tobacco-specific *N*-nitroso compounds have been detected at high concentrations in snuff and chewing tobacco. Thus, an evaluation of the possible carcinogenicity of those *N*-nitroso compounds was considered to be of importance and was undertaken in the five monographs at the end of this volume.

References

IARC (1978) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, Vol. 17, *Some N-Nitroso Compounds*, Lyon, pp. 281-286

Parkin, D.M., Stjernswärd, J. & Muir, C.S. (1984) Estimates of the worldwide frequency of twelve major cancers. *Bull. World Health Organ.*, 62, 163-182

TOBACCO HABITS OTHER THAN SMOKING

1. Description of the Habits

1.1 Introduction

Habits associated with the use of smokeless tobacco are found worldwide, with countless variations in the nature of the product used, as well as in the customs associated with its use. The tobacco is often processed and treated with additives and flavouring agents. It may be taken alone or in combination with one or a variety of other ingredients. The predominant use of smokeless tobacco is oral, although it may be placed in or inhaled into the nasal cavity. The saliva produced during oral use may be swallowed or expectorated, according to custom or personal preference.

Tobacco grown for the manufacture of smokeless products is of two species within the genus *Nicotiana* (Solanaceae), *N. tabacum* and *N. rustica*. It is believed that the former originated in Brazil and the latter in Mexico. The vast majority of smokeless-tobacco products are made from *N. tabacum*; all of those manufactured in North America and western Europe are made from this species. *N. rustica* is used in the USSR and, to a limited extent, in India. The alkaloid, nicotine, is the factor that creates dependence in the continued use of tobacco.

In Europe and the USA, the smokeless-tobacco products used are predominantly chewing tobacco and snuff. Within these groups are several types, differentiated by formulation and treatment of the tobacco. During the past few years in the USA, there has been a reclassification of products within the two major categories, and some types of fine-cut smokeless tobacco that were classified as 'chewing tobacco' prior to 1981 are now categorized as 'moist/fine-cut snuff'. In general, *chewing tobaccos*, as the name implies, require the consumer to take a portion of the tobacco product and chew it and/or place it between the buccal mucosa and gum for varying periods of time.

Snuff is available in Europe and the USA as products with different particle sizes and moisture contents. The majority of snuff used today has a relatively high moisture content and is finely cut rather than pulverized; as with chewing tobacco, it is used orally and is placed between the buccal mucosa and gum. The other type of snuff, which is dry and pulverized, is for oral or nasal use. The major use involves placing a suitable amount between the lower lips and gum or between the gum and buccal mucosa; although dry snuff may also be sniffed through the nasal cavities, this technique is a minor use pattern. In some countries, snuff has become available in small packets wrapped in porous paper (like 'tea-bags') which are placed between the buccal mucosa and gum; such preparations appear to appeal to young adult users in Scandinavia and the USA.

In many Asian countries, tobacco is commonly added to betel quid, as described elsewhere in this volume. Tobacco may also be used alone, with lime and in various other combinations.

Nasal use of snuff is widely practised among the Bantu population in South Africa.

Although many of these habits are practised by millions of people, most of the available information is from North America, Europe and South-East Asia. Published estimates of the total number of persons practising the habits do not exist or are of variable reliability.

1.2 Historical overview

(a) Tobacco chewing

The tobacco plant is thought to have originated on the mainland between North and South America and had already spread throughout the two continents at the time of its discovery. However, cultivation of the plant probably dates back at least 7000 years; tobacco seeds were discovered during archaeological excavations in both Mexico and Peru, and findings in remains of permanent settlements built around 3500 BC show that tobacco was an article of established value to the inhabitants. It would appear that people who frequently lacked sufficient food alleviated their hunger pangs by chewing tobacco (Voges, 1984).

American Indians were probably the first people to smoke, chew and snuff tobacco, as early as the 1400s (Christen *et al.*, 1982). In 1499, Amerigo Vespucci found Indians on Margarita Island, a small island off the coast of Venezuela, chewing a green herb that was carried in a gourd around their necks. Since there was a scarcity of water on the island, Vespucci assumed that the green herb, known as tobacco, was chewed to quench thirst, since it produced an increase in salivary flow; he also reported that the Indians chewed these leaves to whiten their teeth (Heimann, 1960; Stewart, 1967).

According to a report written in the late 1500s by Garcilasso de la Vega, the practice of tobacco chewing was widespread in parts of South America (Voges, 1984); Samuel de Champlain, the founder of Québec, reported the use of plug tobacco in Santo Domingo during the sixteenth century, and Columbus, in 1571, observed men in Veragua, later known as Costa Rica, putting a dry herb in their mouths and chewing it (Heimann, 1960). Tobacco chewing seems to have been common, especially when long distances had to be covered, and it has been reported that an Indian could trek for two or three days with no other support against hunger, thirst and fatigue than tobacco. Several American tribes mixed either lime or finely-powdered and burned, fresh- or salt-water molluscs with their chewing tobacco (Curtis, 1935).

Among native Americans, chewing tobacco was thought to have several medicinal uses, some of which included alleviating toothache and disinfecting cuts by spitting the tobacco juice and saliva mixture onto the wound; it was also thought to relieve the effects of snake, spider and insect bites (Axton, 1975).

By 1531, the Spaniards were growing tobacco commercially in the West Indies and maintained a monopoly over the European markets until 1575, at which time the Portuguese began to grow large quantities of the commodity. Tobacco was soon grown in Europe as both a decorative and medicinal plant. In 1559, Jean Nicot, in whose honour the genus *Nicotiana* was named, was ambassador to Sebastian, King of Portugal. He grew tobacco and promoted the product in Europe for its magic 'cure-all' properties. By 1613, tobacco had become one of the major exports of the American colonies. In the 1600s in southern Africa, people sold land and slaves for tobacco (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

outh Africa.

of the available
estimates of the
reliability.

Tobacco arrived in Turkey in 1605, Russia in 1634 and Arabia in 1663; Spaniards transported tobacco seeds to the Philippines, from whence it was shipped to China, on to Siberia and across the Bering Sea back to Alaskan Eskimos. Reports indicate that the leaf reached the Australian aborigines and even the Andaman Islanders. On the western coast of Africa, tobacco became a commercial enterprise (Axton, 1975).

Along the eastern coast of the USA, no evidence of tobacco chewing was found until 1704; it became popular only during the first half of the nineteenth century (Gottsegen, 1940), when chewing tobacco was known in the Connecticut Valley as 'fudgeon' (Brooks, 1952).

Tobacco chewing was not confined to the Americas. When smoking was forbidden on British naval vessels because of the fire hazard, sailors turned to chewing tobacco and snuff. In Europe, tobacco was regarded as an excellent prophylactic during the plague and, for those who did not like smoking, chewing was an alternative. General George Monck, Duke of Albemarle, who was responsible for aiding the return of the Stuarts to the British monarchy, was a tobacco chewer, as were many of his troops. Charles II chewed tobacco, as did Queen Caroline of England. Tobacco chewing was recommended for cleaning the teeth of women and children (Brooks, 1952).

In 1797, Adam Clarke, a famous Methodist minister, begged all tobacco consumers and especially religious followers, for the sake of their health and their souls, to avoid tobacco. He was particularly disturbed by the fact that it had become unsafe to kneel when praying because chewers had made the floors unsanitary for the devout (Brooks, 1952).

By the mid 1850s, tobacco chewing had been accepted by North Americans, following two centuries of pipe smoking and snuff use, for two reasons: firstly, Americans rejected European habits in general, and British habits in particular, that entailed snuff boxes and formality; and secondly, tobacco chewing was more convenient for Americans trekking westward in their wagons to build new homesites and develop the land (Heimann, 1960).

During the 1860s, tobacco was chewed in the form of either a plug or a twist. Of the 348 tobacco factories listed in the 1860 Census for Virginia and North Carolina, only seven manufactured smoking products (Heimann, 1960). American pioneers resorted to the use of a home-made sweet plug, so-named because the leaf was wadded into a hole in a log and laced with a sweetening agent, usually brandy or cane sugar, which, after removal of the fermented leaf, resulted in a tasty chew (Axton, 1975).

During the latter part of the nineteenth century, the 'germ theory of infection' changed the course of chewing in America, and it was felt that expectorating on the floor and into a brass cuspidor could be a source of contamination and spreading of disease. By the 1890s, public outcry made tobacco chewing socially unacceptable behaviour and unlawful in most public places (Christen *et al.*, 1982). Anti-spitting laws were passed in New York and Philadelphia in 1896 and in Toronto, Canada, in 1904 (Kozlowski, 1981).

In 1945, cuspidors were removed from all federal buildings by order of the US District Court in Washington DC (Brooks, 1952). The apparent decline in tobacco chewing is exemplified by a memorandum of 14 September 1955 to the American Tobacco Company, stating, 'It has become impossible to hire persons in the New York area to clean and maintain cuspidors ... it will be necessary to remove them promptly from the premises' (Heimann, 1960).

The market for chewing tobacco passed its peak in 1890, when some three pounds (about 1.5 kg) of plug, twist or fine-cut chewing tobacco were chewed annually per capita in the

North and South
of its discovery.
; tobacco seeds
, and findings in
o was an article
requently lacked
984).

snuff tobacco, as
Indians on Mar-
rb that was car-
the island, Ves-
ench thirst, since
s chewed these

Vega, the prac-
s, 1984); Samuel
Santo Domingo
gua, later known
1960). Tobacco
d to be covered,
th no other sup-
pes mixed either
chewing tobacco

medicinal uses,
ting the tobacco
effects of snake,

indies and main-
the Portuguese
vn in Europe as
the genus *Nico-*
ew tobacco and
13, tobacco had
southern Africa,

USA (Heimann, 1960). Chewing remained the dominant form of tobacco usage in America until the expansion of the cigarette industry in 1918 (Maxwell, 1980).

During the second half of the 1960s and continuing through the 1970s, however, a resurgence in tobacco chewing occurred in the USA. Chewing tobacco has now become popular among young adult males. Some persons may have selected chewing as an alternative to smoking since it does not, as yet, have the stigma of being linked to health issues. Chewing can be performed in areas where smoking is prohibited, and it is purported to be more economical: advertisements claim that chewers can keep a wad of tobacco 'alive' for several hours, and it is claimed that a three-ounce (85-g) pouch of loose-leaf chewing tobacco can last a week or more for the average chewer (Christen & Glover, 1981).

The tobacco industry is promoting tobacco chewing as a recreational activity, with spitting contests, shirts and clubs. The trend toward the 'western cowboy' image of masculinity is being promoted in advertising by connecting tobacco chewing with western clothes. On one college campus, a chewing club claims the membership of athletes, the president of the student body, and a number of intellectual students; free samples of chewing tobacco are being handed out at other colleges. Commercial advertisements use public figures for extolling the virtues of chewing tobacco (Christen & Glover, 1981).

(b) *Snuff taking*

This topic has been reviewed recently (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

The Indians of Brazil were the first people known to use snuff. Using a cup made from a block of rosewood and a pestle of the same wood, the tobacco leaves were ground into a powder and acquired the delicate aroma of the wood. The resulting snuff was placed in ornately decorated bone tubes, one end of which was plugged to preserve the fragrance (Curtis, 1935).

Friar Ramón Pané, a Franciscan monk who travelled with Christopher Columbus on his second voyage to the New World in 1493, reported that the Carib Indians of the lesser Antilles used snuff (Christen *et al.*, 1982). In Haiti, snuff powder was used by medicine men for clearing nasal passages and as an analgesic (Stewart, 1967). Friar Pané's return to Spain with snuff signalled the arrival in Europe of a habit that was to last for several centuries.

In 1519, Ocaranza found that Mexican Indians used tobacco powder to heal burns and wounds, and in 1525 Herrera observed Mexican Indians holding tobacco powder in their mouth to send them to sleep and reduce pain (Stewart, 1967). The Indians inhaled powdered tobacco through a hollow Y-shaped piece of cane or pipe by placing the forked ends into each nostril and the other end near the powdered tobacco. This instrument was called a 'tobago' or 'tobaca'. The word was later changed by the Spaniards to 'tobacco' (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

Jean Nicot is credited with introducing snuff to Catherine de Medici, Queen of France, to cure her headaches (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

The Dutch, who named the powdered tobacco 'snuff', were also using the product by 1560 (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

By the early 1600s, snuff had become an expensive commodity and its use had spread throughout South America, China, Japan and Africa. The origin of the process terms 'carotte'

and 'rappee' goes back to the 1600s when tobacco for snuff was prepared in the form of a carrot to be rasped in the quantity desired for use (Curtis, 1935). In 1620, the Royal Snuff Factory was established in Seville, and this became the centre of manufacturing and development of this product (Voges, 1984). Snuff use expanded through Japan to China (Ching Dynasty) in the 1650s: palace artisans produced exquisitely-carved, inlaid enamelled or painted snuff bottles with a tiny spoon attached to the bottle stopper; a small portion of snuff was placed on the left thumbnail and inhaled through the nose. The Chinese believed that snuff cured pains in the eyes and teeth, alleviated throat ailments, constipation and cold symptoms, and promoted sweating (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

By 1650, snuff use had also spread from France to England, Scotland and Ireland. The Irish called snuff 'powder' or 'smutchin'; the Scots called it 'sneeshin' (Harrison, 1964).

Snuff use reached a peak in England during the reign of Queen Anne (1702-1714), and was called the 'final reason for the human nose'. It was at this time that ready-made snuff became available in England. It continued to be popular during the reign of George III, and his wife, Charlotte (1760-1820), referred to as 'Snuffy Charlotte', had an entire room in Windsor Castle devoted to her snuff stock. Lord Nelson, the Duke of Wellington, Marie Antoinette, Disraeli, Pope and Samuel Johnson all used snuff (Harrison, 1964). In diplomatic intrigue, poisons were sometimes placed in snuff. The aristocratic popularity of snuff led to a minor art form, in that snuff boxes became symbols reflecting the wealth and rank of their owner. The dandy, Lord Petersham, was said to own an annual set of 365 snuff boxes (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

The leading snuff supplier of the time, whose shop still exists in The Haymarket, London, provided King George IV with his own special blends, King's Morning Mix, King's Plain, and King's Carotte (Ryan, 1980). Home-made snuff was common. The tightly-rolled tobacco leaves (carotte) were often soaked in cinnamon, lavender, or almond oils; tobacco was dried and ground by means of an iron hand-grater that resembled a modern cheese-grater. The proper manner of inhaling snuff was to place a small quantity on the back of the hand and sniff it up the nostrils to induce a sneeze (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

Although hundreds of varieties of snuff existed in Europe by the 1800s, these consisted of three basic types: Scotch snuff, which was a dry, strong, unflavoured and finely-ground powder; Maccaboy, a moist and highly-scented snuff; and Rapee, also known as Swedish snuff, a coarsely-grated snuff (Heimann, 1960).

Snuff was introduced into Sweden in the middle of the seventeenth century, but its popularity among aristocrats reached a height during the eighteenth century, when use of nasal snuff became the highest fashion at the court of King Gustav III, among both men and women. The habit subsequently spread to the general Swedish population.

In many Swedish cities, snuff has been manufactured since the beginning of the eighteenth century. In Gothenburg, which is considered to be the centre of snuff production, manufacture started in about 1650 (Loewe, 1981). In 1795, Samuel Fiedler established a snuff mill in Gothenburg and began a small business, which later developed into three separate companies. At the end of the nineteenth century, the leading producer was Jacob Ljunglöf in Stockholm; his leading brand 'Ettan' became well known throughout Europe (Loewe, 1981). In 1914, the production of snuff in Sweden was taken over by the Swedish tobacco monopoly, which restored Gothenburg as the centre of snuff production in Sweden. A large factory was built around 1920, and expanded in 1979, for the production of snuff and chewing tobacco.

Since the beginning of the twentieth century, snuff has mainly been used orally in Sweden.

Snuff made its way to North America in 1611 by way of John Rolfe, husband of Pocahontas. Rolfe introduced the better Spanish variety of tobacco to ensure the survival of the Jamestown Colony in Virginia. Although most of the colonists in America never fully accepted the English style of snuff use, American aristocrats used snuff, and Dolly Madison was known to distribute samples of snuff to White House guests. During the 1800s until the mid 1930s, a communal snuff box was installed for members of the US Congress. The colonists also found it more to their taste to place snuff in their mouths rather than to sniff it (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

The first snuff mills in America were constructed in Virginia in about 1730 (Helmann, 1960). The snuff was made from New England tobacco and its quality was said to equal that of the native Scottish varieties (Robert, 1949). Pierre Lorillard, a Huguenot, established a snuff mill in New York in 1760 and carefully guarded the secret of his ingredients and blends (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

Between 1880 and 1930, the production of snuff in the USA increased from four million pounds (1.8 million kg) to more than 40 million pounds (18 million kg) per year (Garner, 1951). By 1945, the American Snuff Company in Memphis, Tennessee, claimed to be the largest snuff manufacturer in the world (Christen *et al.*, 1982). Snuff was made predominantly from dark, air- and fire-cured leaves. Stems and leaves were aged in hogsheads and conditioned before being cut into strips of one to two inches (2.5-5 cm) in width. The chopped leaves underwent further fermentation for about two months, during which time the tobacco lost its creosote-like odour and became more aromatic. It was next dried by passing through steam-heated containers and then ground to a fine powder in a revolving steel drum. The powder was passed over silk cloth containing as many as 96 threads per inch (38/cm). The coarse residue was returned to the mill for additional grinding before being packed into 100-pound (45-kg) bags for storage prior to repacking in smaller containers for retail sale. The dry and moist snuffs were used for dipping and placing in the mouth. Rappee or French snuff was used for inhaling, and Maccaboy snuff was both sucked and inhaled (Garner, 1951).

(c) Tobacco and health

In the past, tobacco use was considered by some to be beneficial. During the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries in America, dental snuff was advertised to relieve toothache, to cure neuralgia, bleeding gums and scurvy, and to preserve and whiten teeth and prevent decay (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

The use of tobacco, including smokeless tobacco, has been controversial since its introduction. Therefore, a history of smokeless-tobacco use is not complete without a discussion of the attacks on tobacco by various groups. In 1590 in Japan, tobacco was prohibited, and users lost their property or were jailed. King James VI of Scotland, who took over the British throne in 1604, was a strong anti-smoking advocate and increased taxes on tobacco by 4000% in an attempt to reduce the quantity imported into England. In 1633, the Sultan Murad IV of Turkey made any use of tobacco a capital offence, punishable by death from hanging, beheading or starvation, maintaining that tobacco caused infertility and reduced the fighting capabilities of his soldiers. The Russian Czar Michael Fedorovich, the first Romanov (1613-1645), prohibited the sale of tobacco, stating that users would be subjected to physical punishment; persistent users would be killed. A Chinese law in 1638 threatened that anyone possessing tobacco would be beheaded (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

During the mid 1600s, Pope Urban VIII banned the use of snuff in churches, and Pope Innocent X attacked its use by priests in the Catholic Church. Other religious groups banned snuff use: John Wesley (1703-1791), the founder of Methodism, attacked its use in Ireland; similarly, the Mormons, Seventh-Day Adventists, Parsees and Sikhs of India, Buddhist monks of Korea, members of the Tsai Li sect of China, and some Ethiopian Christian sects forbade the use of tobacco (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

In Germany (Bavaria) in 1652, tobacco was available only on a doctor's prescription; Frederick the Great, King of Prussia, prevented his mother, the Dowager Queen of Prussia, from using snuff at his coronation in 1790. Louis XV, ruler of France from 1723-1774, banned snuff use from the Court of France (Christen *et al.*, 1982).

In 1761, John Hill, a London physician and botanist, concluded that nasal cancer could develop as a consequence of tobacco snuff use. He reported five cases of 'polypusses, a swelling in the nostril that was hard, black and adherent with the symptoms of an open cancer' (Redmond, 1970).

1.3 Current practices

(a) Tobacco chewing

In the USA and Europe, the three main types of chewing tobacco are firm plug/moist plug, loose-leaf and twist/roll (Rizio, 1984). Each of these types is produced by using different tobaccos and additives, and by using different manufacturing processes.

Plug or pressed-leaf tobacco is made from enriched tobacco leaves or leaf fragments (spinner) wrapped in fine tobacco and pressed into flat bars or rolls before being packed in clear cellophane (Rizio, 1984). Plug can be either firm or moist: firm plug is more common and has a moisture content of less than 15%; moist plug is kept in a pouch or 'soft' and has a moisture content of 15% or more (US Department of Agriculture, 1982).

Loose-leaf tobacco, formerly called 'scrap', is made of fermented cigar leaf tobacco. Some brands are lightly sweetened, while others carry large amounts of sugars, syrups, liquorice and other flavouring materials. The treated tobacco is not compressed, but is packaged as a batch of loose pieces or cut strips. It is sold in a 3-oz (about 85-g) foil-lined pouch (Rizio, 1984).

Twist or roll tobacco is made of cured leaf which has been treated with flavouring materials. The processed leaves are then twisted into strands and allowed to dry.

Fine-cut tobacco: Some types of fine-cut smokeless tobacco, which had been classified as chewing tobacco prior to 1982, have been recategorized as moist/fine-cut snuff (see below).

In other regions of the world where tobacco is chewed, the sun-cured leaf is cut into strips of various sizes, followed by a short period of fermentation. For example, in some parts of India, the leaf strips may be over 5 mm in width, while in Indonesia the strips are finely cut.

The habit of chewing tobacco alone is practised predominantly in the USA and South-East Asia with some use in Europe and other Asian countries. Specific information on tobacco

chewing practices was limited for countries other than the USA, the UK, the USSR and India. Sales and production figures reported in section 1.5 give an indication of the extent of usage in other countries.

(i) USA

Data for the period 1880 to 1960 show a peak in the consumption of chewing tobacco in the USA between 1910 and 1920 (Hermann, 1960). More recent figures from the US Department of Agriculture (1984a) show a gradual decline in production from 1931 (the earliest year listed in the report) to the 1960s, at which time production began to increase again; this trend continued through the 1970s, and recent figures show an apparent plateau in the early 1980s. Since the upward trend began, production has increased by approximately 60%.

Total US consumption of smokeless-tobacco products was approximately 132 million pounds (60 million kg) per year during the period 1980-1982 (Tobacco Institute, 1981, 1982, 1983). On 1 January 1982, some types of chewing-tobacco products were reclassified as snuff (US Department of Agriculture, 1983). Under this classification, consumption of chewing tobacco in 1982 was 88 million pounds (40 million kg) (Tobacco Institute, 1983).

Part of the recent increase in the use of smokeless-tobacco products may have occurred among adolescents (Christen *et al.*, 1982; Glover *et al.*, 1983). It has been estimated that there are now 22 million users of smokeless-tobacco products (Greer & Poulson, 1983). Holleb (1984) indicates that the increase in chewing was from 2-4% per year from 1972 to 1980 for adults, with a slight decrease from 1981 to 1983; he estimates that there are seven million smokeless-tobacco users in the USA. The 1979 Report of the Surgeon General (US Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, 1979) found the prevalence of tobacco chewing in the USA in 1970 to be 5.6% among men and 0.6% among women. The figure for men decreased to 4.9% in 1975 but remained the same for women.

Chewing usually consists of placing a 'chaw' or 'quid' of leaf or plug tobacco in the gingival buccal area where it is held or chewed. A 'chaw' is a wad of chewing tobacco the size of a golf-ball, and a 'quid' is a much smaller portion, which is usually held in the mouth rather than chewed. Many persons chew during most of their working hours, and some keep a quid in place for 24 h a day (Christen, 1980a). Tobacco chewers habitually spit out the liquid extract produced by chewing.

Some measure of how long a tobacco chewer exposes himself to chewing can be determined from studies on selected populations. Moderate chewers have been defined as individuals for whom the total length of exposure of the buccal mucosa to tobacco was up to 200 min per day, while, for heavy chewers, it was more than 200 min per day (Wahi *et al.*, 1970). Men in Texas reported that they used two to eight chaws per day (Christen *et al.*, 1979a).

A market research bureau undertook a study in 1981 to determine a profile of the smokeless-tobacco user. Those men most likely to chew tobacco were between the ages of 18 and 34 years, were married and/or a parent, and had a high-school education or less (Maxwell, 1982).

There are several regional and demographic variations in chewing-tobacco patterns. According to Rizio (1984), twist or roll chewing tobacco is sold mainly in the southern and southern border states of the USA. Chewing tobacco is preferred by many workers in heavy industries, such as steel, coal and petroleum, where smoking is prohibited due to inflam-

mable work environments. There is also an increase in its use by persons who enjoy leisure-time activities involving their hands, and who prefer to chew rather than smoke cigarettes.

The areas in the USA where chewing is practised and identification of the populations who chew are described in several recent studies, which give indications of the age at which the habit is acquired and the dosages for various groups.

In 1976-1977, as part of the Bogalusa Heart Study in Louisiana, USA, 3147 children aged 8-17 years were asked various questions concerning chewing tobacco. White boys far exceeded those of other races in tobacco usage other than tobacco smoking. Approximately 25% of white boys aged 12-15 years had tried chewing tobacco (Hunter *et al.*, 1980).

A teen-aged population of smokeless-tobacco users in Denver, CO, USA, was identified; of 1119 students, 117 used snuff or chewing tobacco (113 boys and 4 girls). The length of time tobacco was kept in the oral cavity ranged from 53 to 177 min per day, and duration of use of these products ranged from 2.19 and 3.25 years (Greer & Poulson, 1983).

In 1980, a sample population of 2616 students in Nebraska, USA, aged 11-17 years, were asked about their use of chewing tobacco. Only eight girls admitted to chewing tobacco, whereas 90 boys (7.1%) reported practising the habit. Approximately one-third of the tobacco chewers were also cigarette smokers. The product was used daily by 36% of the chewers, 32% chewed weekly and 32% said they chewed only once a month; 23% had chewed for more than three years, 47% for two to three years and only 30% had chewed for one year or less (Newman & Duryea, 1981).

A study of 500 boys aged 10-16 years in Atlanta, GA, USA, showed widespread use of smokeless tobacco. Several boys aged 8-10 mixed chewing tobacco with bubble gum; 15% reported regular use of chewing tobacco (Anon., 1983).

A survey of college athletes in Texas showed that many began chewing between the ages of 10 and 12 years (Christen *et al.*, 1979a).

(ii) Canada

A survey was conducted in 1982 in the Northwest Territories to determine the extent of use of chewing tobacco among 7300 school children, 5-19 years old. Approximately 17% (boys, 26%; girls, 8%) of the student population reported that they had used chewing tobacco, and 9% (boys, 13%; girls, 2.9%) were current users. Use was more prevalent among the Indian/Métis and Inuit youths than among the non-native youths (Millar & van Rensberg, 1984).

(iii) UK

Tobacco chewing is uncommon in the UK. However, a study of five coal mines in south Lancashire revealed different chewing habits based on the actual location of work at the pit. Among 1490 miners, only 1.7% of surface workers chewed tobacco, as compared to 34.3% of those who worked underground. A further analysis of 858 of these miners found that 91.2% of the 195 tobacco chewers also smoked cigarettes. The quantity of tobacco chewed was 3-15 g per day, with an average daily use of 4.5 g (Tyldesley, 1971).

(iv) *India*

Chewing tobacco in India is made from sun-dried, coarsely cut leaves. About 85% of the tobacco used is sold loosely and is consumed raw. The dried leaf is broken into smaller pieces before being consumed. It may be used alone, in combination with lime (*khaini*), as a component of betel quid (see this volume) or in other forms such as *mishri*, *zarda*, *kiwam* and *pills* (described in section 1.3(c)).

Tobacco chewing is prevalent among people of all castes, creeds and religions, except Sikhs and Parsees. Overall, more men than women chew tobacco. In rural and urban low-income groups, the habit of chewing begins at 10-12 years of age and continues until old age.

In the one available study on the prevalence of pure tobacco chewing, Pindborg *et al.* (1967) reported that 2.1% of a population sample of 10 000 chewed tobacco alone.

(b) *Snuff taking*

The types of tobacco and ingredients used in snuff differ in the countries where the habit is practised. Prior to the nineteenth century, in Europe and the USA, the most popular means of consuming tobacco was sniffing the finely-ground leaf tobacco through the nose. Presently, the major use of snuff is to place it in the mouth between the lip or buccal mucosa and gum. In South-East Asia and Africa, snuff is taken both orally and nasally.

In the USA and Europe, snuff is currently described either as moist snuff, which is placed in the oral cavity and has a relatively high moisture content (up to 50%), or as dry (Scotch) snuff, which is placed in the oral cavity or administered through the nasal passage. Dry snuff usually has a moisture-content of less than 10%. Originally, in the USA, 'fine-cut' was used to describe chewing tobacco; however, at one point it was also used to describe snuff which may have been made from fine-cut chewing tobacco. It is a term that still may be used by some persons to describe snuff, but has little meaning in terms of a comparison of tobacco particle size. Frequently, the moist snuff category is listed as moist/fine-cut snuff.

Snuff used in Asia and Africa differs in its preparation and constituents from that used in the USA and Europe, as described in subsequent sections.

Although production and usage data, as reported in section 1.5, suggest that snuff is widely used in a number of countries, little or no information was available on the products used and number of persons practising the habit in areas other than Europe (particularly in Scandinavia) and North America.

Since snuff, its tobacco content, flavour components, manufacturing processes, and the customs affecting its use vary throughout the world (Axéll *et al.*, 1976), habits associated with its use are described by country or area.

(i) *Scandinavia*

During the eighteenth century in Denmark and Sweden, snuff was used as a fine, dry powder that was inhaled through the nose (Zacho *et al.*, 1968). Since the end of the nineteenth century, snuff has been used orally in Sweden and is usually placed behind the upper lip (Frithiof *et al.*, 1983); in Denmark it is usually placed behind the lower lip (Pindborg

& Poulsen, 1962; Pindborg & Renstrup, 1963). Currently, wet snuff, which is highly alkaline (pH 8-9), is the preferred type in the Scandinavian countries (Pindborg & Axelsen, 1980; Hirsch *et al.*, 1982).

It is estimated that in 1978, there were 700 000 to 800 000 snuff users in Sweden (Frithiof *et al.*, 1983). Data from clinical studies in Sweden and Denmark indicate that the average snuff user is approximately 50 years old (mean of three investigations: Axéll *et al.*, 1976; Pindborg *et al.*, 1980; Hirsch *et al.*, 1982), uses snuff 10 h per day (mean of three investigations: Roed-Petersen & Pindborg, 1973; Axéll *et al.*, 1976; Hirsch *et al.*, 1982) and has been using snuff for 22 years (mean of two investigations: Axéll *et al.*, 1976; Hirsch *et al.*, 1982). The estimated consumption per day for an average user is about 15 g (mean of two investigations: Axéll *et al.*, 1976; Hirsch *et al.*, 1982). Average consumption is estimated to be approximately 100 g per week and 5.4 kg per year per user (Österdahl & Storch, 1983).

Almost all snuff users in Sweden are men, and they constitute 17% of the population. The prevalence is 19% in the age group 15-30 years and 10% among those 65 years and older. Only 1% of Swedish women use snuff regularly (Axéll, 1979; Barroll & Ramström, 1979; Hirsch, 1983). Among school children aged 13-16 years, 11-15% of boys but no girls used snuff regularly (Modéer *et al.*, 1980; Hibell & Jonsson, 1982; Hirsch, 1983). The average consumption of snuff among school children aged 13 and 14 years was five pinches per day; the snuff was kept in the oral cavity for an average of 3.5 h (Modéer *et al.*, 1980).

There are geographical differences in the use of snuff in Sweden. The habit is more widespread in the northern parts of the country, where approximately 25% of the male population over the age of 15 years use snuff daily. Snuff usage is also more common in rural areas (20%) and in small towns (13%) than in large towns (7%). It was found that people with high consumption of snuff usually smoked fewer cigarettes than did those people who used moderate amounts of snuff. Of male snuff users, 43% did not smoke, 22% smoked occasionally and 35% were regular smokers (Hirsch, 1983); two-thirds of snuff users were social drinkers. Many different brands of snuff are available, but the majority of snuff takers use only one or two brands (Hirsch *et al.*, 1982).

(ii) USA

This section should be read in conjunction with that on p. 55, which describes trends in the production and use of smokeless-tobacco and chewing-tobacco products in the USA.

Data for the period 1880 to 1940 show a peak in snuff consumption in the USA between 1910 and 1920 (Schuman, 1977). More recent figures from the US Department of Agriculture (1984a) show that production was relatively stable from 1931 (the earliest year listed in the report) to the mid-1950s, at which time there was a slow decline in production that continued until the early 1980s.

On 1 January 1982, some chewing-tobacco products were reclassified as snuff (US Department of Agriculture, 1983); under this classification, 43.9 million pounds (20 million kg) of snuff were consumed in the USA in 1982 (Tobacco Institute, 1983). In 1983, sales of moist snuff had increased by 7.1% over the 1982 figures (Shelton *et al.*, 1984).

In 1970, 2.9% of men and 1.4% of women used snuff; by 1975, only 2.5% of men and 1.3% of women used snuff (US Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, 1979); a 1983 market research bureau reported that smokeless tobacco is used in 3.2% of US households in which a male is living (Maxwell, 1984). Christen and Glover (1981) reported that

approximately 30% of women in central North Carolina were snuff users as compared to 1.3% of women in the USA as a whole. A 1983 market research bureau report indicated that US snuff users were more likely to live in a rural area of eastern-central or southern USA, and to be in a lower-income, part-time employment category. In contrast to chewing-tobacco users, a significant number of snuff users had attended college (Anon., 1984).

In the USA, dry snuff is used mostly by middle-aged and older people, whereas moist snuff is used mainly by young adults. The average user of moist snuff consumes 1.5 tins (1.2 oz or 34 g) per week (Maxwell, 1980).

The usual method of taking snuff in the USA is to place a pinch in the gingival buccal area, between the buccal mucosa or lip and the gums, or beneath the tongue and to leave it in position for a few minutes or as long as desired. This is in contrast to the eighteenth-century practice of inhaling the snuff into the nasal cavity. Oral use of snuff is colloquially referred to as 'snuff dipping' in the USA, from the habit of dipping into snuff a stick that had previously been chewed to flatten the end, and applying the snuff to the gums. Some users of dry snuff measure out a small quantity in the lid of the container or into a special spoon and then place the snuff between the lower lip and the gum. Moist snuff is used by taking a 'pinch' of the slightly damp tobacco between the thumb and forefinger and tucking it between the lower lip and gum. Snuff has recently become available in 'tea-bag'-like packets, which are placed in the mouth.

In a study of snuff usage among middle and lower socioeconomic groups in south-eastern USA, it was found that many used snuff most of their waking hours and some slept with the quid in their mouths. In a study of 290 patients with oral-cavity lesions, it was not unusual to find that the persons had used snuff regularly before the age of 10 years, and 75% of the patients had used snuff for 40 years (McGuirt, 1983a).

In a study in south-eastern USA, of 255 women with oral and pharyngeal cancer, it was found that whites had used snuff for an average of 47.6 years *versus* 36.1 years for blacks, and that they used more tins (1.15 oz or 36 g) per week than did blacks (3.0 *versus* 2.4). The average duration of snuff use was less among cigarette smokers (33.0 years) than among nonsmokers (47.4 years) (Winn *et al.*, 1981a).

Of a population of 15 000 snuff users who resided primarily in one state in south-eastern USA, the average age of the subjects who were examined for 'snuff-dippers' lesions was 55 years; 75% were women. This elevated number of users probably represents a regional population sample bias (Smith *et al.*, 1970; Smith, 1975).

In another south-eastern US state, 11% of 500 boys, 10-16 years of age, reported using snuff regularly (Anon., 1983).

In an urban school population of 565 boys (average age, 13.8 years), 200 were selected for a follow-up dental study. Of this selected group, 11% used snuff regularly (Weather & Offenbacher, 1983). In another study of college men in a southern state, as many as one-third were either tobacco chewers, snuff users, or both (Christen, 1980b).

(iii) Canada

A survey was conducted in 1982 in the Northwest Territories to determine the extent of snuff use among 7300 school children aged five to 19 years. Approximately 10% (boys, 16%; girls, 5%) were current users of snuff. Use was more prevalent among the Indian/Métis and Inuit youths than among non-native youths (Millar & van Rensberg, 1984).

(iv) *South-East Asia and Africa*

Unscented snuff is used in many parts of *India* as a dentifrice, while scented snuff is used for sniffing. The habit of sniffing is on the decline, but use of snuff as a dentifrice by men, women and children in the poorer sections of society is widely prevalent. It is used from twice to eight to ten times per day (Anon., 1953). In a study from Ahmedabad, of 57 518 industrial workers examined, 1316 (2.3%) used tobacco only by inhaling snuff (Smith *et al.*, 1975).

In *Thailand*, snuff ('a tan, dry powder') is taken with the aid of a U-shaped metal tube: one end of the tube is placed in the mouth and the other in the nasal passage. Air blown from the mouth scatters the powder into the nose, through which it is inhaled (Harrison, 1964).

In *South Africa*, snuff inhalation is widely practised by Bantu men and women, for whom its use has an important cultural and ritual history. The product typically contains tobacco leaves and ash from aloe plants or other species, with the occasional addition of oil, lemon juice and herbs; use is often one teaspoonful per day (Keen *et al.*, 1955; Harrison, 1964; Baumslag *et al.*, 1971). In a small survey in one town, 19% of Bantu men and 30% of the women used snuff orally or nasally (Higginson & Oettlé, 1960).

Among the Fingo and Xhosa tribes of *South Africa*, snuff is placed between the gingiva and lower lip or buccal area (Harrison, 1964). Among elderly Bantu men and women, snuff is usually retained in the front of the mouth. The saliva mixes with the snuff and is then swallowed. After the snuff has lost its flavour, the procedure is repeated (van Wyk, 1966).

(c) *Other smokeless-tobacco habits*(i) *Tobacco and lime (khaini)*

Tobacco is sometimes chewed in the presence of lime. In certain parts of *India*, this is referred to as *khaini*. A pinch of raw powdered tobacco is taken in the palm and a small amount of slaked lime paste is added; the mixture is then rubbed thoroughly with the thumb and placed in the mouth — generally in one or both cheeks, or in the mandibular groove. The mixture is retained for 10-15 min, after which time it becomes bland; occasionally it is left in the groove during sleep (Bhonsle *et al.*, 1979). Pieces of areca nut are sometimes chewed with *khaini*.

Use of *khaini* is prevalent among the Munda and Santal tribes of Bihar, India; it is usually placed in the inner side of the lower lip in the gingivolabial groove. Among those examined, approximately 42% of *khaini* users held the mixture in the front of the oral cavity, whereas others placed it either in the left or right side, where it was generally retained with very little chewing (Stich *et al.*, 1982).

Pattiwala tobacco is sun-cured tobacco leaf and is used with or without lime (Wahi, 1968). Mainpuri tobacco is a mixture with slaked lime, areca nut and spices; its use is discussed in the monograph on betel-quid and areca-nut chewing, p. 141.

(ii) *Mishri (misheri, masheri)*

Mishri is a form of tobacco used in *India* as a substitute for chewing tobacco. It is a 'roasted or half-burnt' tobacco, prepared by baking tobacco on a hot metal plate until it becomes uniformly black. It is then powdered and used primarily for cleaning teeth (Mehta *et*

al., 1972). However, its use frequently becomes habitual, and a user may apply and retain *mishri* in the mouth (usually along the teeth and in the sulcus) several times a day. Rural Indian women place it in the oral cavity between the gum and buccal mucosa instead of chewing tobacco (Murdia *et al.*, 1982).

Mishri usage has been reported from a house-to-house survey of 101 761 individuals in the state of Maharashtra, where 38.9% of the women and only 0.8% of the men used it (Mehta *et al.*, 1972). In a house-to-house survey of 10 071 individuals in Gujarat (the Bhavnagar District), 7.1% (mostly women) used *mishri* (Mehta *et al.*, 1971). The use of burnt tobacco for cleaning teeth was reported by 0.24% of the population in the Mainpuri District (Wahi, 1968).

(iii) *Zarda*, *kiwam* and pills

Zarda, which is produced and used in India, is also exported to a number of Arab countries (Sinha, 1984). During the manufacture of *zarda*, tobacco leaf is first broken into small pieces and boiled in water with lime and spices until evaporation. The residual particles of tobacco are then dried and coloured with vegetable dyes. *Zarda* is usually chewed mixed with finely-cut areca nut and spices.

For *kiwam*, the stalks, midribs and veins of tobacco leaves are removed, and the remaining matter is soaked and boiled in water with added rose water and powdered spices, such as saffron, cardamom, aniseed and musk. The mixture is stirred and allowed to macerate. The pulp is strained to remove any stalk or rib remnants and allowed to dry. The product has the consistency of a thick, rough paste. Granules or pills are prepared using the same process, but the paste is dried further and pelleted (Anon., 1953).

(iv) *Gudakhu*

Gudakhu is a paste consisting of powdered tobacco, molasses and some other ingredients. It is used for cleaning teeth by populations in central and eastern states of India. In a house-to-house survey of a random sample in Singhbhum (Bihar district), 8.3% of the population were reported to use this product (Mehta *et al.*, 1971).

(v) *Shammah*

Shammah is the native name for a tobacco mixture used in some parts of southern Saudi Arabia. It is described by Yousef and Hashash (1983) as a quid of powdered tobacco leaf, carbonate of lime, and other substances, including ash. Salem *et al.* (1984), however, describe *shammah* as a snuff prepared by mixing powdered tobacco leaves with sodium carbonate. The material, a greenish-yellow powder, is placed in the buccal or lower labial vestibule of the mouth. Periodically, the user spits out insoluble debris that is freed from the *shammah* bolus. In a survey made on 661 individuals in various geographical locations of the Gizan district, it was reported that 24% practised this chewing habit (Salem *et al.*, 1984).

(vi) *Nass*

The habit of using *nass* is practised by the native populations of Iran and the Soviet Central Asian Republics (the Uzbek, Turkmenian, Kirghiz, Tadzhik and Kazakh SSRs) (Shilovtsev, 1941; Joint Iran-International Agency for Research on Cancer Study Group, 1977; Paches & Milievskaia, 1980). It is usually made with local tobacco (which is sometimes only partially cured), ash, cotton oil or sesame oil and lime (Paches & Milievskaia, 1980). How-

ever, the composition of *nass* varies in the different regions in which it is used, the primary difference being the content of lime (Table 1). *Nass* prepared in the Tadzhik SSR and most types of *nass* prepared in the Kazakh SSR do not contain lime (Paches & Djuliev, 1965; Aleksandrova, 1970), whereas that in the Bukhara, Samarkand and Kashka-darya regions of the Uzbek SSR contains the highest amounts of lime (Paches & Milievskaya, 1980).

Table 1. Variations in the constituents of *nass* in five regions of the USSR*

Region	Constituents of <i>nass</i> (%)					
	Tobacco	Ash	Cotton oil	Sesame oil	Gum	Water
Bukhara	55	18	-	20	-	2
Kashka-darya	50	30	10	-	-	3
Samarkand	50	25	15	-	-	3
Tashkent	50	20	-	-	2	17
Fergana	55	20	-	-	3	18

*From Paches and Milievskaya (1980)

In addition to variations in composition, there are regional differences in the anatomical site in the mouth where *nass* is put (Aleksandrova, 1970; Khasanov & Fasiev, 1970; Zaridze *et al.*, 1985a). Nugmanov and Baimakanov (1970) reported that 60% of *nass* users in the Chimkent region of the Kazakh SSR put *nass* under the tongue, and 40% between the gum and lower lip. According to Aleksandrova (1970), 96% of *nass* users in the Djambul region of the Kazakh SSR place the *nass* against the inside of the lower lip. In a survey of 1569 men carried out in the Samarkand region of the Uzbek SSR, all but one of the *nass* users reported placing the *nass* under the tongue (Zaridze *et al.*, 1985a).

The daily frequency of *nass* chewing also varies considerably. Surveys indicate that most users take *nass* about 10-15 times per day (Aleksandrova, 1970; Khasanov & Fasiev, 1970; Zaridze *et al.*, 1985b,c). The saliva produced during chewing is expectorated and the mouth rinsed with water when the chew is removed.

According to various surveys, 4-49% of the adult population in *nass*-using areas practise this habit. In a survey of 15 672 persons living in urban (5135) and rural (10 537) areas of the Chimkent region (Oblast) of the Kazakh SSR, 7.5% of the total population and 49% of the native Kazakhs used *nass*. The proportional age distribution and proportion of *nass* users in each age group are given in Table 2; 67.8% of the *nass* users were men and 32.2% women (Nugmanov & Baimakanov, 1970).

According to another survey (Aleksandrova, 1970), the proportion of *nass* users in the Chimkent region is 4.5% (364 out of 8123 persons surveyed). A survey of 2012 persons in

Table 2. Age distribution of *nass* users in the Chimkent region of the Kazakh SSR*

Age (years)	% surveyed	% <i>nass</i> users
35-39	20.5	6.9
40-49	28.5	17.3
50-59	21.7	21.6
60-69	17.1	31.3
70+	12.2	22.9

*From Nugmanov and Baimakanov (1970)

the Djambul region of the Kazakh SSR revealed that 14.3% (289) used *nass*. In the Chimkent region, 22% of *nass* users were women, while in the Djambul region the proportion was 52%.

A survey of 988 persons aged 25 years and above in a rural area of the Mary region of the Turkmenian SSR revealed that 14% of persons of both sexes and 36% of men were *nass* users (Saparov, 1965).

A survey carried out in three regions (Vakhsh, Zeravshan and Gorno-Badakhshan) of Tadzhikistan revealed that 20%, 27% and 17%, respectively, of the population over the age of 20 years were *nass* users. In Tadzhikistan as a whole, the proportion of *nass* users was estimated to be 20% (Paches & Milievskaya, 1980). Of 6520 men and women residents of the Bukhara region of the Uzbek SSR, 1479 (22.6%) chewed *nass* (Khazanov & Fasiev, 1970).

The proportion of *nass* users in surveys carried out in Kirghiz was estimated as 5% (Paches & Djuliev, 1965).

A survey of 1569 men aged between 55 and 69 years, performed in the Samarkand region of the Uzbek SSR revealed that 636 (41%) of the men interviewed were *nass* users (Zaridze *et al.*, 1985a) and 3% both used *nass* and smoked (Zaridze *et al.*, 1985b,c).

(vii) Naswar

Naswar is widely used in Afghanistan and Pakistan. In Afghanistan, it is described as a mixture of powdered tobacco, slaked lime and indigo, and is available in ready-made form which is sold under licence from the government. Most people place it on the floor of the mouth; some put it in the labial groove behind the lower lip; and in rare cases it is placed on the dorsum of the tongue. It is kept in the mouth for about three to 10 min and then spat out; most people rinse their mouth with water after use (Mehta & Pindborg, 1968). To prepare *naswar*, water is poured into a cement-lined cavity; lime is added, followed by air-cured, dried, powdered tobacco and a colouring material, indigo. The ingredients are then thoroughly pounded and mixed. A large, heavy, wooden mallet (an ingenious contrivance raises the wooden mallet-head and brings it down heavily on the mixture) is used for thorough mixing. A number of people in rural areas make their own *naswar* in a manner similar to that used in commerce (Mehta & Pindborg, 1968).

In Pakistan, *naswar* is manufactured by mashing and blending high-nicotine, sun-cured *Nicotiana rustica* tobaccos with ashes of plants, slaked lime, water and flavouring essences, usually cardamom oil and menthol, and the product is formed into semi-dried pellets and powder. It is placed in the mouth behind the lower lip and chewed slowly. Its use dates back to the introduction of tobacco into this region (Ahmad, 1976).

Consumption in Pakistan in 1975 was estimated to be 5.0 million pounds (2.3 million kg) (Ahmad, 1976).

1.4 Manufacturing processes

(a) Chewing tobacco

Types of chewing tobacco produced by local techniques and those for which limited information was available on the manufacturing processes are described in the previous sections.

Complete details of current US manufacturing processes for plug, twist and loose-leaf tobacco were not available to the Working Group; however, a general description can be given on the basis of published reports. Usually, tobacco is aged for one to four years, during which time natural fermentation occurs (Shapiro, 1981; Rizio, 1984). Beyond this step, the techniques differ for specific products.

Loose-leaf chewing tobaccos are made with cigar leaf from Pennsylvania and Wisconsin. Following removal of the stem, the tobacco is cut into uniform strips and flavourings are added, which may include honey, liquorice and rum. The combination of ingredients and quantities vary with the brand. One sweet type contained 56% tobacco materials and 44% combined flavouring additives and moisture (Akehurst, 1981).

Plug chewing tobaccos are made with the same aged, cut and blended tobacco used in loose-leaf as well as with air- and fire-cured types (Rizio, 1984). Leaf strips may be immersed in a mixture of liquorice and some form of sugar before being pressed into the plug form. The pressed leaf blends are then wrapped in fine tobacco and moulded into flat bars. The consumer bites or cuts off a small portion of the plug and places it in the mouth.

Twist chewing tobaccos are made with air-cured types such as burley, as well as with fire-cured types; flavouring ingredients and sugar may be added. The twist is created by twisting the tobacco leaves into a shape that resembles a rope (Rizio, 1984).

In the UK, chewing tobacco is made only in plug form. It is unsweetened and usually made of fire-cured tobacco. The wrapper is a particularly fine, thin, well-textured leaf, and the moisture content of the manufactured plug is approximately 30% (Akehurst, 1981).

Chewing tobacco in India is made from *Nicotiana rustica* and *N. tabacum*. The tobacco leaves are harvested when they turn yellow and brown spots start appearing; the leaves remain in the field and are turned over occasionally to achieve uniform drying. They are then tied in bundles and moistened by sprinkling with water; the bundles are stacked for fermentation for a couple of weeks, separated and dried again. The leaves are cut into various sizes. About 85% of the tobacco harvested are consumed raw without further processing.

Nass is not produced commercially in the USSR but is produced and sold at local markets by peasants.

(b) Snuff

The quality of tobacco is dependent upon the soil and climate where it is grown, as well as the variety. The final snuff product is also influenced by such factors as harvesting and curing; and the drying process is critical to the ultimate chemical composition of the tobacco. Manufacturers may vary the composition of the final product through the use of additives, the identities of which are protected by rules of proprietary information.

(i) USA

In the USA, snuff is made primarily from Kentucky, Tennessee, and Virginia air- and fire-cured tobaccos. After the dark tobacco has been stalk-harvested, it may be air- or fire-cured, a process that requires several weeks. In the fire-curing process, the leaf undergoes a yellowing stage, after which brown spots start to appear; a small amount of heat is then created by lighting small fires, thus slowly reducing the humidity. When the stems have darkened, the tobacco is exposed to large volumes of heavy smoke for two to three weeks.

The number of fires is reduced, and the sawdust and floor are kept wet continuously. As soon as the firing is completed, the tobacco is gathered into piles to preserve the finish and flavour (Everette, 1958).

In general, the whole tobacco leaf is used. The leaves are aged for one to four years; snuff tobacco may be allowed to age for a greater number of years than chewing tobacco (Shapiro, 1981; Rizio, 1984). Following ageing, the tobacco is cut into strips, the size of which depends upon the product, and then undergoes fermentation for several weeks. The moisture is adjusted, and the tobacco is cut to meet product specifications. Casings (hygroscopic agents and flavouring constituents, including synthetic sweetening agents (see IARC, 1980)) may be added; however, the composition is proprietary information (Akehurst, 1981). Some products undergo a second fermentation, the temperature and duration of which are carefully monitored; this second fermentation may take several years. After these curing processes, the tobacco is ground into coarse-, medium- or fine-grained powder. The powdered tobacco is then moistened again with additives (Pöschl, 1983).

(ii) *Europe*

In Sweden, snuff is manufactured from dark Kentucky and Virginia tobaccos that are stronger than those used for cigarettes. Water and salt are added to keep the product fresh before it is heated. Various ingredients are then added, the exact composition remaining a trade secret (Hirsch, 1983).

In addition to the method used in the USA, three further processes are used in the manufacture of snuff in Europe.

In the 'Rapid' method, tobacco leaves and stems are pulverized in high-speed, blower-type crushers, sieved and then moistened with a brine solution. The tobacco is then fermented rapidly in hot rooms for six to eight weeks. It is sieved again and mixed with 5-8% fine salt and then fermented for a longer period of time. The Rapid method is the most widely used process today and produces the so-called 'green' snuffs known as *Kovno*, 'refreshment' tobacco, and Danzig types, as well as the modern English type of snuff. Menthol, peppermint oil, camphor and other aromatic additives, such as attar of roses and oil of cloves (see IARC, 1985), are blended with the tobacco. The grain size is small, much like powder. An important feature of these rapid-method snuffs is their high concentration of aromatics (Pöschl, 1983).

In the 'Paris' method, Virginia and Kentucky tobaccos are pounded in salt water and left to ferment for several years in cool storage rooms. The tobacco is then compressed into batches and subsequently crushed or pulverized by pounding machines, sieved, and remoistened with salt water. This method produces the so-called 'black' varieties, such as 'Paris' and 'Saarbrücken'. The Paris method is used in the Federal Republic of Germany and France (Pöschl, 1983).

The final type of processing is by the 'Schmalzler' method. The tobacco leaves, which come mainly from Brazil, are cut and moistened with sugar sauces prior to fermentation at high temperatures over a period of a few months. The tobacco is then dried and ground in special machines called 'grinding chairs', sieved, and then moistened with fine oils. At one time, clarified butter was used on Brazilian tobacco, leading to use of the term 'Schmalzler' (*schmalz* is the German word for lard or melted fat). The fragrance of Schmalzler tobacco results from the admixture of 'mangotes', which are ropes of tobacco that have been treated with special sugar sauces, fermented and then pressed and sewn into fresh cowhides (Pöschl, 1983).

Britain's largest snuff producer uses dark-fired tobacco leaves and stems, mostly from Malawi. The dried leaves are ground into a coarse powder in a motor-powered mortar before being reduced to a finer powder in a grinder. After potash, soda ash and pharmaceutical soda have been added to the sieved tobacco, ground menthol is blended in (Anon., 1981).

(iii) *Asia, Africa and other regions*

With the exception of India, Thailand and Turkey, almost no manufacture of snuff is carried out in Asia, eastern Europe or South America (Pöschl, 1983).

Oriental snuff is used in such countries as Thailand and differs in its preparation and constituents from that used in Europe and the USA. It consists of approximately 50% dry tobacco and 50% oriental gum with a small amount of pulverized cuttle bone. The gum is made by heating 'white earth', which contains calcium carbonate and phosphate, at high temperatures in a kiln. After the addition of water, the gum paste is mixed with tobacco and dried in the sun (Harrison, 1964).

In parts of Africa, snuff is prepared by mixing powdered tobacco leaves with ash from various incinerated plants, such as aloe, *Amaranthus spinosum* or *Turbinata oblongata*; oils and lemon juice are sometimes added (Keen *et al.*, 1955; Harrison, 1964; Baumslag *et al.*, 1971).

1.5 Production and use

(a) *Chewing tobacco*

(i) *Production*

US production data for the major categories of chewing-tobacco products have been reported by one source for the period 1931-1980 (US Department of Agriculture, 1984a). Selected data that show the trends of production for each category are shown in Table 3. Maxwell (1984) reported US production data under slightly different categories, as summarized in Table 4, in which certain types of fine-cut smokeless tobacco that had been classified as chewing tobacco prior to 1980 have been recategorized as moist/fine-cut snuff.

Table 3. US production of chewing tobacco by major category*

Year	Production (millions of kg)				
	Plug	Twist	Fine-cut	Loose-leaf	Total
1931	34.8	2.9	1.9	27.8	67.4
1942	24.6	2.7	2.3	21.9	51.7
1950	18.2	2.5	1.2	17.7	39.7
1960	12.0	1.5	1.4	14.5	29.5
1962	11.8	1.3	1.5	14.7	29.4
1974	8.3	1.0	2.8	23.3	35.5
1979	7.0	0.9	6.1	31.8	45.8
1980	7.6	0.9	6.7	32.8	48.1

*Data from US Department of Agriculture (1984a)

Table 4. US production of chewing tobacco by major category*

Year	Production (millions of kg)				
	Plug ^b	Moist plug ^b	Twist/roll ^c	Loose-leaf	Total ^d
1981	5.1	2.9	0.9	32.0	40.9
1982	4.6	2.3	0.8	32.2	39.9
1983	4.4	2.0	0.8	32.2	39.3

*Data from Maxwell (1984)

^bData for plug plus moist plug correspond to data for plug in Table 3^cData correspond to data for twist in Table 3^dExcludes data for moist/fine-cut tobacco, which is currently classified as snuff

Data on production of chewing tobacco in selected countries during the period 1974-1978 are given in Table 5.

Table 5. Production of chewing tobacco in selected countries*

Country	Production (thousands of kg)				
	1974	1975	1976	1977	1978
Algeria			4045.7	4220.2	
Austria			8.9	5.2	
Belgium	7.1	6.0	4.8	3.9	3.3
Canada			230.6	197.8	
Denmark	102.0	99.0	90.0	84.8	80.5
Egypt			52.0	50.0	
Finland			1.3	1.2	
France			133.6	131.0	
Libyan Arab Jamahiriya			80.3	79.3	
Mexico			1000.0	1050.0	
Netherlands	313.0	288.0	253.0	253.0	
Pakistan			2344.0	3954.9	
South Africa	158.5	185.3	181.1	158.7	139.9
Sweden	13.0	12.0	12.0	13.0	13.0
Tunisia			705.3	752.9	

*Data from Anon. (1978, 1979)

Available statistics on production and exports of chewing tobacco for India in recent years are shown in Table 6.

Table 6. Available statistics on production and exports of chewing tobacco for India (millions of kg)*

	1977-1978	1978-1979	1979-1980	1980-1981	1981-1982
Production	70.8	70	72	85.3	85
Export	4.0	8.9	9.2	7.0	-

*From Sinha (1984)

Although a major portion of the chewing tobacco produced in India is used internally, considerable quantities of scented tobacco and *zarda* are exported to a large number of countries, particularly to Arab countries; Saudi Arabia is the major importer of Indian chewing tobacco. It is also exported to Bahrain, Belgium, Dubai, Egypt, Israel, Kuwait, the Maldives, Nepal, Oman, Qatar, Singapore, Somalia, the UK and the USA (Sinha, 1984).

(ii) Use

In 1880, the earliest recorded year, US per-capita consumption of chewing tobacco was 3.15 pounds (1.43 kg) per person aged 14 years or over (Wynder *et al.*, 1957a). The highest US per-capita consumption for persons aged 15 years or over occurred in 1900, at 4.1 pounds (1.9 kg), followed by a gradual decrease to 0.5 pounds (0.23 kg) in 1962 (Schuman, 1977). Per-capita consumption by males 18 years and older was 1.05 pounds in 1966, increasing to 1.34 pounds (0.61 kg) in 1979 (US Department of Agriculture, 1980). In 1982, some chewing-tobacco products were reclassified as snuff. Under this new classification, male per-capita consumption was 1.06 pounds (0.48 kg) in 1983 (US Department of Agriculture, 1984b).

Data on total use of chewing tobacco have been reported for various countries for the period 1920-1973 (International Trade Centre, 1968; Wilson, 1975). Selected data on trends in individual countries are shown in Table 7. Additional data on sales in four countries during 1974-1978 are given in Table 8.

Estimated per-capita consumption of chewing tobacco in selected countries is summarized in Table 9.

(b) Snuff

(i) Production

Data for production of snuff in selected countries during the period 1974-1978 are given in Table 10 (Anon., 1978, 1979).

The production of snuff in the USA increased from 4 million pounds (1.8 million kg) to more than 40 million pounds (18 million kg) between 1880 and 1930 (Garner, 1951). US production of snuff for the period 1931-1980 has been reported by the US Department of Agriculture (1984a). Selected data to show the trends are shown in Table 11. Maxwell (1984) reported US production data under different categories, as summarized in Table 12, in which certain types of fine-cut smokeless tobacco that had been classified as chewing tobacco prior to 1982 have been recategorized as moist/fine-cut snuff.

The Federal Republic of Germany is the largest producer of nasal snuff (about 250 tonnes per year), followed by the UK (about 150 tonnes per year), and France and Italy (less than 100 tonnes per year) (Pöschl, 1980).

In the Federal Republic of Germany, manufacturers of snuff produce many varieties and flavours, of which the best known type is Bavarian 'Schmalzler'. Most of the snuff produced in Germany is flavoured with menthol. Snuff for nasal use is produced chiefly in Bavaria, particularly in Landshut, where some 70% of German snuff manufacturing is located (Pöschl, 1983).

Table 7. Tobacco use in various countries (millions of kg)^a

Year	Austria		Brazil		Canada		Denmark		France		Germany (Fed. Rep.) ^b		India		Norway		Sweden ^c	
	Chewing tobacco		Cut tobacco	Plug tobacco	Plug tobacco	Plug tobacco	Chewing tobacco		Chewing tobacco		Chewing tobacco		Chewing tobacco		Chewing tobacco		Chewing tobacco	
1920	-	-	-	-	-	3	1.4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0.4	-
1922	-	-	-	-	-	4.6	0.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0.3	-
1930	0.4	-	-	-	-	2.7	0.9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0.1	-
1940	0.3	-	-	-	-	1.4	0.6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0.1	-
1945	0.05	-	1.1	41	-	1.4	0.7	-	0.5	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0.04	-
1948	0.05	-	1.1	41.3	-	1.0	0.4	-	0.4	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0.04	-
1950	0.2	-	1.1	41.4	-	1.0	0.4	-	0.6	-	-	-	56.6	-	-	-	0.04	-
1955	0.1	-	0.9	41.6	-	0.7	0.3	-	0.5	-	-	-	58.5	-	-	-	0.04	-
1960	0.05	-	1.3	40.8	-	0.5	0.3	-	0.6	-	-	-	53.7	-	-	-	0.04	-
1962	0.05	-	1.5	39.2	-	0.5	0.2	-	0.5	-	1.5	-	60.4	-	-	-	0.04	-
1963	0.05	-	1.6	38.4	-	0.4	0.2	-	0.5	-	1.4	-	64	-	-	-	0.04	-
1964	0.05	-	1.7	37.6	-	0.4	0.2	-	0.5	-	1.2	-	54.2	-	-	-	0	-
1965	0.05	-	1.8	36.8	-	0.4	0.2	-	0.5	-	1.3	-	53.8	-	-	-	0	-
1966	0.05	-	1.8	35.9	-	0.4	0.2	-	0.5	-	1.3	-	53.7	-	-	-	0	-
1973	0	-	2.2	29.3	-	0.3	0.1	-	0.5	-	-	-	43.4	-	-	-	0	-

^aData from Wilson (1975), unless otherwise specified^bData from International Trade Centre (1968)^cSvenska Tobaks Ab (1964, 1973) reported that use in Sweden was less than 50 tonnes in all years from 1947 on, and the Swedish Tobacco Co. (1983) reported that consumption of chewing tobacco in Sweden was 15 tonnes in 1973 and 23.3 tonnes in 1982.

Table 8. Sales of chewing tobacco in selected countries (thousands of kg)^a

Country	1974	1975	1976	1977	1978
Netherlands	313.0	293.0	256.0	263.0	-
Norway	85.0	63.0	69.0	69.0	59.0
South Africa	152.5	185.3	181.1	158.7	139.9
Sweden	1.6	1.7	2.4	2.0	1.9

^aData from Anon. (1979)Table 9. Estimated per-capita consumption (g) of chewing tobacco in selected countries^a

Country	1962	1963	1964	1965	1966
Austria	8	8	8	8	8
Canada	41	36	35	32	31
Denmark	88	66	66	51	50
France	16	14	15	14	14
Germany, Federal Republic of	37	34	30	33	32
Norway	67	52	50	50	50
Sweden	8	-	-	-	-

^aData from International Trade Centre (1968)Table 10. Production of snuff in selected countries (thousands of kg)^a

Country	1974	1975	1976	1977	1978
Algeria	-	-	745.3	992.1	-
Austria	-	-	2.9	2.0	-
Belgium	6.4	5.2	3.6	3.0	2.9
Canada	594.2	553.6	585.5	570.5	585.9
Denmark	241.0	240.0	223.0	215.3	202.9
Egypt	-	-	22.0	9.0	-
Finland	-	-	13.2	14.2	-
France	-	-	80.0	70.0	-
Germany, Federal Republic of	-	-	292.0	294.0	-
Ireland	11.0	10.0	10.0	9.0	9.0
Israel	-	36.5	35.2	35.2	33.0
Italy	145.6	107.2	126.4	150.8	85.0
Libyan Arab Jamahiriya	-	-	11.6	15.0	-
Morocco	-	-	60.6	68.1	-
Pakistan	-	-	4501.0	4082.0	-
South Africa	1391.0	1474.1	1495.0	1363.8	1244.2
Sweden	2831.0	2917.0	3241.0	3523.0	3468.0
Switzerland	-	-	10.0	8.3	-
USA	-	-	11271.0	11164.0	-

^aData from Anon. (1978, 1979)

Table 11. US production of snuff^a

Year	Production ^b (millions of kg)
1931	18.1
1935	16.4
1943	19.6
1945	19.9
1950	18.2
1960	15.7
1965	13.0
1975	11.4
1980	10.9

^aData from US Department of Agriculture (1984a)^bPrior to 1982, some moist/fine-cut snuff was classified as chewing tobacco.Table 12. US production of snuff by major category^a

Year	Production (millions of kg)		
	Dry snuff	Moist/fine-cut ^b snuff	Total
1981	5.3	13.8	19.2
1982	5.1	14.9	20.0
1983	4.9	15.9	20.7

^aData from Maxwell (1984)^bPrior to 1982, some moist/fine-cut snuff was classified as chewing tobacco.

World production of snuff is estimated to be 20 million kg per year. Production of snuff tobacco for nasal use amounts to only about one million kg per year at the most. The remainder is used for *snus* and *souffi* used in Scandinavia and North Africa, respectively, and 'moist snuff' used in the USA; these are not the same forms of snuff tobacco that are used nasally and are meant for oral use (Pöschl, 1983).

(ii) Use

Data on total use of snuff have been reported for various countries for the period 1920-1973 (Wilson, 1975) and for Sweden for the period 1973-1982 (Swedish Tobacco Co., 1980, 1981, 1982, 1983). Selected data on trends in individual countries are shown in Table 13. Additional data on sales in seven countries for the period 1974-1978 are given in Table 14.

In 1880, the earliest recorded year, US consumption of snuff was 0.12 pounds (0.05 kg) per person aged 14 years or over (Wynder *et al.*, 1957a). The highest US per-capita consumption of snuff for persons aged 15 years or over occurred in the period 1910-1920 at 0.50 pounds (0.2 kg). Consumption *per capita* decreased steadily but slowly from 1920 to 1962, to 0.26 pounds (0.12 kg) (Schuman, 1977). Per-capita consumption for persons aged 18 years and over was 0.23 pounds (0.10 kg) in 1966 and decreased to 0.15 pounds (0.07 kg) in 1979 (US Department of Agriculture, 1980). In 1982, some chewing tobacco products were reclassified as snuff. Under this new classification, US per-capita consumption (18 years and over, including overseas forces) of snuff was 0.26 pounds (0.12 kg) in 1982 and 1983 (US Department of Agriculture, 1984b).

Table 13. Snuff use in various countries (millions of kg)^{a,b}

Year	Austria	Canada	Denmark	Finland	France	India	Ireland	Italy	Morocco	Norway	South Africa	Sweden ^c	United Kingdom
1920	-	0.3	0.2	0.04	-	-	0.1	-	-	-	0.04	6.5	-
1928	0.1	0.4	0.3	0.1	-	-	0.1	-	-	0.4	0.04	5.0	0.4
1932	0.1	0.4	0.4	0.04	2.5	-	0.1	-	-	0.4	-	4.9	0.4
1940	0.1	0.4	0.5	0.04	1.4	-	0.1	-	0.3	0.5	0.1	3.9	0.4
1945	0	0.4	0.5	0	0.9	-	0.1	-	0.4	0.3	0.1	3.5	0.5
1950	0.04	0.4	0.5	0.04	0.8	2.5	0.04	-	0.4	0.5	0.1	3.1	0.3
1955	0	0.4	0.4	0.04	0.6	4.4	0.04	-	0.4	0.4	0	2.9	0.3
1960	0	0.4	0.4	0	0.4	5.5	0.04	0.4	0.4	0.4	0	2.7	0.3
1965	0	0.4	0.4	0.04	0.3	4.3	0	0.3	0.4	0.4	0.1	2.5	0.2
1970	0	0.4	0.3	0.04	0.2	4.5	0	0.2	0.4	0.3	0.1	2.5	0.2
1973	0	0.4	0.2	0	0.1	4.3	0	0.1	-	0.3	0.1	2.7	0.2

^aData from Wilson (1975)^bOther data reported by Wilson (1975) include the following (millions of kg): Argentina, 0.1 in 1951, 0.0 in all other years (1940-1973); Barbados, 0.004 from 1964-1972, 0.0 in 1973; Iceland, 0.02-0.04 from 1932-1973; Portugal, 0.04 from 1940-1953 and in 1957, 0.0 in all other years (1954-1956, 1958-1972)^cThe Swedish Tobacco Co. (1983) reported that snuff use in Sweden increased from 2.7 million kg in 1973 to 3.4 million kg in 1982.

Table 14. Sales of snuff (thousands of kg)*

Country	1974	1975	1976	1977	1978
Australia	0.8	1.2	0.8	1.0	1.4
Canada	660.0	579.4	534.3	560.8	570.2
Ireland	10.9	10.1	9.5	8.5	9.6
Italy	142.9	126.5	122.8	110.8	104.9
Norway	283.0	263.0	267.0	283.0	268.0
South Africa	1391.0	1474.1	1495.0	1363.8	1244.2
Sweden	2812.0	2943.0	3189.0	3361.0	3442.0

*Data from Anon. (1979)

Use of snuff in Pakistan is declining and amounted to only 0.6 million pounds (0.3 million kg) in 1975. It was estimated that there would be a further decline to 0.4 million pounds (0.18 million kg) by 1980 (Ahmad, 1976).

Estimated per-capita consumption of snuff in selected countries is summarized in Table 15.

Table 15. Estimated per-capita consumption (g) of snuff in selected countries*

Country	1962	1963	1964	1965	1966
Canada	33	29	32	32	27
Denmark	12	12	12	10	10
France	10	9	9	9	7
Ireland	21	20	-	-	-
Italy	11	10	9	8	7
Norway	167	167	161	146	146
Sweden	430	420	420	410	400
UK	9	9	9	9	8

*Data from International Trade Centre (1968)

Estimated annual usage of nasal snuff in various countries is as follows (thousands of kg): the Federal Republic of Germany, 300; UK, 200; France and Italy, less than 100 each. Other countries in which it is used include Belgium, the German Democratic Republic, Switzerland and South Africa (Pöschl, 1983). Use of snuff in Austria and the eastern European countries is comparatively low, and use is relatively rare in the Near East.

2. Chemical Data Relevant to the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk to Humans

There is a great deal of literature on the chemistry of tobacco, most of which refers to *Nicotiana tabacum*, utilized in western Europe and North America.

At least 2549 individual constituents have been identified in tobacco (Dube & Green, 1982). This number includes the tobacco constituents themselves as well as chemicals that

are applied to tobacco during cultivation, harvesting and processing. Major classes of compounds identified in tobacco are aliphatic and aromatic hydrocarbons, aldehydes, ketones, alcohols, phenols, ethers, carboxylic acids, esters, anhydrides, lactones, carbohydrates, amines, amides, imides, nitriles, *N*- and *O*-heterocyclic compounds and chlorinated organic compounds, and at least 35 metal compounds (Wynder & Hoffmann, 1967; Stedman, 1968; Tso, 1972; Enzell *et al.*, 1977; Schmeltz & Hoffmann, 1977; Davis *et al.*, 1981; Dube & Green, 1982).

2.1 Aliphatic hydrocarbons

Waxy leaf coatings are almost universal throughout the plant kingdom. The major wax constituents are alkanes, alkenes, alcohols, carboxylic acids, esters, aldehydes and ketones. In tobacco, the alkanes (non-volatile aliphatic hydrocarbons) consist primarily of compounds with chain lengths of C_{25} - C_{35} . They comprise a homologue series of normal (*n*), iso (*i*, 2-methyl) and ante-iso (*a*, 3-methyl) saturated hydrocarbons (Mold *et al.*, 1963). Table 16 presents the percentages of non-volatile hydrocarbons in various tobaccos.

Table 16. Aliphatic hydrocarbons in tobacco^a

Hydrocarbon	Kentucky reference cigarette ^b	Flue-cured tobacco ^c	Cigarette tobacco blend ^d	Flue-cured tobacco ^a
<i>n</i> -C ₂₅	0.76	0.10	1.71	0.80
<i>n</i> -C ₂₆	0.33	0.42	0.83	0.44
<i>n</i> -C ₂₇	5.67	6.56	7.73	5.67
<i>a</i> -C ₂₈	0.27	0.40	0.13	1.29
<i>n</i> -C ₂₈	0.61	0.74	0.89	
<i>i</i> -C ₂₉	1.82	2.03	1.24	9.22
<i>n</i> -C ₂₉	6.16	5.41	6.72	
<i>a</i> -C ₃₀	6.46	7.30	5.65	9.79
<i>n</i> -C ₃₀	2.17	2.49	3.16	
<i>i</i> -C ₃₁	12.81	14.19	10.92	39.51
<i>n</i> -C ₃₁	23.81	21.31	26.30	
<i>a</i> -C ₃₂	12.89	15.25	13.02	16.93
<i>n</i> -C ₃₂	3.85	4.23	4.88	
<i>i</i> -C ₃₃	6.26	6.96	15.62	15.13
<i>n</i> -C ₃₃	12.81	10.00	10.77	
<i>a</i> -C ₃₄	1.14	1.21	1.15	1.09
<i>n</i> -C ₃₄	0.33	0.28	-	
<i>i</i> -C ₃₅	-	0.16	-	
<i>n</i> -C ₃₅	0.43	0.28	-	

^aThe values in this table represent the percentile composition of the paraffin fraction.

^bFrom Chortyk *et al.* (1975). Paraffin fraction, as its percentile composition of the tobacco blend, was not specified

^cFrom Chortyk *et al.* (1975). Paraffin fraction represents 0.36% of the flue-cured tobacco

^dFrom Mold *et al.* (1963). Paraffin fraction represents 0.20-0.28% of the cigarette blend

^eFrom From Severson *et al.* (1981). Total *n*, *i*- and *a*-isomers represent 0.15% of the flue-cured tobacco

2.2 Isoprenoids

The typical aroma of the tobacco leaf is created during post-harvest treatment. The major contributors to the aroma are isoprenoids (Rowland & Roberts, 1963; Demole & Enggist, 1976; Enzell *et al.*, 1977; Enzell & Wahlberg, 1980). The most prevalent acyclic isoprenoids

are solanesol, solanesenes, solanone, phytone, neophytadiene and norphytene. In processed tobacco, the most abundant of these, neophytadiene, which originates from chlorophyll *via* phytol, can occur in amounts of up to 0.2% (Wynder & Hoffmann, 1967; Enzell & Wahlberg, 1980; Severson *et al.*, 1981). Solanesol occurs in tobacco in free form (0.4%) and as fatty acid esters, predominantly palmitate and linoleate (Wynder & Hoffmann, 1967). In addition to the isoprenoids, hundreds of acyclic and cyclic isoprenoids have been identified in processed tobacco (Enzell & Wahlberg, 1980), the most abundant being duvatrienediols, levantenolides and β -carotene (Wynder & Hoffmann, 1967; Enzell & Wahlberg, 1980).

2.3 Phytosterols

The most widely distributed sterols in higher plants are C_{29} -sterols with a 3-hydroxy group- $\Delta^{5,6}$ unsaturation, stigmasterol and sitosterols. The sterols in tobacco are free alcohols, esters and glycosides (Wynder & Hoffmann, 1967; Tso, 1972; Schmeltz *et al.*, 1975; Davis, 1976; Enzell *et al.*, 1977). Table 17 presents data on the four major phytosterols, which amount to 0.15-0.2% (dry weight) of some processed tobacco types.

Table 17. Phytosterols in processed tobacco ($\mu\text{g/g}$)^a

Phytosterol	Tobacco type	Free alcohol	Esters and glycosides	Total steroids
Cholesterol	Cigarette blend	129	45	174
	Cigar filler	155	131	286
	Flue-cured L-1	151	25	176
	Flue-cured L-2	165	49	214
Campesterol	Cigarette blend	197	131	328
	Cigar filler	226	213	439
	Flue-cured L-1	192	36	228
	Flue-cured L-2	241	88	329
Stigmasterol	Cigarette blend	480	94	574
	Cigar filler	584	414	998
	Flue-cured L-1	677	43	720
	Flue-cured L-2	715	108	823
Sitosterol	Cigarette blend	288	181	469
	Cigar filler	329	310	639
	Flue-cured L-1	313	71	384
	Flue-cured L-2	662	278	940
Total sterols	Cigarette blend	1094	451	1545
	Cigar filler	1294	1068	2362
	Flue-cured L-1	1333	175	1508
	Flue cured L-2	1783	523	2306

^aData for cigarette blend and cigar filler (wet weight, 11.7%) from Schmeltz *et al.* (1975); data for flue-cured tobacco (dry weight) from Davis (1976)

2.4 Polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs)

Although it has been known for a long time that tobacco smoke contains naphthalene and PAHs (IARC, 1983a), it is less well known that traces of these aromatic hydrocarbons are also found in processed tobaccos (Wynder & Hoffmann, 1967). Whereas naphthalene and its alkyl derivatives may be formed from certain cyclic isoprenoids during tobacco processing, especially during flue-curing, the presence of PAHs in processed tobacco at the part-per-billion level is more likely to be due to contamination with ambient air pollutants or pollu-

hytene. In pro-
cess from chloro-
1967; Enzell &
form (0.4%) and
mann, 1967). In
been identified
duvatrienediols,
g, 1980).

th a 3-hydroxy
are free alco-
ltz *et al.*, 1975;
or phytosterols,

tants from heating sources used for the curing process. One US cigarette blend contained 170 µg/kg naphthalene, 18 µg/kg 1-methylnaphthalene and 42 µg/kg 2-methylnaphthalene (Schmeltz *et al.*, 1976). Certain types of tobaccos are treated with wood smoke in order to enhance the flavour of the resulting tobacco smoke. For a processed Latakia tobacco, the following data were reported: 1.1 mg/kg naphthalene, 2.8 and 2.6 mg/kg 1- and 2-methylnaphthalene, respectively, 1.4 mg/kg 1- and 2-ethylnaphthalene, 28.6 mg/kg of 10 isomeric dimethylnaphthalenes, 7.8 mg/kg of 11 isomeric ethylmethylnaphthalenes and 24.4 mg/kg of seven isomeric trimethylnaphthalenes (Nicolaus & Elmenhorst, 1982).

Campbell and Lindsey (1956) reported up to 0.3 mg/kg acenaphthalene, 3 mg/kg phenanthrene, 1.1 mg/kg anthracene, 0.8 mg/kg pyrene, 0.15 mg/kg fluoranthene and 0.08 mg/kg benzo[a]pyrene in processed tobaccos. Significantly higher levels (6.6 mg/kg phenanthrene) were found in a dark pipe tobacco. Onishi *et al.* (1957) reported levels as high as 5 mg/kg phenanthrene, 4.2 mg/kg anthracene, 1.8 mg/kg pyrene and 1.4 mg/kg fluoranthene in a Japanese burley leaf.

In a UK snuff, Campbell and Lindsey (1977) found 260 µg/kg pyrene, 335 µg/kg fluoranthene and 7.2 µg/kg benzo[a]pyrene. Cooper and Campbell (1955) reported the following levels of PAHs in Zulu snuff: 50-70 µg/kg anthracene, 560-580 µg/kg pyrene, 800 µg/kg fluoranthene, 250-270 µg/kg benzo[a]pyrene and 140 µg/kg benzo[ghi]perylene; and in Venda snuff, the following values were found: anthracene, 10 µg/kg; pyrene, 80-90 µg/kg; fluoranthene, 120-150 µg/kg; and benzo[a]pyrene was present. In Indian snuff and *mishri*, PAHs occurred in amounts similar to those reported in other studies (Bhide *et al.*, 1984a).

2.5 Alcohols

Tobacco contains isoprenoids with one or more alcoholic functional groups, such as solanesol, duvatriene diols and phytol (see p. 00) and a number of sterols. In addition, long-chain alcohols, eicosanol ($C_{20}H_{41}OH$), docosanol ($C_{22}H_{45}OH$) (Tso, 1972), tetracosanol ($C_{24}H_{49}OH$) and octacosanol ($C_{28}H_{57}OH$), were identified (Severson *et al.*, 1978). Levels of alcohols and sterols in four varieties of flue-cured tobacco are given in Table 18 (Higman *et al.*, 1979). Dark air-cured tobaccos, such as those used for snuff, were also found to contain 6-methyl-5-hepten-2-ol, 3,7-dimethyl-1,6-octadien-3-ol (linalool), 2-buten-2-ol, 2-methyl-1-penten-3-ol, 3-methyl-2-buten-1-ol, 3-methyl-1-penten-3-ol, 2,6-dimethylcyclohexanol, benzyl alcohol and phenylethanol (Davis *et al.*, 1981).

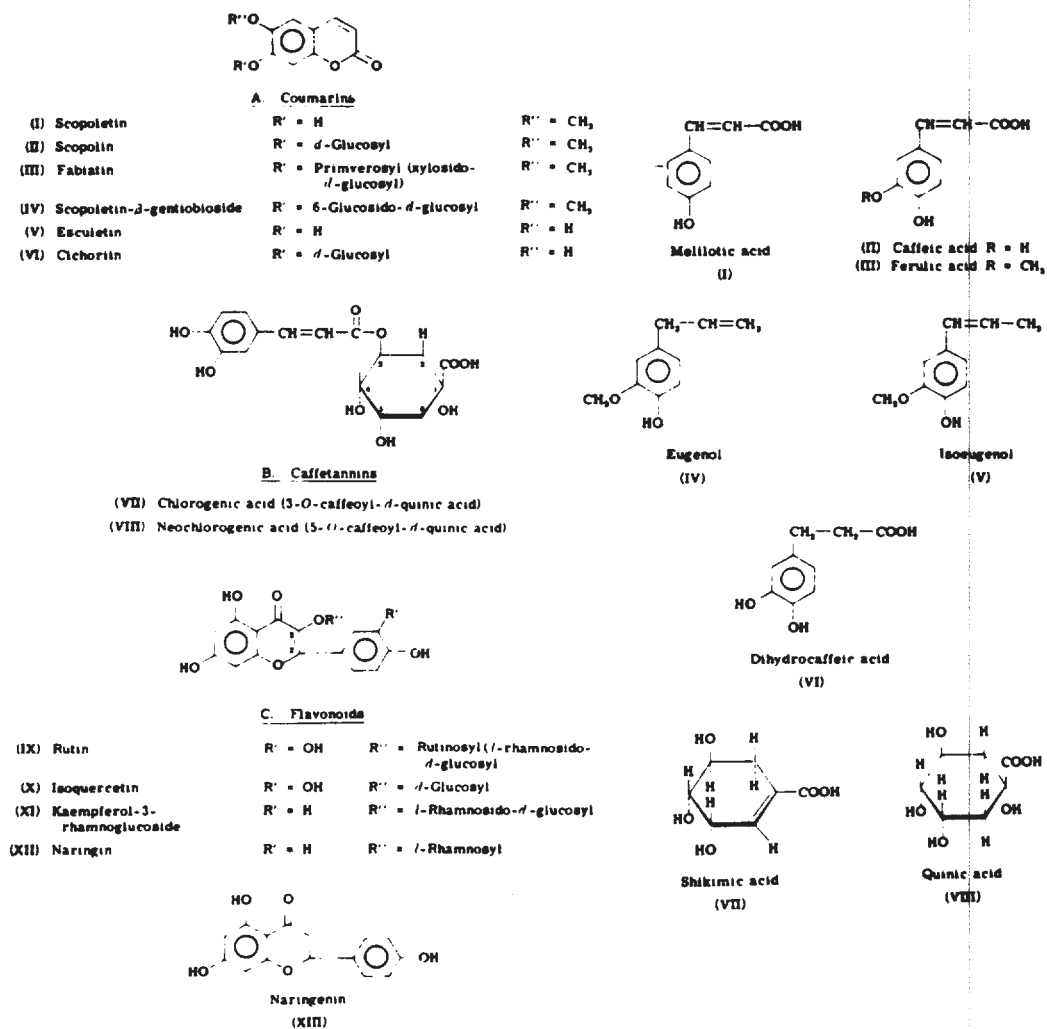
Table 18. Alcohols and sterols (mg/kg) in flue-cured varieties of tobacco*

Compound	Concentration
<i>Terpenes and alcohols</i>	
Phytol	149-192
Docosanol	61-123
β-Amyrin	47-242
Cycloartenol	83-277
<i>Solanesol and sterols</i>	
Solanesol	0.88-22.4
Cholesterol	0.09-0.21
Campesterol	0.41-0.98
Stigmasterol	
Sitosterol	0.23-0.71

*NC2326, SC1971, Coker 139 and Speight G-28 (Higman *et al.*, 1979)

2.6 Phenols and phenolic acid

Tobacco-leaf phenols comprise coumarins, caffetannins and flavonoids (Fig. 1). The percentage contents of the two major tobacco polyphenols, chlorogenic acid and rutin (for information on the aglycone of rutin, quercetin, see IARC, 1983b) in a number of processed tobaccos are given in Table 19 (Häusermann & Waltz, 1962). In addition, simple phenols, derived partially from hydrolysis of the polyphenols, have been isolated from processed tobacco (Fig. 1). Furthermore, processed tobacco contains phenol, cresols, dimethyl-

Figure 1. Major polyphenols and precursors in tobacco^a^aFrom Wynder and Hoffmann (1967)

phenols and other volatile phenols (up to 30 µg/g tobacco) (Lipp, 1965). These volatile phenols appear to be present in relatively high concentrations in fire-cured dark tobaccos that are used for snuff (Davis *et al.*, 1981); it is possible that they originate partially from pollution.

Table 19. Chlorogenic acid and rutin (%) in processed tobaccos*

Tobacco	Chlorogenic acid	Rutin
<i>Air-cured tobaccos</i>		
Maryland	0.15-0.28	0.08
Burley	0.0-0.46	
<i>Bright and oriental tobaccos</i>		
Virginia - USA	2.32-3.4	0.24
Virginia - Rhodesia	3.20	
Virginia - Italy	3.10	
Oriental	1.60	1.29
<i>Tobacco blends</i>		
Oriental - mixture	1.49-1.58	
Oriental - Virginia	1.85	
Virginia	2.38	
USA - cigarette blend	1.03	

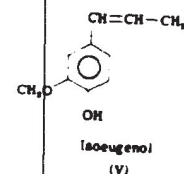
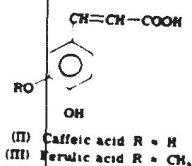
*From Häusermann and Waltz (1962)

In addition to melilotic acid, caffeic acid, dihydrocaffeic acid, shikimic acid and quinic acid (Wynder & Hoffmann, 1967; Stedman, 1968; see Fig. 1), tobacco leaf contains 3,4-dihydroxybenzoic acid, 2-hydroxybenzoic acid (salicylic acid), 3,5-dimethoxy-4-hydroxycinnamic acid (sinapic acid) and hydroxynaphthoic acids (Snook *et al.*, 1981). These phenolic acids are genuine tobacco constituents and are, at least partially, biosynthetic intermediates of polyphenols.

2.7 Carboxylic acids

More than 80 organic acids have been identified in tobacco (Wynder & Hoffmann, 1967; Stedman, 1968; Tso, 1972; Spears & Jones, 1981). The concentrations of the major volatile carboxylic acids in bright, oriental (Ismir), burley and Japanese varieties are listed in Table 20 (Wynder & Hoffmann, 1967). The free fatty-acid content amounts to 0.08-0.4% of the leaf tobacco. The specific flavour of oriental tobacco leaves has been attributed to β-methylvaleric acid, which occurs in these tobacco types in significantly higher concentrations than in the others (Kaburaki *et al.*, 1969). Table 21 shows the composition of the fraction of non-volatile fatty acids, which constitute 0.09-0.43% of the leaf (Hoffmann & Woziwodzki, 1968). The major dicarboxylic acids in tobacco are malonic, oxalic, malic and citric acids. After processing, burley tobacco and cigar-type tobaccos, used for chewing tobaccos, have especially high levels of malic and citric acids (Jarboe & Quinn, 1960).

oids (Fig. 1). The acid and rutin (for a number of pro- In addition, simple isolated from pro- cresols, dimethyl-



-COOH

acid

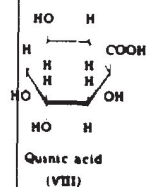


Table 20. Concentration of volatile carboxylic acids in tobacco leaves (mg/kg dry tobacco leaves)^a

Volatile acid	Bright tobacco		Japanese tobacco types			Burley tobacco		Oriental tobacco	
	Japan	USA	Shifu L.	Matsukawa L.	Daruma L. ^c	Ibusuki L.	Mito No. 3 ^c	Turkey	Greece
Formic	208	456	68.9	32.8	107	88.5	161	664	456
Acetic	1378	1552	51.0	36.1	70.1	191	75.5	1423	1075
Propionic	25.2	21.0	1.4	1.3	1.7	2.1	2.4	24.8	21.2
Isobutyric	2.4	2.5	-	-	-	-	-	13.9	11.4
n-Butyric	1.4	2.8	-	0.3	-	-	0.3	8.8	1.8
α-Methylbutyric	9.1	7.8	0.7	0.3	4.0	1.6	2.9	26.2	31.0
Isovaleric	7.7	6.6	0.5	0.3	0.5	5.8	1.2	24.8	33.7
Crotonic	6.2	5.4	-	-	0.6	-	0.4	8.3	6.0
n-Valeric	2.7	4.2	-	-	0.2	-	0.3	2.2	2.1
β-Methylvaleric	8.4	1.2	6.1	0.7	5.7	26.2	-	83.0	115.8
Caproic	1.7	12.2	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.2	0.9	5.3	6.6
α-Furoic	31.7	14.0	-	-	0.5	7.5	-	20.8	16.6
Benzolic	16.2	10.8	10.6	13.3	3.7	3.4	26.0	16.4	22.0
Phenylacetic	7.8	8.1	2.3	2.7	1.3	-	5.1	21.1	16.2
TOTAL	1706.5	2104.6	142.2	88.5	196.0	326.3	276.0	2342.6	1815.2

^aFrom Wynder and Hoffmann (1967) unless otherwise specified^bFrom Kaburaki and Sato (1972)

Table 21. Concentration of free non-volatile fatty acids ($\mu\text{g/g}$) in tobacco^a

Acid	Tobacco ^b					
	Turkish I	Turkish II	Bright	Maryland	Burley	Blend
Myristic	220	150	65	Trace	-	180
Palmitic	1480	530	930	420	220	530
Palmitoleic	300	160	Trace	-	-	Trace
Stearic	520	480	330	180	110	280
Oleic	480	220	230	110	70	220
Linoleic	880	320	610	250	180	420
Linolenic	2120	870	2130	420	360	1160
TOTAL	6000	2730	4300	1380	940	2790

^aFrom Hoffmann and Woziwodzki (1968)^bDried tobacco: moisture content between 0.5-1.0%

2.8 Amines and amides

Processed tobacco contains 27 volatile amines, 11 aromatic amines and more than 50 *N*-heterocyclic compounds, such as pyrroles, pyrrolidines, imidazoles, pyridines and pyrazines (Schmeltz & Hoffmann, 1977). Of special relevance to tobacco carcinogenesis are secondary amines, which can give rise to *N*-nitrosamines during curing, fermentation and ageing. This group includes dimethylamine, di-*n*-butylamine and pyrrolidine (Table 22). Of importance is the observation that nitrogen-containing compounds, including nitrates, amines, amides and proteins, comprise up to 24% of cured and fermented cigar tobaccos, from which many smokeless-tobacco products are made, while they make up only 15.5% of cigarette tobaccos (Wynder & Hoffmann, 1967; Tso, 1972). Some of these nitrogen-containing compounds are known precursors of *N*-nitrosamines.

Table 22. Secondary amines identified in tobacco^a

<i>Aliphatic amines</i>
<i>n</i> -Butylisobutylamine
Di- <i>n</i> -butylamine
Di- <i>sec</i> -butylamine
Diethylamine
Dimethylamine
Di- <i>n</i> -propylamine
Ethylmethylamine
Methyl- <i>n</i> -butylamine
Methylisobutylamine
Methylisopropylamine
Methylpropylamine
<i>Aromatic amines</i>
<i>N</i> -Ethylaniline
<i>N</i> -Methylaniline (<i>ortho</i> -toluidine)
<i>N</i> -Methyl-2-toluidine
Tyramine
<i>Pyrrolidines and pyrrolines</i>
2-Methylpyrrolidine-3-carboxaldehyde
Pyrrolidine
Δ^3 -Pyrroline

^aFrom Schmeltz and Hoffmann (1977)

The acyclic and cyclic amides identified in tobacco include *N,N*-dimethylacetamide, maleic imide and *N*-methylnicotinic amide (Schmeltz & Hoffmann, 1977). Although these secondary amides could give rise to *N*-nitrosamides, none of them has as yet been detected in smokeless-tobacco products. It appears that the general instability of the *N*-nitrosamides in moist matrices and the lack of a highly sensitive analytical method for nitrosamides are the major reasons for the scarcity of information on the presence of these compounds in chewing tobacco and snuff.

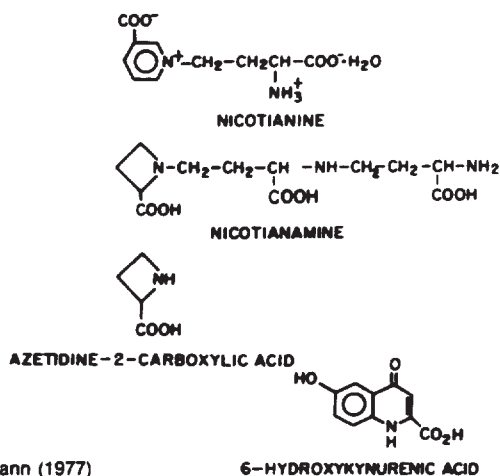
Tobacco contains many free amino acids, which are listed in Table 23 and Figure 2.

Table 23. Free amino acids identified in tobacco^a

α -Alanine	6-Hydroxykynurenic acid [*]
β -Alanine	Hydroxyproline
D-Alanyl-D-alanine	Isoleucine
α -Aminoadipic acid	Leucine
α -Aminobutyric acid	Lysine
γ -Aminobutyric acid	Methionine
Arginine	Methionine sulphone (methionine S-oxide)
Asparagine	1-Methylhistidine [*]
Aspartic acid	Nicotianamine
Azetidine-2-carboxylic acid	Nicotianine
Betaine	Nicotinamide
Choline	Nicotinic acid
Citrulline	Norleucine
Cysteic acid	Ornithine
Cysteine	Phenylalanine
Cystine	Pipecolic acid
Glutamic acid	Proline
Glutamine	Pyrrolidine-2-acetic acid
α -L-Glutamyl-L-glutamic acid	Serine
Glutathione	Taurine
Glycine	Threonine
Histidine	Tryptophan
Homocystine	Tyrosine
Homoserine	Valine

^aFrom Schmeltz and Hoffmann (1977)

Figure 2. Free amino acids identified in tobacco^a

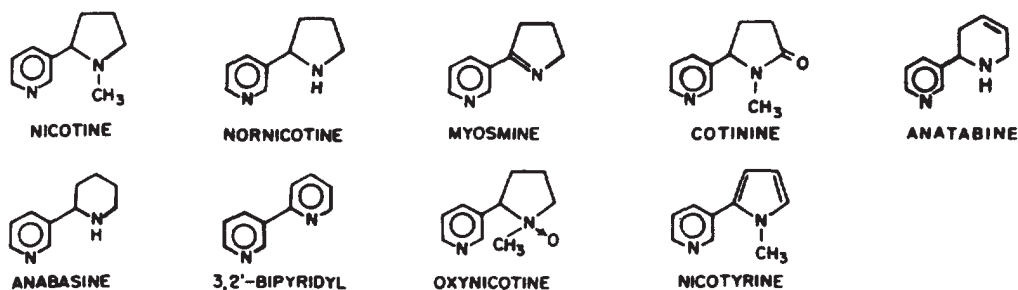


^aFrom Schmeltz and Hoffmann (1977)

2.9 Alkaloids

Nicotine dependence is now widely held to be the prime factor in the worldwide popularity of tobacco products, including the acceptance of tobacco chewing and oral or nasal use of snuff. Tobaccos contain 0.5-5% of alkaloids (Schmeltz & Hoffmann, 1977), depending on regional customs and preferences for smokeless-tobacco products. At least 85% of the total *Nicotiana* alkaloids are nicotine (Piade & Hoffmann, 1980), almost exclusively present in the L(-) form (Schmeltz & Hoffmann, 1977), which is the pharmacologically active isomer. (The asymmetric centre is the C-2'-carbon of the pyrrolidine ring; Fig. 3.) The remainder of the alkaloid portion of tobacco consists of the minor *Nicotiana* alkaloids, some of which are also presented in Figure 3. A number of studies have shown, in recent years, that the methyl group on the pyrrolidine-ring nitrogen can be replaced by a formyl, acetyl or other acyl group with six or eight carbons (Enzell *et al.*, 1977). Nicotine also occurs as nicotine-*N'*-oxide in chewing tobaccos. Most secondary amines, such as anabasine and anatabine, can be methylated to tertiary amines (Schmeltz & Hoffmann, 1977); however, methylanabasine and methylanatabine rarely amount to more than 0.1% of smokeless-tobacco products. *Nicotiana rustica* differs from *N. tabacum* in the quantitative composition of its alkaloid fraction, in that, generally, nicotine, anabasine and nornicotine are present in higher concentrations (Shmuk, 1953; Sisson & Severson, 1984). The contents of the major alkaloids in four tobacco types in comparison to those in a tobacco blend, the reference cigarette IR1 of the University of Kentucky, are given in Table 24 (Piade & Hoffmann, 1980).

Figure 3. Major tobacco alkaloids*



*From Schmeltz and Hoffmann (1977)

Table 24. Alkaloid content of various tobacco brands (mg/kg, dry basis)*

Alkaloid	Dark commercial tobacco		Burley	Bright	Kentucky ref. (IR1) ^b
	A	B			
Nicotine	11 500	10 000	15 400	12 900	21 100
Nornicotine	550	200	630	210	630
Anatabine	360	380	570	600	930
Anabasine	140	150	90	150	190
Cotinine	195	140	90	40	80
Myosmine	45	50	60	30	85
2,3'-Dipyridyl	100	110	30	10	30
N'-Formyl-nornicotine	175	210	140	40	100

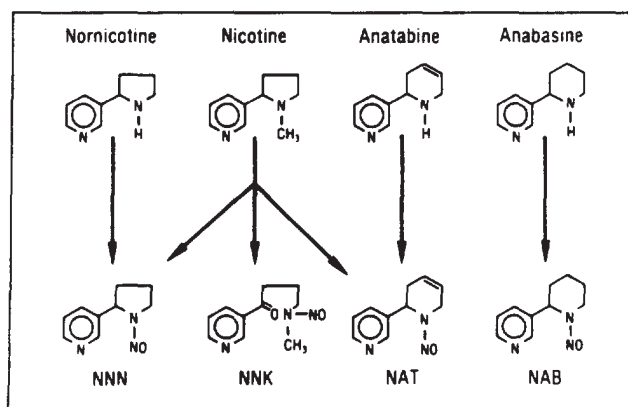
*From Piade and Hoffmann (1980)

^bThe tobacco blend used in the reference cigarette IR1 of Kentucky University

2.10 N-Nitrosamines

A large number of studies have shown that, during the ageing, curing, fermentation and processing of tobacco, nicotine and other alkaloids give rise to carcinogenic, tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1984; Fig. 4; see also monographs on pp. 205-261 of this volume). The concentration of these nitrosamines in tobacco exceeds by at least 100-fold the concentrations found so far in other consumer products (Table 25). It has been calculated (National Research Council, 1981) that, in the USA, cigarette smoking gives rise to at least a 20-fold greater daily exposure to *N*-nitroso compounds than any other consumer product; however, since the relative concentration of tobacco-specific nitrosamines *N*-nitrosornornicotine (NNN), 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (NNK) and *N*'-nitrosoanatabine (NAT) in chewing tobacco is much higher than in cigarette smoke (see monographs pp. 209-223, 233-261) and since the average chewer consumes 10 g of tobacco (Hecht *et al.*, 1983) *versus* <1 g tar inhaled by the smoker, tobacco chewing appears to be the greatest exogenous source of exposure to *N*-nitrosamines (Hoffmann & Hecht, 1985). In certain products marketed in 1980 in the USA and in Sweden, the concentration of nitrosamines was significantly lower than that measured earlier (Table 26). Statistical models for making correlations between tobacco components in commercial tobacco products (Brunnemann *et al.*, 1983) show that this can be achieved by selecting tobaccos with low nitrate levels or by reducing the nitrate content and sealing the smokeless-tobacco products in airtight packages (Brunnemann *et al.*, 1982).

Figure 4. Formation of tobacco-specific nitrosamines (TSNA)*



*From Hoffmann *et al.* (1984)

Table 25 shows that, in addition to the alkaloid-derived nitrosamines, processed tobacco can also contain volatile nitrosamines, e.g., *N*-nitrosomorpholine (NMOR), *N*-nitrosodiethanolamine (NDELA) and/or *N*-nitrosoproline (NPRO) (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1984; Fig. 5). The morpholine, which is the precursor to NMOR, in the tobacco derives either from the container waxes used in packaging materials or from flavour additives employed in product formulation (Brunnemann *et al.*, 1982). NDELA is formed from residual diethanolamine in those tobaccos that were treated with the sucker-growth inhibitor, maleic hydrazide-diethanolamine (Brunnemann & Hoffmann, 1981). NPRO is formed during the processing of tobacco and can serve as an indicator of the concentration of other non-volatile nitrosamines in tobacco products (Brunnemann *et al.*, 1983).

Table 25. *N*-Nitrosamines in commercial tobacco products ($\mu\text{g/g}$, dry basis)^{a,b}

Tobacco products	Nitrosamines ^b									
	NDMA	NPYR	NMOR	NDELA	NPRO	NNN	NNK	NAT		
Cigarette, USA	nd ^c -28	nd-10	0-10	100-200	900-2300	600-6600	100-700	500-1600		
Cigarette, UK	nd-10	nd-10	nd	nd-80	600-1000	300	100	200		
Cigarette, France	40-180	nd-10	nd-1	nd	1400-1600	600-11900	500-1100	1800-2000		
Cigar, little	20	20	nd	420	2000	11200	4500	13000		
Cigar	10	10	nd	110	1100	3000-10700	1100-3500	2500-3300		
Chewing tobacco, USA	30	20	30	200-300	450	3500-8200	100-3000	500-7000		
Chewing tobacco, India	10	10	nd	nd	-	2400	-	-		
Snuff, USA	nd-215	nd-360	30-690	29-6900	3500-22000	800-89000	200-8300	200-4000		
Snuff, Sweden	nd-60	nd-210	0-44	200-390	-	2000-6700	600-1500	900-2400		
Snuff, FRG ^d	10-50	10-300	nd	nd	-	6000-6800	1500-1600	3900-4400		
Snuff, Denmark	20-50	20-60	nd	nd	-	4500-8000	1400-7000	2600-6200		

^aFrom Hoffmann *et al.* (1984)^b*N*-Nitrosanabasine: in cigarette tobacco, $\leq 20 \mu\text{g/kg}$; in snuff, 10-1900 $\mu\text{g/kg}$. NDMA, *N*-nitrosodimethylamine;NPYR, *N*-nitrosopyrrolidine; NMOR, *N*-nitrosomorpholine; NDELA, *N*-nitrosodiethanolamine; NPRO, *N*-nitrosoproline;NNN, *N*-nitrosanabasine; NNK, 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone; NAT, *N*-nitrosoanabasine^cnd, not detected^dFRG, Federal Republic of Germany

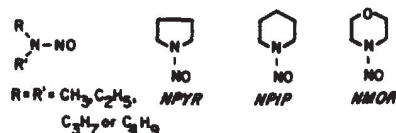
Table 26. *N*-Nitrosamines in snuff ($\mu\text{g/kg}$, dry basis)^{a,b}

Brand of snuff	Volatile <i>N</i> -nitrosamines ^c				NDELA				Tobacco-specific <i>N</i> -nitrosamines				Total
	NDMA	NPYR	NMOR	Total					NNN	NNK	NAT	NAB	
USA	I	215	(-)	24	760	2200	800	1700	100	4800			
	II	37	120	690	1700	19000	2400	19000	800	41200			
	III	100	360	1150	3300	33000	4600	40000	1900	79500			
	IV	92	110	630	290	20000	8300	9100	500	37900			
	V ^f	(-)	(-)	31	600	830	210	240	10	1290			
Sweden	I	22	(-)	44	240	5700	1700	900	140	8440			
	II	60	(-)	60	225	6100	1000	2200	80	8390			
	III	14	210	(-)	390	5300	1400	2400	70	9170			
	IV	30	50	10	310	4000	610	1400	80	6310			
	V	(-)	(-)	(-)	290	2000	800	1400	40	4240			

^aFrom Brunnemann *et al.* (1982)^bNDMA, *N*-nitrosodimethylamine; NPYR, *N*-nitrosopyrrolidine; NMOR, *N*-nitrosomorpholine; NDELA, *N*-nitrosodiethanolamine; NNN, *N*'-nitrososarcosine; NNK, 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone; NAT, *N*'-nitrosoaniline; NAB, *N*'-nitrosoaniline^c(-), below detection limits; values for *N*-nitrosodiethylamine in snuff were below detection limit ($<2 \mu\text{g/kg}$, except for Sweden I, II, III and IV, which had values of 6, 4, 12 and 5 $\mu\text{g/kg}$, respectively)^dContained 44 $\mu\text{g/kg}$ *N*-nitrosopiperidine and 21 800 $\mu\text{g/kg}$ *N*-nitrosopropylene (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1984)^eContained 13 $\mu\text{g/kg}$ *N*-nitrosopiperidine and 350 $\mu\text{g/kg}$ *N*-nitrosopropylene^fIntroduced on the market in 1982

Figure 5. *N*-Nitrosamines in tobacco products

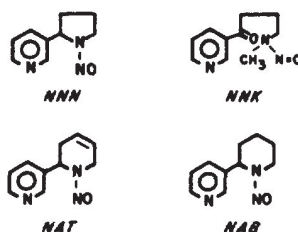
VOLATILE NITROSAMINES



NONVOLATILE NITROSAMINES



TOBACCO-SPECIFIC NITROSAMINES

*From Hoffmann *et al.* (1984)

Four *nass* samples from a local authority district in Samarkand Oblast of the Uzbek SSR, were analysed for volatile *N*-nitrosamines, tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines, nitrate and nitrite (Table 27) (Zaridze *et al.*, 1985a,b). The relatively low levels of tobacco-specific nitrosamines in *nass*, compared to US and Swedish snuff brands, is at least partially explained by the short ageing process of the tobacco used.

Table 27. *N*-Nitrosamines^a in samples of *nass*^b

<i>N</i> -Nitrosamine (ng/g)	A	B	C	D
<i>N</i> -Nitrosopiperidine	9.0	7.7	8.0	6.0
<i>N</i> -Nitrosopyrrolidine	8.8	1.8	1.7	4.3
<i>N</i> -Nitrosodimethylnormosine	519	143	119	516
<i>N</i> -Nitrosoanatabine	289	39	39	167
<i>N</i> -Nitrosoanabasine	34	3.0	4.0	17
4-(Methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone	108	16	29	126
Moisture (%)	7.3	8.6	10.1	6.4

^a*N*-Nitrosodimethylamine and other volatile nitrosamines were not detected (detection limit, 1 ng/g)^bFrom Zaridze *et al.* (1985a,b)

Tobacco leaf contains compounds of at least 35 metallic elements (Tso, 1972; Wynder & Hoffmann, 1977; Fig. 6). The most abundant of these metals in cured tobacco leaf are potassium (300-3500 mg/kg), calcium (5000-90 000 mg/kg), magnesium (500-13 000 mg/kg), sodium (150-8500 mg/kg), iron (80-900 mg/kg), copper (4-100 mg/kg) and zinc (0.8-7 mg/kg). The highest concentrations of potassium and calcium in processed tobacco accumulate in the middle vein of the leaves (Wynder & Hoffmann, 1967; Tso, 1972; Tso *et al.*, 1980).

IA IIA IIIB IVB VB VIB VIB - VIII - IB IIB IIIB IVB VB VIB VIB O Europe
IA IIA IIIA IVA VA VIA VIIA - VIII - IB IIB IIIB IVB VB VIB VIB O Sanderson
M1 M2 T1 T2 T3 T4 T5 T6 T7 T8 T9 M2 M3 M4 M5 M6 M7 M8 Sanderson
1 2 3d 4d 5d 6d 7d 8d 9d 10d 11d 12d 13 14 15 16 17 18 ACS

s block

p block

d block (transition metals)

f block (lanthanides and actinides)

1 H																	2 He						
3 Li	4 Be																	5 B	6 C	7 N	8 O	9 F	10 Ne
11 Na	12 Mg	d block (transition metals)																13 Al	14 Si	15 P	16 S	17 Cl	18 Ar
19 K	20 Ca	21 Sc	22 Ti	23 V	24 Cr	25 Mn	26 Fe	27 Co	28 Ni	29 Cu	30 Zn	31 Ga	32 Ge	33 As	34 Se	35 Br	36 Kr						
37 Rb	38 Sr	39 Y	40 Zr	41 Nb	42 Mo	43 Tc	44 Ru	45 Rh	46 Pd	47 Ag	48 Cd	49 In	50 Sn	51 Sb	52 Te	53 I	54 Xe						
55 Cs	56 Ba	57 La	72 Hf	73 Ta	74 W	75 Re	76 Os	77 Ir	78 Pt	79 Au	80 Hg	81 Tl	82 Pb	83 Bi	84 Po	85 At	86 Rn						
87 Fr	88 Ra	89 Ac	f block (lanthanides and actinides)																				
			58 Ce	59 Pr	60 Nd	61 Pm	62 Sm	63 Eu	64 Gd	65 Tb	66 Dy	67 Ho	68 Er	69 Tm	70 Yb	71 Lu							
			90 Th	91 Pa	92 U	93 Np	94 Pu	95 Am	96 Cm	97 Bk	98 Cf	99 Es	100 Fm	101 Md	102 No	103 Lr							

^aFrom Tso (1972); Wynder and Hoffmann (1977)

Of special concern in tobacco carcinogenesis are arsenic, lead, cadmium and nickel. Arsenic (as its trioxide, As_2O_3) has been reported to occur in processed tobacco at concentrations of up to 50 mg/kg. However, since the use of arsenic products as pesticides was suspended in most tobacco-producing countries, the arsenic content of leaf tobacco has decreased drastically during the last decades. The latest available data show a level of 0.5-0.9 mg/kg arsenic trioxide in cured tobacco (Guthrie & Bowery, 1967). Lead has been reported to occur in tobacco at concentrations of 5-80 mg/kg; the earlier levels cited appear to be rather high, and levels of lead do not now generally exceed 10 mg/kg (Cogbill & Hobbs, 1957; Voss & Nicol, 1960; Perinelli & Carugno, 1978). Cadmium levels of between 1-2 mg/kg have been reported (IARC, 1973; Perinelli & Carugno, 1978).

Since a number of nickel compounds are carcinogenic to laboratory animals and since some forms of nickel are probably human carcinogens (IARC, 1982), a large number of studies have been concerned with the nickel content of tobacco products (National Academy of Sciences, 1975; IARC, 1976). While concentrations of nickel in tobacco leaf

generally do not exceed 4 mg/kg, higher concentrations may occur in special settings (National Academy of Sciences, 1975). In Swaziland, a snuff product placed in the nostrils is made of powdered local tobaccos mixed with the ashes of incinerated plants or herbs, such as the plant *Aloe marlothii* (80% of all ashes), the roots of *Turbinata oblongata* and leaves and stems of *Amaranthus spinosum*. Metal analyses of these snuff products, as used by the consumer, revealed, among other metals, the presence of 43, 87 and 25 mg/kg nickel, respectively (Baumslag *et al.*, 1971). As seen in Table 28, the levels of copper, chromium and nickel in Swazi snuff are relatively high in comparison to those in commercial snuffs produced in the USA.

Table 28. Trace metal content of Swazi and commercial US snuffs (mg/kg)*

Type of snuff	Copper	Chromium	Lead	Zinc	Cadmium	Nickel
Aloe	25	9	8	65	1.4	43
Ubhoco	63	84	8	50	1.5	87
Amaranthus	16	13	6	47	1.1	25
US Brand I	10	1	4	41	0.8	3
US Brand II	12	1	4	27	0.9	2
US Brand III	9	2	4	40	0.7	2

*From Baumslag *et al.* (1971)

2.12 Radioelements

α - and β -Radioactivity have been reported to occur in leaf tobaccos. Naturally-occurring ^{40}K is the major contributor to the minute β -radioactivity in tobacco (Tso, 1972).

It was suggested (Radford & Hunt, 1964) that α -emitting ^{210}Po in tobacco smoke is a contributory factor in bronchogenic carcinoma in cigarette smokers. Since that report, many others have indicated that 1 g tobacco contains between 0.1-1.0 pCi of ^{210}Po . It appears that phosphate fertilizers that contain ^{226}Ra , ^{210}Pb and ^{210}Po and soils derived from rock rich in ^{226}Ra are the major source of the α -radioactivity of tobacco (Harley *et al.*, 1980). A 1-g sample of tobacco was found to contain about 0.021 pCi of ^{238}U (Chakarvarti *et al.*, 1981).

2.13 Agricultural chemicals

During the last three to four decades, many organic chemicals have been marketed for the cultivation and post-harvest treatment of tobacco (Tso, 1972). In the past, the sucker-growth inhibitor, maleic hydrazide, was dissolved in diethanolamine, since it is insoluble in water. More recently, maleic hydrazide has been formulated as its potassium salt (US Environmental Protection Agency, 1981). It has been reported to occur in US tobaccos at concentrations of between 17-178 mg/kg (Liu & Hoffmann, 1973; Chopra *et al.*, 1982). The concentrations of chlorinated hydrocarbon pesticides in a tobacco blend in 1977 are given in Table 29 (Reif & Moser, 1977); these are significantly lower than those reported earlier (Tso, 1972).

Table 29. Organochlorine pesticide residues on one sample of US tobacco analysed in the 1970s*

Pesticide	Concentration (mg/kg)
α -Hexachlorobenzene	0.12
γ -Hexachlorobenzene (Lindane)	0.18
β -Hexachlorobenzene	0.22
Heptachlor	0.02
δ -Hexachlorobenzene	0.03
α -Endosulfan	0.03
<i>p,p'</i> -DDE [1,1-dichloro-2,2-bis(4-chlorophenyl)ethylene]	0.15
Dieldrin	0.05
<i>o,p'</i> -TDE [1,1-dichloro-2(2-chlorophenyl)-2(4-chlorophenyl)ethane]	0.05
<i>o,p'</i> -DDT [1,1,1-trichloro-2(2-chlorophenyl)-2(4-chlorophenyl)ethane]	0.38
<i>p,p'</i> -TDE [1,1-dichloro-2,2-bis(4-chlorophenyl)ethane]	0.43
β -Endosulfan	0.19
<i>p,p'</i> -DDT [1,1,1-trichloro-2,2-bis(4-chlorophenyl)ethane]	2.71
Endosulfan sulphate	0.27

*From Reif and Moser (1977)

3. Biological Data Relevant to the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk to Humans

3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in animals

Tobacco

The Working Group noted that the majority of the published studies evaluated below had various deficiencies, such as lack of quantitative and qualitative information on the nature of tobacco extracts and the degree of extraction, insufficient length of treatment, small group sizes and, in some cases, lack of appropriate controls.

(a) Oral administration

Mouse: Groups [numbers unspecified] of male Swiss mice, six to eight weeks of age, were administered a tobacco extract (ethanol extract from 50 g tobacco diluted in 10 ml distilled water) from a commercially-available Indian chewing tobacco (*Nicotiana tabacum*) at a dilution of 1:25 or 1:50 [actual dose unspecified] by oral intubation for 15-20 months. A further group of mice was fed a diet containing 10 g of an extract of tobacco per 5 kg diet for up to 25 months. A group of 20 mice received distilled water only by intubation and served as controls. Administration of the 1:25 dilution was terminated at 18 weeks because of high mortality. Tumour incidences at 15-20 months were 0/4, 8/15 and 4/10 in the control, 1:50 dilution and 1:25 dilution groups, respectively. At 21-25 months, 1/20 controls and 8/10 animals fed tobacco extract in the diet had tumours. The types of tumour observed were lung adenocarcinomas or hepatocellular carcinomas (Bhide *et al.*, 1984b). [The Working Group noted the incomplete reporting of the distribution of different types of neoplasm among the various groups.]

(b) Skin application

Mouse: Groups of 40 CAF₁ (Jackson) and 40 Swiss (Millerton) mice [sex and age unspecified] received topical applications of a 50% methanol extract of unburnt cigarette tobacco on the skin three times a week for 24 months. Groups of 30 CAF₁ and 30 Swiss mice, which received whole-tar extract in the same way for 21 to 24 months, served as controls. Among the CAF₁ mice exposed to the tobacco extract, 11 developed papillomas, and among the Swiss mice, three developed papillomas, compared to 16 papillomas in each of the control groups. One papilloma later developed into cancer in the Swiss mice test group, compared to three in Swiss and eight in CAF₁ controls (Wynder & Wright, 1957). [The Working Group noted that there was no statistical evidence for the carcinogenic effect of this tobacco extract.]

Groups of eight to 17 male and female strain A (Strong) and Swiss mice, two to three months old, received skin applications of five different extracts (petroleum ether, benzene, chloroform, chloroform ether and ethanol) of an Indian chewing tobacco (*N. tabacum*; Vadakkan, Meenampalayam variety) up to 18 months of age; no tumour was observed at the site of application, and no excess incidence was reported at other sites (Mody & Ranadive, 1959). [The Working Group noted the small numbers of animals used.]

A group of 10 male and six female C17 mice, two to three months old, received thrice-weekly applications of a dimethyl sulphoxide extract of an Indian chewing tobacco (Vadakkan variety) on the skin of the interscapular region for life (24 months of age). No skin tumour was observed (Ranadive *et al.*, 1976). [The Working Group noted the small number of animals used.]

Groups of 11-36 inbred Swiss or Paris albino XVII x C₅₇ black (hybrid) mice [sex and age unspecified] received twice-weekly skin applications of E8 ('total') plus E9 ('partially alkaloid-free'), E9 or E10 ('totally alkaloid-free') tobacco extracts or acetone for 95 weeks followed by weekly applications of croton oil. Between 61 and 95 weeks after the start of treatment, the incidences of papillomas and of squamous-cell carcinomas at the site of application were 10/21 and 6/21 (E8 plus E9), 9/25 and 2/25 (E9) and 22/35 and 10/35 (E10) in the hybrid mice, respectively. Papillomas occurred in 3/19 acetone/croton oil-treated controls; no carcinoma was observed. [The increases in the incidences of papillomas and carcinomas were statistically significant, except in the E9-treated group.] The incidences of papillomas in the Swiss mice were 2/9, 2/4 and 3/10, respectively; no carcinoma was observed (Ranadive *et al.*, 1963). [The Working Group noted that no control group of Swiss mice was included.]

The cocarcinogenic [promoting] effect of the E10 tobacco extract was tested in a group of 16 Swiss albino and 13 Swiss (Baldy) mice, which received a single topical application of benzo[a]pyrene [dose unspecified] followed by twice-weekly applications of E10 for 80 weeks. A group of seven Swiss albino and 10 Swiss (Baldy) mice received the benzo[a]pyrene treatment only and served as controls. Two carcinomas and four papillomas were observed in Swiss (Baldy) mice treated with E10 and benzo[a]pyrene; no tumour was observed in benzo[a]pyrene-treated controls (Ranadive *et al.*, 1963). [The Working Group noted the small number of animals and incomplete information concerning the initiating dose of benzo[a]pyrene.]

Groups of 30 female ICR Swiss mice, 57 days old, received a single topical application of 125 µg 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene (DMBA) in 0.25 ml acetone, followed 21 days later by applications of 0.25 ml of an acetone or barium hydroxide extract of unburned commer-

cial tobacco five times a week for 36 weeks. The amount of acetone extract was equivalent to 2.5 cigarettes per day. The barium hydroxide extract was prepared using two different extraction procedures, designated 'concentrated' and 'dilute', according to the yield: the 'concentrated' was equivalent to 0.5 cigarette per day and the 'dilute' was about one quarter as concentrated as the 'concentrated' extract. Two groups of 30 mice received DMBA treatment alone or no treatment and served as controls. The incidences of tumours, all of which were small papillomas, were: acetone extract, 16 tumours in 7/30 (2.3 tumours/mouse); concentrated barium hydroxide extract, 18 tumours in 8/30 (2.2 tumours/mouse); and dilute barium hydroxide extract, six tumours in 2/30 (three tumours/mouse). No tumour was observed in either of the control groups (Bock *et al.*, 1964).

Groups of 30 female ICR Swiss mice, 55-60 days old, received a single topical application of 125 µg DMBA in 0.25 ml acetone, followed three weeks later by applications of different aqueous extracts (crude, acidic, neutral and basic components) of an unprocessed, commercial, flue-cured tobacco five times per week for 26 weeks. A total of 12 papillomas developed in 6/30 mice treated with crude tobacco extract (equivalent to 0.5 g tobacco daily) following DMBA initiation. One mouse developed a papilloma after treatment with the acidic fraction and DMBA. No skin tumour was found in animals treated with DMBA alone or with the various fractions of tobacco alone. With half the concentration (0.25 g tobacco), one mouse developed a papilloma after application of the crude extract and one mouse developed three papillomas with the neutral extract following DMBA initiation. Additional studies demonstrated that the tumour-promoting components of the tobacco extract were stable and non-volatile (Bock *et al.*, 1965).

Groups of 20 female Swiss ICR/Ha mice, eight weeks of age, received a single topical application of 150 µg DMBA in 0.1 ml acetone, followed two to three weeks later by thrice-weekly applications of solvent extracts [ether (25 mg), chloroform (1 mg), methanol (25 mg) or a reconstituted sample (25 mg)] of a flue-cured cigarette variety of tobacco leaf for 52 weeks. Groups of 20 mice receiving DMBA alone or tobacco extracts alone served as controls. Two of 13 survivors in the DMBA/methanol extract group developed 'cancers'. The numbers of mice with papillomas in the various groups were: 4/12 (ether extract), 1/10 (chloroform extract), 2/13 (methanol extract) and 5/14 (reconstituted extract). No tumour was observed in mice treated with DMBA or extracts alone (Van Duuren *et al.*, 1966).

(c) *Inhalation*

Mouse: A group of 80 male strain A mice, three months old, were exposed by inhalation to powdered tobacco leaf on alternate days for 30 months. A further group of 80 animals served as controls. The incidences of 'lung cancer', leukaemia and hepatocellular carcinoma in animals surviving to 30 months were 12/75 and 1/80, 11/75 and 2/80, and 3/75 and 0/80 in the treated and control groups, respectively (Hamazaki & Murao, 1969). [The Working Group noted that the incidences of lung and liver tumours in the untreated mice were unusually low.]

(d) *Subcutaneous administration*

Mouse: Groups of 17 Paris albino XVII x C₅₇ black mice received s.c. injections of 0.1 ml of a 2% solution of 'partially or completely alkaloid-free' extract of tobacco (Vadakkah, Meenampalayam variety) once a month for 41-95 weeks. One squamous-cell carcinoma [site not specified] developed in an animal that received the partially alkaloid-free extract (Ranadive *et al.*, 1963). [The Working Group could not draw any conclusion from this report.]

(e) Application to the oral mucosa or cheek pouch

Mouse: Groups of nine to 16 male and female strain A (Strong) and Swiss mice, two to three months old, were administered different alkaloid-free extracts of an [redacted] chewing tobacco of the Vadakkan type (*N. tabacum*; Meenampalayam variety). The extracts, a benzene extract and its neutral fraction, a water extract and four successive extracts (petroleum ether, benzene, chloroform and ethanol), were applied by daily application to the oral mucosa for up to 18 months of age. No excess incidence of tumours was observed (Mody & Ranadive, 1959). [The Working Group noted the small number of animals used.]

Rat: A group of 22 Wistar rats, five months of age, were painted on the oral mucosa with a 2% alkaloid-free extract of [redacted] tobacco of the Meenampalayam variety in acetone twice a week for life; 12 of these animals were also painted with 20% lime in distilled water the day after each treatment. Control groups of 10-14 rats received no treatment or lime only. No tumour was observed at the application site (Gothoskar *et al.*, 1975).

Hamster: A group of 50 young golden hamsters received implantation of a 2-cm³ plug of [redacted] [unspecified] in the cheek pouch. The opening in the cheek pouch was ligated and the animals were followed for up to 30 months. Survival after 13 months was 21/50; and eight were alive at 24 months, but none at 30 months. No tumour was observed in any of the animals (Peacock & Brawley, 1959; Peacock *et al.*, 1960).

[redacted] of tobacco with 10% lime was mixed with beeswax, and pellets were implanted into the cheek pouch of 34 male and female Syrian golden hamsters, one to two months old. Animals were allowed to live their lifespan and were killed when moribund. No tumour at the implantation site was reported (Dunham & Herrold, 1962).

Groups of 11-12 male Syrian golden hamsters, nine weeks old, received topical applications on the cheek-pouch mucosa of a dimethyl sulphoxide (DMSO) extract of cured [redacted] chewing tobacco or DMSO alone thrice weekly for 21 weeks, at which time all animals were killed. No tumour was seen in treated or control hamsters, but 8/12 treated animals had leukoplakia (Suri *et al.*, 1971).

A group of 12 male inbred Syrian golden hamsters, two to three months old, received topical applications to the cheek-pouch mucosa of DMSO extracts of an [redacted] chewing tobacco (Vadakkan) thrice weekly for life. A control group of seven animals received applications of DMSO alone. No local tumour but moderate hyperkeratosis was observed (Ranadive *et al.*, 1976).

Groups of 30-41 Syrian golden hamsters [sex unspecified], weighing 40-50 g, received 60 g tobacco ([redacted]) alone, in combination with lime, or in combination with lime plus vitamin A in the cheek pouch thrice weekly for 100-110 weeks, at which time 24-32 animals were alive. Moderate to severe keratotic and dysplastic changes in the mucosa developed, but no neoplastic change was observed (Kandarkar *et al.*, 1981).

A group of 20 female Syrian golden hamsters, six to seven weeks of age, received topical applications to the cheek-pouch mucosa of 1 mg lyophilized aqueous tobacco extract in 0.05 ml water twice daily for six months. Animals were observed for a further six months then killed. Squamous-cell papillomas/carcinomas occurred in 3/17 animals, compared to none in 10 untreated and in 10 vehicle (water) controls (Rao, 1984).

(f) *Other experimental systems*

Groups of 5-12 male and female hybrid (inbred C₁₇) or Swiss mice, two to three months of age, received a single *intravesicular implantation* of paraffin pellets containing tobacco (a variety of chewing tobacco), a mixture of tobacco and lime or an alkaloid-free tobacco extract or paraffin pellets alone and were observed for 10-30 months of age. Among the hybrid mice receiving the alkaloid-free tobacco implantation, 2/12 developed transitional-cell tumours of the bladder and one female developed a tumour described as a 'myosarcoma of the cervix with metastasis to the kidney'. No tumour was observed in the controls or in the other treated groups (Randeria, 1972). [The Working Group noted the small group size and the potential carcinogenic effect of intravesicular foreign bodies in mice.]

A group of four female hybrid (inbred C₅₇) mice and four female Swiss mice, two to three months of age, received daily *vaginal applications* of a fine mixture of tobacco dust containing lime derived from sea shells for 10-30 months; no vaginal tumour was observed (Randeria, 1972). [The Working Group noted that no control group was used in this study.]

Snuff

(a) *Oral administration*

Hamster: Groups of 50 male BIO 15.16 and BIO 87.20 (carcinogen-susceptible) strain Syrian hamsters, two to three months old, were fed one of the following five experimental diets for two years: 20% damp, fresh snuff mixed with the diet; cellulose mixed with diet, such that the caloric content was reduced by 20% (negative control); control diet plus 50 treatments with 5 mg 20-methylcholanthrene (MC) per animal by stomach tube (positive control); cellulose diet plus 50 treatments with 0.5 mg MC per animal by stomach tube; and snuff diet plus 50 treatments with 0.5 mg MC per animal by stomach tube. The animals fed snuff diet alone showed a nearly identical tumour spectrum to that of controls. No increased incidence of tumours was noted in animals administered snuff with MC (Homburger *et al.*, 1976).

A total of 13 male and female Syrian golden hamsters, 1.5 months of age, were fed three different test substances for 16 months: group 1 (two males and two females) was fed 0.75 g aromatic snuff [type unspecified] per week; group 2 (two males and two females) was fed 0.75 g aromatic snuff [type unspecified] and 0.75 g calcium hydroxide per week; and group 3 (five animals) [sex distribution not specified] received calcium hydroxide only. One male hamster in group 2, estimated to have consumed 52 g snuff and 52 g calcium hydroxide during the 16-month period, developed a pancreatic carcinoid 4.5 months after the termination of treatment. The tumour incidence in the remaining groups and at other sites was not reported; however, the authors stated that carcinoids had been found previously in only 700 animals in that laboratory (Dunham *et al.*, 1975). [The Working Group noted the relatively small groups used.]

(b) *Subcutaneous administration*

Rat: A group of 82 male and female albino (Händler) rats (100 days old) was given s.c. injections of 0.15 ml (50 mg) of an ethanol extract of Swedish snuff (Ettan) in tri-*n*-caprylin once a week for 84 weeks. A group of 81 male and female rats received the same schedule

of injections of ethanol and tri-*n*-caprylin and served as controls. Malignant tumours developed in equal numbers in both test and control rats. These were 'retiothelsarcomas' (one in each group), one uterine carcinoma (in a test animal) and one ovarian carcinoma (in a control animal) (Schmähli, 1965).

(c) *Application to the oral mucosa or cheek pouch*

Rat: A group of 21 male and 21 female Sprague-Dawley rats, three months of age, was administered snuff into a surgically-created canal in the lower lip. Approximately 0.2 g of a standard Swedish snuff (Röda Lacket), pH 8.3, was injected morning and night on five days per week for up to 22 months. [The calculated daily dose was 1 g/kg bw and the mean retention time after each administration was 6 h (range, 5-8 h) (Hirsch & Thilander, 1981).] The rats were killed at nine, 12, and 18-22 months. A second group of five male and five female rats was treated similarly with the same snuff but at pH 9.3 [produced by addition of 50% more sodium carbonate (1% of the total weight)] and sacrificed between 18 and 22 months. Of 42 animals administered the snuff, one developed a squamous-cell carcinoma of the oral mucosa at 8.5 months. No tumour was seen in rats exposed to the alkaline snuff or in 15 rats with surgically-created canals but not given snuff. Benign tumours outside the oral cavity were observed in roughly equal frequency in control and treated groups in both experiments.

Four groups of 10 female Sprague-Dawley rats with surgically-created canals in the lower lip received the following treatments beginning at three months of age: group 1 was infected with herpes simplex type 1 (HSV-1) virus by scarification and topical application on the inside of the lower lip, followed, ten days later, by administration of a standard Swedish (Röda Lacket) snuff into the canal, morning and night on five days per week; group 2 was infected with virus and received no other treatment; group 3 was sham-infected with sterile saline followed by snuff treatment; and group 4 was given neither virus nor snuff and served as controls. The HSV-1 infection was repeated once after a one-month interval, and snuff was injected 10 days later as before. Snuff treatment was continued for 18 months, after which time all animals were killed. Three animals in each of groups 1 and 2 died from encephalitis shortly after the second infection with HSV-1. Squamous-cell carcinomas of the oral cavity developed in 2/7 rats, and a retroperitoneal sarcoma occurred in 1/7 rats exposed to HSV-1 and snuff. In the group exposed to snuff alone, 1/10 animals developed a squamous-cell carcinoma of the anus and 1/10 a retroperitoneal sarcoma. [The presence of two oral cancers in animals in group 1 does not constitute a statistically significant result. The Working Group noted, however, that these two tumours were located near the site of application of the snuff.]

Hamster: Groups of 50 young golden hamsters received an instillation into the left cheek pouch of 10 ml of a thick paste of snuff. The opening of the pouch was ligated, and the animals were followed for up to 30 months. The contralateral pouches of 25 of these animals were filled with sand and gum and served as controls. After 13 months, 21/50 were still alive; 10 were alive at 24 months, but none at 30 months. No tumour was observed in control or treated pouches (Peacock & Brawley, 1959; Peacock *et al.*, 1960).

A group of 35 male and female Syrian golden hamsters, one to two months of age, received snuff and lime in the cheek pouch as single depositions. A positive control group of 71 hamsters was exposed to the two carcinogenic hydrocarbons, 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene and 3-methylcholanthrene; and a negative-control group of 36 animals was exposed to beeswax, which was used as a vehicle to prolong the retention time of the test substances. The animals were killed after 15-20 months or when moribund. Two of the 35 animals exposed to 20% snuff and lime and 2/36 exposed to beeswax developed inflam-

matory lesions; among the positive controls, 23/56 developed malignant tumours, including carcinomas (20) and sarcomas (three) (Dunham & Herrold, 1962).

Groups of four to seven male and female weanling Syrian golden hamsters received twice-daily applications of 50 mg of a commercial [redacted] (dry type) snuff, snuff and calcium hydroxide, or calcium hydroxide alone into the cheek pouch on five days per week for up to 99 weeks. No local tumour was observed in any group (Dunham *et al.*, 1966).

A group of 84 male and female Syrian golden hamsters (BIO hamsters of the RB strain), aged three to four months, were exposed to 0.5 g of snuff placed in a stainless-steel webbing cartridge attached to the lower incisors for 30 min daily for 51 weeks. A group of 84 hamsters exposed to dry cotton served as negative controls and further groups, one of 84 animals exposed to benzo[a]pyrene and one of 24 animals exposed to 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene, served as positive controls. No tumour was found in the oral mucosa, except in the positive controls (Homburger, 1971). [The Working Group noted the short duration of this study.]

Nass

A series of experiments were reported in two papers (Kiseleva *et al.*, 1976; Milievskaia & Kiseleva, 1976).

(a) Skin application

Hamster: A group of 19 female and 31 male Syrian hamsters received topical applications of a suspension of *nass* (45% tobacco, 8% lime, 30% ash, 12% plant oil and 5% water) on the dorsal skin. The average lifespan was 44.4 weeks. Three out of nine animals still alive at the time of appearance of the first tumours (53 weeks) developed neoplasms: one liver 'lymphangioendothelioma', one adrenal-gland tumour and one forestomach papilloma. No local tumour occurred. In the control group (either untreated or treated orally with sunflower oil), 2/57 hamsters that survived to the appearance of the first tumour (59 weeks) developed tumours: one adrenal-cortex neoplasm and one forestomach papilloma (Kiseleva *et al.*, 1976).

(b) Application to the cheek pouch

Hamster: A group of 28 female and 33 male Syrian hamsters, one to three months of age, received applications of *nass* (same composition as described above) as a dry powder into the left cheek pouch for life; another group of 13 females and 24 males received *nass* as a 50% suspension in refined sunflower oil in the cheek pouch (total dose per animal, 6.2-147.5 g, mean 53.8 ± 2.5 g). The animals were followed until death. No tumour was found at the site of *nass* application. The average lifespan of animals receiving *nass* (50.8 weeks) was slightly shorter than that of untreated animals (57.3 weeks) or that of hamsters receiving sunflower oil alone (57.6 weeks). Of 64 treated hamsters in both groups still alive at the time of appearance of the first tumour (17 and 37 weeks), 13 developed tumours: seven liver-cell tumours and one liver tumour of 'mixed structure', three tumours of the adrenal glands (described as a 'carcinoma of adrenal cortex' and as 'adenoma, chromaffinoma type' or 'carcinoma of adrenal cortex'), one forestomach papilloma, three uterine tumours (leiomyoma and/or fibromyoma and/or cysts), one skin melanoma and one unspecified tumour of the large intestine. Among 110 untreated and 10 animals treated with sunflower oil, 45 survived to the appearance of the first tumour (59 weeks), and two developed tumours (one

adrenal-cortex neoplasm and one forestomach papilloma) (Kiseleva *et al.*, 1976; Milievskaja & Kiseleva, 1976).

In another experiment described in these reports, *nass* was introduced as a suspension in refined sunflower oil into the cheek pouch of male and female hamsters comprising a total of 40 females and 46 males belonging to six generations. *Nass* was administered throughout life, including periods of pregnancy and lactation. No tumour was found at the site of application. Of 36 (36.1%) hamsters that survived to the appearance of the first tumour (54 weeks), 13 developed neoplasms at various sites: two liver-cell tumours, one haemangioendothelioma, one cholangioma and one liver tumour of 'mixed structure', three in the adrenal glands, four papillomas of the forestomach, one of the uterus or ovaries, one benign skin tumour and one pancreatic tumour. The average lifespan of the animals was 51.6 weeks (Kiseleva *et al.*, 1976; Milievskaja & Kiseleva, 1976). [The Working Group noted deficiencies in reporting the results of this series: the number of animals and incidence of tumours in each generation, the number of newborns and neonatal mortality are not indicated, and no multigeneration controls were available.]

[In consideration of the whole study, the Working Group noted that the effective number, i.e., the number of animals surviving to observation of the first tumour, was calculated separately for treated (number of survivors at 17 weeks with the dry powder) and control (59 weeks) animals. Therefore, the effective number of control animals should have been higher in the first experiment. High mortality of animals was noted, even in control groups, in the period preceding observation of the first tumour; average lifespan of untreated control animals was 57.3 weeks. The sex of animals in which liver tumours were found was not indicated.]

A group of 30 Syrian hamsters received a single application of 0.1 mg 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene (DMBA) as a 0.1% solution in benzene into the cheek pouch. Another group of 30 hamsters received the same treatment, followed seven weeks later by daily applications of *nass* (composition as described above) as a dry powder into the cheek pouch; the total dose ranged from 11.2 to 102.5 g (mean, 38.9 ± 5.2 g). Three out of 11 survivors at the time of appearance of the first tumour (23 weeks) receiving DMBA alone developed tumours: one rhabdomyosarcoma of the cheek pouch, and two papillomas of the forestomach. Six of 11 animals still alive at 50 weeks that received DMBA plus *nass* had tumours: five papillomas of the forestomach and one cystic epithelioma of the skin of the jaw (Milievskaja & Kiseleva, 1976). [The Working Group noted the small number of animals that survived to the time of observation of the first tumour.]

3.2 Other relevant biological data

(a) Experimental systems

Toxic effects

Application of *nass* to the cheek pouch of Syrian hamsters induced degenerative and proliferative changes in the epithelium, and an inflammatory response and fibrosis in the submucosal layer. The same changes were observed in the oesophageal mucosa of animals receiving *nass* either in the cheek pouch or by gavage. *Nass* administered into the cheek pouch or percutaneously induced foci of hepatocyte proliferation, bile-duct proliferation, cholangiofibrosis and severe vascular disturbances (Kiseleva *et al.*, 1976).

Two to four months after the beginning of daily *nass* administration by gavage to rats, basal-cell proliferation with cell polymorphism and 'signs of invasion' into the submucosa in the oesophagus were observed (Rahmatian *et al.*, 1965).

Snuff (0.2 g commercial brand) was inserted twice daily into a surgically-created canal in the lower lip of rats, on five days a week. Measurement showed that the snuff was retained in the canal after each insertion for 5-8 h. Exposure for nine or 12 months produced mild to severe hyperplasia, hyperorthokeratosis and acanthosis. After longer exposure, vacuolated cells were found in basal layers of the epithelium, with hyperplastic, atrophic, ulcerated lesions, slight dysplastic lesions, and, in a few rats, severe dysplastic changes in the epithelium of the crevice containing the snuff. Squamous-cell hyperplasia was also found in the forestomach of two rats exposed to snuff for 18-22 months. A preliminary study suggests that these lesions, particularly the dysplasia of the squamous epithelium in the canal, may be exacerbated by concurrent herpes simplex virus infection (Hirsch *et al.*, 1984a).

No histological change specifically related to snuff exposure was found in the oral mucosa of Syrian golden hamsters alive at the end of an experiment in which they had been forced to chew on a stainless steel-gauze pouch containing 0.5 g snuff for 30 min per day, on five days a week for 30 (60 animals) or 52 weeks (24 animals). During treatment, mortality occurred in 30% of controls and 34% of the snuff-treated animals in the 30-week group, and 52% of controls and 60% of treated animals in the 52-week group, mostly as a result of trauma (Homburger, 1971). No toxic effect on the cheek pouch or oesophagus was seen in four hamsters fed 6 g of diet containing 2.5% American snuff, on five days per week, for 16 months, or in four hamsters fed diets containing 2.5% snuff and 2.5% calcium hydroxide (Dunham *et al.*, 1974).

Aqueous extracts of snuff inhibit the replication of herpes simplex virus-1 by cultured kidney cells from green monkeys. Greater inhibition was produced by a brand of snuff containing a high concentration of nitrosamines than by a brand with a low nitrosamine content (Hirsch *et al.*, 1984b).

Extracts of chewing tobacco, snuff and tobacco leaf did not inhibit the growth of the oral cariogenic bacteria *Streptococcus mutans* and *S. sanguis* when tested *in vitro* (Lindemeyer *et al.*, 1981).

Effects on reproduction and prenatal toxicity

Anabasine, a tobacco alkaloid, was tested for teratogenicity in pigs. After ingestion by dams of 2.6 mg/kg bw anabasine twice daily between days 43-53 of gestation, defects were induced in all of three litters (21/26 offspring), including cleft palate, fixed, excessive flexure of the front or rear pasterns, fixed, excessive flexure of the carpal joints, and rotation or bowing of limbs. Similar defects were induced by *Nicotiana tabacum* and *N. glauca* (Crowe, 1978; Keeler *et al.*, 1984). Anabasine was teratogenic to chicks (Landauer, 1960; Upshall, 1972). *N. glauca* was also teratogenic to cows (Keeler, 1979).

Nicotine failed to induce defects in pigs, sheep or cows (Keeler, 1979), but it has been shown to be teratogenic in rabbits (Vara & Kinnunen, 1951), mice (Nishimura & Nakai, 1958) and chicks (Landauer, 1960).

Addition of 0.1 mg nicotine/ml to the drinking-water of pregnant mice reduced the weight of 17-day-old fetuses by 12% (Rowell & Clark, 1982).

Absorption, distribution, excretion and metabolism

Nicotine (80 and 250 ng/ml of blood) was detected in two rats 30 min after insertion of snuff (0.2 g) into a surgically-created canal in the lower lip (Hirsch & Thilander, 1981).

Mutagenicity and other short-term tests

Ethanol extracts of a chewing variety of *Nicotiana tabacum*, known locally in India as the Pandharpuri variety, induced mutations in *Salmonella typhimurium* TA98 in the presence but not in the absence of phenobarbital-induced rat-liver 9000 x g supernatant (S9). No mutation was induced in *S. typhimurium* TA100, TA1535 or TA1538 in the presence or absence of S9 (Bhide *et al.*, 1984b). Ethanol extracts of this tobacco also induced mutations in Chinese hamster V79 cells; the presence of Aroclor-induced rat-liver S9 enhanced this effect. The same extracts induced micronuclei in bone-marrow cells of Swiss mice (Shirname *et al.*, 1984).

An ethyl acetate extract of Jaffna tobacco (used with betel quid) induced sister chromatid exchanges in cultured human lymphocytes and in a human lymphoblastoid cell line; in the latter case, rat-liver homogenate enhanced the effect. This extract, tested only in the absence of exogenous metabolic activation, did not induce ouabain-resistance in Chinese hamster V79 cells. The same extract, another ethyl acetate extract and an ethanol extract induced cell transformation in Syrian hamster embryo cells (Umezawa *et al.*, 1978; 1981).

Tobacco powder added to the feed of *Drosophila melanogaster* larvae did not induce sex-chromosome loss, sex-linked recessive lethal mutations or autosomal translocations (Abraham *et al.*, 1979).

Aqueous extracts of two *nass* samples induced a dose-related increase in the number of chromosomal aberrations in Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells. The frequency of these effects was not altered by the addition of rat-liver S9, catalase or superoxide dismutase (Zaridze *et al.*, 1985a,b). Aqueous extracts of *khaini* also induced chromosomal aberrations in CHO cells (Stich *et al.*, 1982).

The tobacco alkaloids, anatabine, nicotine and nor nicotine, induced sister chromatid exchanges in CHO cells in the absence of S9. With anatabine (125-500 µg/ml), the effect was dose-related. The presence of Aroclor-induced rat-liver S9 inhibited the induction of sister chromatid exchanges (Riebe & Westphal, 1983).

*(b) Humans**Toxic and pharmacological effects*

Precancerous lesions occurring in users of smokeless-tobacco products are discussed in section 3.3 of this monograph, p. 89.

Few studies were available on the toxicology and pharmacology of smokeless-tobacco products. A significant increase in pulse rate and blood pressure after tobacco chewing has been observed which is presumably due to nicotine (Simon & Iglauder, 1960; Bordia *et al.*, 1977). The pharmacological effects of nicotine have been reviewed extensively (see, for example, Goodman & Gilman, 1982; Balfour *et al.*, 1984).

Studies in Tunisia (Ben Khedher *et al.*, 1984; Ben Miled *et al.*, 1984; Malej *et al.*, 1984) have suggested an increased frequency of bronchitis with the use of snuff (powdered Tunis-

ian tobacco, known as *neffa*). Gingival recession has been associated with the oral use of snuff (Christen *et al.*, 1979a). A case of periodontal bone destruction has been reported in a snuff user (Christen *et al.*, 1979b).

A study of Swedish school children aged 13-14 years, of whom 13 of the boys (11%) used snuff orally, has shown that the use of snuff was associated with an increased intensity of gingivitis (Mod  er *et al.*, 1980).

Effects on reproduction and prenatal toxicity

The still-birth rate to Indian women who chewed tobacco was 50 per 1000 live births (11/220) compared with only 17 per 1000 live births (20/1168) in women who did not chew tobacco. The mean birth weight of the offspring of tobacco chewers was approximately 500 g less than that of controls. This change was associated with a decrease in the mean gestation period. The sex ratio (male:female) of the offspring was 80:100 in the chewers in comparison to 108.5:100 in the controls (Krishna, 1978).

The mean weight of the placenta from 48 Indian mothers who took tobacco (in 85% of the cases as a mixture of tobacco and lime) was 15% greater than that from 48 controls (Agrawal *et al.*, 1983). The mean weight of newborn babies of 70 Indian tobacco users (the tobacco was either chewed or ingested alone or mixed with betel leaf or with lime) was 14% less than the weight of the babies of 70 matched controls (Verma *et al.*, 1983).

Absorption, distribution, excretion and metabolism

Gaede (1941) found that during chewing about one-third of the nicotine present in tobacco is extracted each hour. Nicotine is readily absorbed from the mouth (Gritz *et al.*, 1981). The saliva of snuff users contains *N*'-nitrosoanatabine, *N*'-nitrosoanatabine and 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982). Three samples of the saliva of two healthy men chewing Indian tobacco contained *N*'-nitrosoanatabine (17-60 ng/ml), *N*'-nitrosoanatabine (14-52 ng/ml), *N*-nitrosoproline (0.5-10 ng/ml), nicotine (120-179 µg/ml), nitrite (10-36 µg/ml) and thiocyanate (9-40 µg/ml). Urine collected from a man from commencement of chewing contained a total of 80 ng *N*-nitrososarcosine per 6-h urine, 860 ng *N*-nitrosoproline, 950 µg nicotine and 795 µg cotinine (Nair *et al.*, 1985).

The concentration of nicotine in the plasma of 11 young adult male users of oral snuff rose from a morning level of 2.9 ng/ml (after overnight abstinence) to 21.6 ng/ml after consuming an average of 11 g snuff over a period of 6-8 h. Plasma cotinine levels rose from a mean level of 137 ng/ml to 197 ng/ml. Subjects fell into two groups, with two-thirds absorbing substantial amounts of nicotine and one-third appearing to have almost no absorption (Gritz *et al.*, 1981).

After inhalation of a single pinch of snuff, blood nicotine concentration rose within minutes to 40 ng/ml — about twice the peak concentration found after smoking a cigar and comparable with the concentration found in heavy cigarette smokers (Russell *et al.*, 1980). The amount of nicotine and the relative proportion of its metabolites in the urine of nasal snuff takers was similar to that in smokers (Temple, 1976).

Nitrite levels were higher in the saliva of *mishri* users from two locations (urban and rural) and of tobacco chewers than in that of control groups. Subjects who chewed tobacco or used *mishri* had higher levels of nitrate reductase activity than controls (Murdia *et al.*, 1982).

Mutagenicity and chromosomal effects

The proportion of exfoliated micronucleated cells from the mucosa of the inner lip of 27 *khaini* users was 2.2%, ranging from 0.8-4.9%. In 15 non-users of *khaini*, the proportion of micronucleated cells was 0.5%, ranging from 0.3-0.8% (Stich *et al.*, 1982; Stich & Rosin, 1984).

The proportion of sublingual exfoliated micronucleated cells in 45 Uzbeks using *nass* was 4.3%, ranging from 1.6-6.3%. In 12 non-users of *nass*, the proportion of micronucleated cells was 0.4%, ranging from 0.0-0.5% (Zaridze *et al.*, 1985b,c).

The saliva collected from subjects during the chewing of Indian tobacco (Parijat Zafrani Patti) enhanced the frequency of chromatid breaks and exchanges in Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells. No such increase was observed with saliva produced during the chewing of a western-type tobacco (Stich & Stich, 1982).

3.3 Studies of precancerous lesions and conditions in humans

A precancerous lesion is defined as a morphologically altered tissue in which cancer is more likely to occur than in its apparently normal counterpart. A precancerous condition is a generalized state associated with a significantly increased risk of cancer (WHO Collaborating Centre for Oral Precancerous Lesions, 1978; Axéll *et al.*, 1984). Examples of oral precancerous lesions are leukoplakia and erythroplakia; oral precancerous conditions include sideropenic dysphagia, submucous fibrosis and, possibly, lichen planus.

The concept of leukoplakia as a precancerous lesion is based on the findings: (1) of a significant number of oral carcinomas associated with a pre-existing area of leukoplakia; and (2) that some leukoplakias appear to undergo malignant transformation (for reviews, see Pindborg *et al.*, 1975; Silverman *et al.*, 1984). However, studies of oral leukoplakia are often difficult to compare owing to lack of uniformity in the histological definition of leukoplakia. This problem was discussed recently (Axéll *et al.*, 1984).

The precancerous conditions submucous fibrosis (Pindborg, 1972) and lichen planus have been observed mainly in Indians with a variety of chewing habits (Pindborg *et al.*, 1972). Lichen planus is a subacute or chronic idiopathic skin disease characterized by small, flat violaceous papules, often combining to form plaques. It is often pruritic and chiefly affects the flexor surface of the wrist, legs, penis and buccal cavity (Gennaro *et al.*, 1979).

Submucous fibrosis is an insidious, chronic disease affecting the oral mucosa and sometimes the pharynx and oesophagus, and occurs almost exclusively among Indians. Sub-epithelial changes lead to the presence of palpable fibrous bands, especially in the buccal mucosa, palate and labial mucosa. Diffuse blanching of the oral mucosa and especially of the soft palate may be another characteristic sign.

In the majority of studies carried out in Asia on oral precancerous lesions and conditions, the chewing habits of the subjects are not precisely defined, particularly in reference to inclusion of areca nut in the quid. These studies are therefore summarized in the monograph on betel-quid and areca-nut chewing. This section includes only reports of studies conducted in tobacco chewers and oral-snuff takers in North America, Europe and Africa, and on users of *shammah* and *nass*, which do not contain areca nut.

(a) *Prevalence of oral leukoplakia*

In a sample of 1490 British coal miners, Tyldesley (1971) found oral leukoplakia in 3.6% of 280 tobacco chewers and in none of 122 non-chewers. Roed-Petersen and Pindborg (1973) reported that of 450 Danish patients with oral leukoplakia, 32 (7.1%) used snuff. Axéll (1976) examined 20 333 Swedes aged 15 years and over: 14.2% of men and fewer than 0.1% of women took snuff. Of the 1444 snuff users, 116 (8%) had 'snuff dipper's lesion' (oral leukoplakia) (15.9% in men and 0.2% in women). The prevalence of oral leukoplakia among the total population examined was 3.6%.

Christen *et al.* (1979a,b) found leukoplakia in nine of 14 US university students who had been chewing tobacco or using snuff or both for two to nine years. Of 1119 US high-school students, 117 (11%) used 'smokeless tobacco' and 43% had oral-mucosal lesions in the labial groove in the form of hyperkeratotic or erythroplakic areas (Greer & Poulsen, 1983).

In a study of 585 elderly coloured people resident in homes for the aged in the Cape Peninsula of South Africa, van Wyk *et al.* (1977) found that 119 (20.4%) had oral leukoplakia (excluding the tongue). Of these, eight (6.7%) chewed tobacco and four (3.4%) used snuff orally.

Of 661 individuals examined in Saudi Arabia, 187 used *shammah*; oral leukoplakia was found in 129 (69%) users but was not seen in non-users (Salem *et al.*, 1984).

Khasanov and Fasiev (1970) reported that 217 (14.7%) of 1479 *nass* users had pathological changes of the oral mucosa, such as atrophy, hypertrophy and chronic ulcer, while only 21 (0.5%) of 4674 non-users of *nass* and nonsmokers had the above changes. According to Aleksandrova (1970), 127 (44%) of 289 persons using *nass* and only one (0.4%) non-user had atrophic oral mucosa.

(b) *Histology of tobacco-related leukoplakia*

The first histological study of snuff-induced leukoplakia was carried out on seven patients by Pindborg and Poulsen (1962), who reported finding a band of homogeneous, eosinophilic periodic-acid-Schiff (PAS)-positive material in the connective tissue close to the salivary glands in the lower labial mucosa in four of the cases. In 1964, Lyon *et al.* concluded, on the basis of histochemical studies of these same Danish snuff users, that the PAS-positive material was amyloid. With regard to the epithelial changes, Pindborg and Renstrup (1963) studied biopsies from 12 snuff users and found a marked hyperplasia of the epithelium with a thickened surface layer of large and vacuolated cells; the surface epithelium was not keratinized, but streaks of focal parakeratosis were noted. Roed-Petersen and Pindborg (1973) found the streaks of parakeratosis most often in the lower labial mucosa in 31 biopsies; only one biopsy showed signs of epithelial dysplasia. Pindborg *et al.* (1980) compared the snuff-induced epithelial changes with similar changes caused by smoking. Clinically, both types of lesions present with a pumice-like appearance, and histologically they reveal a chevron-like (previously called 'streaks') keratinization of the epithelium. These changes are considered specific for tobacco usage.

Archard and Tarpley (1972) studied three oral biopsies from patients in the USA using snuff and found a homogeneous, eosinophilic deposit in the submucosa similar to that described by Pindborg and Poulsen (1962).

Axell *et al.* (1976), examining 114 biopsies of snuff users in Sweden, described increased epithelial thickness with a vacuolated surface layer having wavelike, eosinophilic spikes directed toward the surface and a narrow, eosinophilic band demarcating the prickle-cell layer and acanthosis as characteristic features of the leukoplakia lesions associated with use of snuff. They also noted some slight inflammatory reaction.

Hirsch *et al.* (1982) examined clinically, histomorphologically and histochemically lesions of varying severity associated with snuff use. They found a high frequency of keratinized lesions, sialoadenitis and degenerative changes of the salivary glands (42%), and mild epithelial dysplasia (18%). These changes were seen to occur at a higher frequency than had been reported previously by others. Exposure to snuff was shown to be related to superficial as well as to deeply located histopathological cell changes. The most marked degenerative changes in the salivary glands were seen among patients with the most extensive exposure to snuff.

Van Wyk (1965) studied 25 biopsies from Bantus with snuff-induced lesions and characterized a typical snuff lesion as one with a hyperplastic, acanthotic and parakeratotic epithelial layer overlying a chronically inflamed lamina propria. In four biopsies he found a 'disquiet epithelium'.

(c) *Malignant transformation of leukoplakia related to chewing habits*

In specimens from 12 oral-snuff users (Pindborg & Renstrup, 1963) and in 157 biopsies taken from clinically severe cases of leukoplakia among 15 000 oral-snuff users in the USA (Smith, 1975), no epithelial dysplasia was found.

Of 450 patients in Denmark with leukoplakia diagnosed from 1956-1970, 394 were followed for one to 14 years to ascertain oral cancer incidence and mortality (Roed-Petersen & Pindborg, 1973). This group included 32 oral-snuff users, with a mean exposure time of 22 years (exposure-time estimation was based on years of use and the duration of time a quid was retained in the mouth). One of the 32 had dysplasia at first examination, and another individual developed oral cancer during the follow-up period [not specified]. This corresponds to a rate of premalignant or malignant transformation of 6.2% for either dysplasia or carcinoma. In contrast, 19.5% of patients with leukoplakia not associated with snuff use developed carcinoma or showed dysplasia at first or later examination. [The Working Group noted that the follow-up period was not specified; in addition, the sample of snuff users was relatively small.]

In his study of British coal miners, Tyldesley (1976) followed up eight of 22 tobacco chewers with oral leukoplakia for five years. He found one case of malignant transformation to a squamous-cell carcinoma at the site at which the tobacco chew had been held for 30 years. In five other men there was no change, and in two, regression of the lesion was seen. [The Working Group noted the small sample size.]

Brown *et al.* (1965), in an investigation of 394 cases of oral cancer in Georgia, USA, noted that users of snuff had a significantly higher incidence of co-existing leukoplakia (60% versus 26% for non-users); 'extensive' leukoplakia was seen in 32% of users versus 6% of non-users. Both Landy and White (1961), in a study in Arkansas, USA, and Rosenfeld and Callaway (1963), in Tennessee, USA, noted that in cases of buccogingival cancer either there was concomitant leukoplakia or an evolution from leukoplakia had been observed.

3.4 Case reports and epidemiological studies of carcinogenicity to humans

Oral use

Although most of the studies of the relationship between the use of chewing tobacco or snuff and cancer have focused on risks to the oral cavity and pharynx, some evidence is also available concerning cancer at other anatomical sites. In many of the studies reported, chewing tobacco or snuff use was often only one of many potential risk factors considered.

(a) Tobacco

(i) Descriptive studies and case series

Many reports of case series have emphasized the relatively high frequency of chewing tobacco and snuff use among oral cancer patients (Table 30). [Early reports are not included if chewing tobacco or snuff habits were mentioned only in combination with other tobacco habits from which they were not distinguished; in many studies, neither smoking habits nor alcohol consumption was described.] The clinical characteristics of cancer patients who use smokeless-tobacco products have also been described (Table 31), especially the propensity of these cancers to occur in the presence of leukoplakia, to have often a verrucous appearance, and to be slow-growing, well-differentiated, squamous-cell carcinomas. Patients with cancer and with a chewing-tobacco or snuff habit are frequently described as having cancer at the site or on the side where the quid is most frequently placed.

In a study from Tennessee described more fully below (see Smith *et al.*, 1970; Smith, 1975), no oral cancer was observed in a group of 15 000 oral-snuff users; two carcinomas of the oral cavity were observed in another group of 500 oral-snuff users. [The Working Group noted that there is an absence of documentation on the source and characteristics of the study population.]

(ii) Case-control studies

Chewing tobacco or oral-snuff use (not specified) (Tables 32 and 35)

In Minnesota, Moore *et al.* (1952, 1953) studied the tobacco use histories of 40 white male patients, aged 50 years or more, with oral carcinoma (alveolar ridge, floor of mouth and buccal mucosa), 23 oral leukoplakia patients, 72 lip-cancer patients, and 93 with carcinoma of the 'face', in comparison with those of 38 control patients with hernias and other benign diseases. Although there was no difference between the case groups and the benign controls in the frequency of a 20-year history of pipe smoking or of cigar and cigarette smoking, there were statistically significant differences (all $p < 0.05$) for long-term use (more than 20 years) of chewing tobacco or snuff for each of the case groups. Within this population of primarily Scandinavian descent, more than half of the members in each case group and a third of the control group had used chewing tobacco or snuff for a minimum of 20 years. Tobacco histories were obtained by personal interviews conducted by the hospital personnel. [The composition of the case and control groups was not clearly defined. The relative risks associated with exposure of more than 20 years in contrast to none or 20 years or less were estimated by the Working Group from the numbers given. The relative risks were 2.4 for carcinoma of the face, 2.6 for lip cancer, 4.0 for oral carcinoma and 7.8 for oral leukoplakia.]

Peacock *et al.* (1960) identified persons with carcinoma of the buccal mucosa, alveolar ridge and floor of the mouth at a North Carolina, USA, hospital. Cases were included in the study only if information on tobacco use had been ascertained. These cases (staff and private patients) were compared to in-patient (staff and private patients) and out-patient (staff only) controls. It was found that 25/45 (55.6%) of the cases had used snuff or chewing tobacco for more than 20 years, whereas only 49/146 in-patient controls (32.6%) and 94/217 out-patient controls (43.3%) had done so. The association between oral cancer and use of chewing tobacco or snuff reached statistical significance only among older (60 years and over) staff patients in comparison with the in-patient control group. [The Working Group noted that controls whose habits were not known were apparently labelled non-users. Any such misclassification bias would have overestimated the strength of the association.]

The cases in a study by Vincent and Marchetta (1963) were 89 male and 17 female patients admitted successively to a New York State, USA, hospital with cancer of the oral cavity (tongue, floor of mouth, palate, gingiva, buccal mucosa), larynx, pyriform sinus or pharynx seen at the head-and-neck clinic. Controls comprised 100 male and 50 female patients of comparable age seen at the gastrointestinal clinic of the same hospital. Heavy alcohol consumption and smoking were more frequent in each case group than among controls, as determined by systematic history-taking from all subjects. The use of snuff or chewing tobacco (both designated 'snuff' by the authors in their Table 5) was also more common among the cases than in the controls. Only 5/100 male control patients (5%) had a chewing tobacco or snuff habit, whereas 9/33 (27.2%) oral-cavity cases, 3/33 (9.1%) pharynx cases, and 2/23 (8.7%) larynx cases chewed tobacco or took snuff. Cases were more likely to have smoked than controls. [Relative risks associated with use of chewing tobacco or snuff among men, calculated by the Working Group, were 7.1 for oral-cavity cancer, 1.9 for pharyngeal cancer and 1.8 for laryngeal cancer. Smoking was not controlled for.]

Williams and Horm (1977) conducted a population-based case-control study of the etiology of cancer at many different sites based on the interview responses of random-sample patients from the Third National Cancer Survey (1969-1971). Controls for the oral-cancer case group comprised patients with other cancers, excluding lung, larynx and bladder. Among men, use of chewing tobacco and snuff was strongly associated with cancer of the gum or mouth, but not with cancer of the lip or tongue; controlling for age, race and smoking habits, relative risks were 3.9 ($p < 0.01$) for moderate and 6.7 (non-significant) for heavy use of chewing tobacco or snuff. Among women, use of chewing tobacco or snuff was associated with cervical cancer; controls were patients with any other cancer. The relative risks, controlling for smoking, age and race, were 4.7 ($p < 0.05$) for moderate and 3.6 (non-significant) for high use. Suggestive associations (not statistically significant) were also found for laryngeal cancer (in men only, for whom risks were 1.8 and 2.6 for moderate and high use, respectively). [The Working Group noted that in this study multiple comparisons were made of many risk factors and many cancer sites, so that some positive findings may have been due to chance alone.]

Chewing tobacco (Tables 33 and 35)

Wynder *et al.* (1957a) compared 659 cases of lip, oral-cavity and pharyngeal cancer identified in a hospital in New York with 439 hospital-based controls with other benign and malignant conditions. Data on tobacco use and other factors were obtained from personal interviews. Cigarette, cigar and pipe smoking and alcohol use were associated with oral cancer in this study. A total of 17% of male cases had chewed tobacco in contrast to 8% of the controls, indicating a moderate association between tobacco chewing and cancer of the lip, oral cavity and pharynx. Some variation in the proportion of tobacco chewers was evident

Table 30. Proportions of smokeless-tobacco users in series of patients with upperdigestive/respiratory cancers^a

Reference	US state or country	Series description	Habit	Proportion of smokeless tobacco users	Cancer at site where quid placed	Smoking habit
Abbe (1915)	New York	100 (90 men, 10 women) patients with oral cancer	Chew	13% of cases chewed tobacco	Yes, or near site	89/90 men
Ahlbom (1937)	Sweden	545 men with cancer of the oral cavity, pharynx, larynx or oesophagus, 1931-1936	Snuff, chew, NOS	70% of patients with buccal/-gingival/mandibular (outer oral cavity) cancer, 37% with cancer of the lip, 26% with cancer of the inner oral cavity, 16% with cancer of the pharynx/larynx/-oesophagus	NM	7, 6, 39, 64% cigarette + cigar smokers, respectively; 23, 57, 35, 20% pipe smokers, respectively
Ackerman (1948)	Missouri	31 (26 men, 5 women) patients with verrucous carcinoma of the oral cavity	Chew	61% of 18 patients with buccal-mucosal cancer were 'inveterate' tobacco chewers	NM	NM
Wilkins & Vogler (1957)	Georgia	81 (37 men, 44 women) patients with gingival cancer, 1937-1956	Snuff, chew	50% of women used snuff orally, 32% of men chewed tobacco	NM	1/44 women who used snuff orally also smoked, 3 other women smoked only; 9/37 men smoked only, the 12 who chewed also smoked
Dunn & Farrior (1962)	Florida	112 patients with cancer of the oral cavity, larynx or nasopharynx	Chew, snuff	3% of cases chewed tobacco (2/4 with buccal-mucosal cancer, 1/11 with tonsillar cancer), 5% of cases used snuff orally (1/3 with cancer in palate and upper alveolar ridge, 5/16 with cancer in floor of mouth and lower alveolar ridge)	NM	2 chewers smoked; oral snuff users did not smoke; 90% of cases smoked
Goethals <i>et al.</i> (1963)	Minnesota	55 (45 men, 10 women) patients with histologically-confirmed verrucous cancer of oral cavity, 1935-1957	Chew	13% of cases chewed tobacco	NM	21/55 smoked
Coleman (1965)	Virginia	23 patients with buccal-mucosal or gingival cancer, 1958-1964	Snuff, chew, NOS	100% used snuff orally or chewed tobacco	Yes	NM
Leffall & White (1965)	Washington DC	107 (77 men, 20 women) black patients with oral-cavity cancers, 1948-1963	Chew	4/7 (57%) patients with buccal-mucosal cancer chewed tobacco	NM	NM
Kraus & Perez-Mesa (1966)	Missouri	77 (68 men, 9 women) patients with verrucous carcinoma of the oral cavity, 1942-1962	Chew, snuff	47% chewed tobacco, 4% used snuff orally, 22% denied tobacco use (5/9 women chewed or used snuff)	Often	9/68 men and 1/9 women were heavy smokers

TOBACCO HABITS OTHER THAN SMOKING

95

NOS	Leffall & White (1965)	Washington DC	107 (77 men, 20 women) black patients with oral-cavity cancers, 1948-1963	Chew	4/7 (57%) patients with buccal-mucosal cancer chewed tobacco	NM	NM
	Kraus & Perez-Mesa (1966)	Missouri	77 (88 men, 9 women) patients with verrucous carcinoma of the oral cavity, 1942-1962	Chew, snuff	47% chewed tobacco, 4% used snuff orally, 22% denied tobacco use (5/9 women chewed or used snuff)	Often	9/68 men and 1/9 women were heavy smokers
	Dunn & Dykstra (1967)	Florida	427 patients with cancer of the upper respiratory tract	Chew, snuff	4/45 (9%) of patients with cancer of the floor of mouth and lower alveolar-ridge, 2/18 (11%) with cancer of palate and alveolar ridge and 4/26 (15%) with buccal-mucosal cancer used snuff orally; 7/26 (27%) with buccal-mucosal cancer chewed tobacco; 0/388 patients with other cancers chewed tobacco or used snuff		40/45, 15/18 and 13/26 smoked, respectively
	Zacho <i>et al.</i> (1968)	Denmark	535 (385 men, 150 women) patients with gastric cancer and medical record notation on tobacco use	Chew, snuff, NOS	25% of men and no women used smokeless tobacco. Use especially common in patients with cancer of the pylorus	NA	87% of smokeless tobacco users were also smokers
	Fonts <i>et al.</i> (1969)	Kentucky	10 (5 men, 5 women) patients with verrucous carcinoma of the oral cavity, 1961-1966	Chew, snuff	80% were tobacco chewers, 10% oral snuff users, 20% chewers and oral snuff users	NM	NM
	Zacho <i>et al.</i> (1975)	Denmark	953 patients with gastric cancer (493 with tobacco-use data available in records), 1948-1973	Chew, snuff, NOS	No women used smokeless tobacco and 30 and 34% male smokers and nonsmokers used smokeless tobacco, respectively. Use common in patients with cancer of the body of the stomach	NA	In men, 36% smoked pipes, 29% chewed, 13% cigars, 22% cigarettes
	Hartselle (1977)	Alabama	289 patients with squamous-cell carcinoma of the oral cavity (39 indicated use of tobacco) compared with 248 cases in tumour registry (206 indicated use of tobacco), 1955-1975	Snuff, chew	Of the 39 pathology patients with tobacco use mentioned, 51% used snuff orally, 5% chewed tobacco. Of 208 patients from tumour-registry records, 31% used snuff orally, 6% chewed tobacco	NM	44% of 39 pathology patients smoked, 83% of 208 tumour registry patients smoked
	McGuirt (1983b)	North Carolina	169 women with 'mucosal head and neck cancer', 1975-1980	Snuff, chew, NOS	33% used snuff orally or chewed tobacco	NM	40% smoked
	Brown <i>et al.</i> (1985)	Georgia	394 (231 men, 163 women) patients with cancer in the mucous membrane of the mouth from the anterior tonsillar pillar anteriorly to the lips, but not including lip or tonsillar pillar, 1937-1957	Snuff, chew	In women, 44% used snuff orally, 2% chewed tobacco; in men, 3% used snuff orally, 9% chewed tobacco	NM	NM
	Rosenfeld & Callaway (1983); Rosenfeld & Green (1989)	Tennessee	300 (125 men, 175 women) patients with oral or gingival cancer; 225 patients (154 men, 71 women) with cancer of the tongue or floor of mouth (accurate data regarding usage of snuff were obtained from 214 of the women)	Snuff	Among 159 women with buccal/gingival cancer, 90% used snuff orally; among 55 women with cancer of the tongue or floor of mouth, 22 used snuff orally	NM	NM

*NOS, not otherwise specified; NM, not mentioned; NA, not applicable

Table 31. Case reports and case series of smokeless-tobacco users with cancer

Reference	US state or country	Cancer site (no. of cases)	Special clinical/histological characteristics, other comments	Cancer at site of quid placement	Years of smokeless tobacco use	Smoking	Alcohol	Leukoplakia
Chewing tobacco								
Wynder (1976) [Warren (1837)]	Massachusetts	Tongue (1)	Men	Yes	NM	NM	Yes, 'ardent spirits'	NM
Friedell & Rosenthal (1941)	Illinois	Mouth (8)	All men, cancers generally well-differentiated, slow-growing	6/8 yes, 1 no, 1 NM	One for 12 years; the others, 35-65 years	4/8	NM	7/8
Moertel & Foss (1958)	Minnesota	Buccal mucosa (1)	Men, 2 separate squamous-cell carcinomas in the buccal mucosa	Yes	'Entire adult life'	NM	NM	Yes
Sorger & Myrden (1960)	Canada	Buccal mucosa (4)	Men with verrucous carcinoma of buccal mucosa. All over 70 years old	Yes for at least 3/4	One for 10 years; one, always; 2, since teens	2/4	NM	2/4
Snuff								
Root <i>et al.</i> (1960) Landy & White (1961)	Minnesota Arkansas	Ear (1) Bucco gingival (25)	Farmer who placed snuff in ear Women, average age 68 years. Usually well-differentiated squamous-cell carcinoma. Metastases rare	Yes Most	42 years 20->50 years	NM NM	NM NM	NM Concomitant
Stecker <i>et al.</i> (1964)	Minnesota	Gum (1)	71-year-old man who used snuff 10-12 h daily, verrucous carcinoma	Yes	40 years	NM	NM	Yes
Axell <i>et al.</i> (1978)	[REDACTED]	Oral cavity (49)	Older than other oral cancer cases, more likely to come from northern Sweden	67%	NM	NM for snuff users	NM	NM
Sundström <i>et al.</i> (1982)	[REDACTED]	Anterior oral vestibule (23)	Men: <i>Candida</i> (58% of 19 cases), multiple carcinomas (26%). Verrucous carcinoma in some. Average age 76 years	Yes, by design	NM	NM	NM	At least 5
McGuirt (1983a)	North Carolina	Oral cavity (57)	13 men, 44 women. Persons with snuff use. Sites: 47% buccal mucosa, 32% alveolar ridge, 11% tonsillar trigone, 10% elsewhere in oral cavity. 24 verrucous-appearing, only 4 verrucous carcinomas, 58% well-differentiated histologically	89%	75% for >40 years	No, by design	No, by design	61%

*NM, not mentioned

Table 32. Case-control studies of smokeless-tobacco use (unspecified) and oral cancer

Reference	Source of patients	Cases	Controls	Smokeless tobacco use in cases and controls	RR (95 % confidence limits) ^a	Distribution of smoking habits
Moore <i>et al.</i> (1952, 1953)	Minneapolis, MN hospital, since 1951	40 men with oral cancer	38 patients with benign diseases	65% of cases, 32% of controls for >20 years	[4.0]	39% of cases, 53% of controls smoked cigarettes
Peacock <i>et al.</i> (1960)	Chapel Hill, NC hospital, 1952-1958	45 patients with oral cancer and known tobacco habits	146 patients over 40 years old, frequency matched on race, sex, economic status; 217 'randomly' sampled outpatients	55.6% of cases; 32.6% of inpatient controls; 43.3% of outpatient controls for >20 years	Significant among older staff cases	Not stated
Vincent & Marchetta (1963)	Buffalo, NY hospital	89 men and 17 women with cancer of the oral cavity, pharynx or larynx	100 men and 50 women, successive patients in same age group at gastrointestinal clinic	16% of male cases, 5% of male controls	Men (2.4-20.7) [7.1]	Among men, 85% of cases and 54% of controls smoked cigarettes
Williams & Horm (1977)	Third National Cancer Survey, 1969-1971	57 men and 27 women with cancer of the gum-mouth	2102 men and 3464 women with cancer at sites unrelated to smoking	Of cases, 11 men and 2 women; of controls, 164 men and 53 women	Men 3.9 ($p < 0.01$)	Smoking, age and race controlled for in analysis

^aRR, relative risk; figures in square brackets were calculated by the Working Group.

*NM, not mentioned

by case type: patients with lip, buccal-mucosal and palate cancer were most likely to chew tobacco. However, all tobacco-chewing cases drank alcohol and all but one smoked.

Wynder and Bross (1961) reported that 21% of 150 male patients with squamous-cell carcinoma of the oesophagus were tobacco chewers, compared with 10% of the 150 male controls with other malignant cancers and benign conditions. Cases and controls were ascertained from hospitals in New York City and Brooklyn, USA, in 1956-1959, and tobacco use was ascertained through interviews with cases and controls. Smoking and alcohol consumption were associated with an increased risk of oesophageal cancer in this population and were more common habits than tobacco chewing, but were not controlled for in analyses related to tobacco chewing. [The Working Group noted that the actual number of tobacco chewers among cases could not be estimated.]

A case-control interview study in Atlanta, Georgia, USA, by Vogler *et al.* (1962) included four groups seen over a 19-month period (1956-1957): 333 patients with cancers of the oral cavity, pharynx and larynx, 214 patients with other diseases of the mouth, 584 patients with other cancers, and 787 patients without cancer whose mouths were not examined. Among rural men, the percentage of tobacco chewers was significantly higher in the oral, pharyngeal and laryngeal cancer group and in the mouth-disease controls (36%) than in other cancer and non-cancer controls (15% or less chewed). This association was also found for urban men: 17% of oral-cavity cancer patients chewed, compared to less than 10% in the other two groups. However, approximately 50% of rural male cases smoked cigarettes and approximately 70% of urban cases smoked (which was more common than in controls). Patients with cancer of the oral cavity were more likely to chew tobacco than patients with cancer at other oral and pharyngeal sites. [Percentages preceded by the word 'approximately' are derived from diagrams in the text. Smoking was not controlled for in the analysis.]

In a case-control study of bladder cancer (Wynder *et al.*, 1963), tobacco chewing was reported by interview in 33/300 male cases (11%) and 24/300 male controls (8%). Study subjects were ascertained over a five-year period (1957-1961) in hospitals in New York City, USA.

In Puerto Rico, Martinez (1969) conducted a population-based case-control study of oral, pharyngeal and oesophageal cancer to examine environmental, tobacco and dietary factors. Each of the 400 histologically-confirmed carcinoma cases was matched with three controls for age and sex: one from the hospital where the case was diagnosed and the other two from the neighbourhood in which the case lived. Overall, 3.7% of the cases (15 persons) chewed tobacco only, compared to 4.0% of controls (48 persons); however, the percentages varied considerably by cancer site and sex. For each of the three cancers studied, the percentage of male cases who chewed only exceeded that of the controls; the same was true for female cases of oesophageal cancer and controls. However, few women with oral (none) or pharyngeal (two in controls) cancer had this habit. The chewing tobacco was typically mixed with molasses. [The Working Group noted that if relative risks for those with only a chewing habit compared to those with no habit are calculated on the basis of the figures given, the risks for men are 11.9 for oral cavity cancer, 8.7 for cancer of the pharynx and 1.2 for cancer of the oesophagus. The relative risk for oesophageal cancer in women was 2.7. However, it was noted that the numbers of tobacco chewers in the site-specific tables do not add up to the total numbers of chewers in the study, and therefore these calculated relative risks may not be accurate.]

Cole *et al.* (1971) found no difference between the observed number of male lower-urinary-tract cancer patients who chewed tobacco (46) and that expected to have the habit (42.3), derived from the distribution of habits in the controls. This population-based study included 470 interviewed cases (men and women) from 111 hospitals in the Boston and

likely to chew
smoked.

amous-cell car-
150 male con-
ls were ascer-
d tobacco use
cohol consump-
population and
or in analyses
er of tobacco

1962) included
ers of the oral
patients with
nined. Among
al, pharyngeal
other cancer
und for urban
o in the other
s and approx-
ols). Patients
with cancer at
ximately' are
ysis]

chewing was
). Study sub-
w York City,

study of oral,
etary factors.
three controls
ne other two
(15 persons)
the percent-
studied, the
e same was
en with oral
co was typi-
se with only
f the figures
pharynx and
women was
ecific tables
e calculated

lower-urin-
e the habit
ased study
Boston and

Brockton, Massachusetts, USA, statistical area over an 18-month period (1967-1968) and 500 controls drawn from 'residents lists', which enumerate almost all persons residing in the study area.

Browne *et al.* (1977) compared 75 cases of oral cavity cancer identified through a cancer registry between 1957-1971 with 150 controls matched for age, sex, primary occupation and residence drawn from a clinical practice in the UK in 1974-1976. The subjects or, in the event of death, next-of-kin were interviewed using a structured questionnaire. The authors found that controls were more likely to have used chewing tobacco (36/150) than cases (16/75). No difference between cases and controls was observed with regard to duration of tobacco chewing, and none of the subjects used snuff. Since there was matching in the design on primary occupation (but not on secondary occupation), it appears that some residual confounding by employment remained; indeed, the negative association with chewing tobacco disappeared when the data were stratified by occupation. [The Working Group noted that the discordance in time of ascertainment of the cases (1957-1971) and of controls (1974-1976), resulting in matching of attained age at different time intervals, and the necessity of interviewing primarily the next-of-kin of deceased cases raises concern about bias, especially from secular changes in tobacco habits and differential recall of habits. Over-matching may also have occurred by neighbourhood and occupation.]

Patients with cancers of the lung (1048 cases), oral cavity (591), larynx (387), oesophagus (183) and bladder (586) in 20 hospitals in eight major US cities were compared with 2560 matched hospital controls with diseases unrelated to tobacco use during 1969-1975 (Wynnder & Stellman, 1977). Among men, 233 controls (9.0%) had used chewing tobacco at some time, whereas 61 (10.3%) of patients with oral-cavity cancer, 21% with lung cancer, 12% with laryngeal cancer, 11% with oesophageal cancer and 8% with bladder cancer chewed. Less than 0.5% of women chewed tobacco. [The authors estimated that the relative risks for cancer at each of these five sites in men who chewed tobacco included 1.0 within 99% confidence limits, and none attained statistical significance.] The smoking habits of chewers and non-chewers were similar. In this population, smoking was strongly related to cancer at each site studied, while alcohol consumption was linked to cancers of the oral cavity, larynx and oesophagus.

No association between chewing tobacco and bladder cancer was observed in a study of 480 male and 152 female pair-matched bladder-cancer cases and controls in Canada (Howe *et al.*, 1980); the estimated relative risk was 0.9, based on 61 discordant pairs. The relative risk estimate was unchanged after controlling for smoking.

In a study of etiological factors for oesophageal cancer, Pottern *et al.* (1981) noted that the proportion of tobacco chewers was slightly higher among matched controls than among oesophageal-cancer cases in their interview study with the next-of-kin of 120 black, male oesophageal-cancer decedents in Washington DC, USA, and 250 black men who had died of other causes. However, the authors commented that the number of subjects with a chewing habit was small: only 3.3% of subjects chewed.

In an examination of potential etiological factors related to the risk of cancer of the nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses, Brinton *et al.* (1984) found a relative risk of 0.7 associated with chewing tobacco; this was lower than those associated with oral-snuff use (1.5), cigarette smoking (1.2) or pipe smoking (1.2), and equal to that for cigar smoking (0.7), all of which were non-significant. Confidence intervals for all of these relative risks included the null value. This case-control study included 160 hospital-ascertained cases in North Carolina and Virginia, USA, and 290 hospital controls and controls ascertained from death certificate. Subjects or their next-of-kin were interviewed by telephone.

Table 33. Case-control studies of chewing tobacco use and oral cancer

Reference	Source of patients	Cases	Controls	Chewing tobacco use	Distribution of habits
Wynder <i>et al.</i> (1957a)	New York, NY hospital	659 (543 men, 116 women) white patients with cancer of the lip, oral cavity or pharynx	439 white patients with benign head and neck tumours, thoracic diseases, lymphomas or gastrointestinal cancers	17% of cases and 8% of controls	All except 1 chewer smoked as well
Vogler <i>et al.</i> (1962)	Atlanta, GA hospital, 1956-1957	333 (235 men, 98 women) patients with cancer of the lip, oral cavity, pharynx or larynx	3 groups: 214 with other mouth diseases, 584 with other cancers, 787 non-cancer patients	In urban men, 17% of cases and <10% of controls; in rural men, 36% of cases and other-mouth-disease controls, about 15% and 10% of other controls	At least 45% of male urban and rural cases and controls smoked
Martinez (1969)	Cancer Registry, Puerto Rico, 1966	400 (290 men, 110 women) histologically-confirmed cases of cancer of the lip and oral cavity, pharynx or oesophagus	1 hospital/clinic control per case, 2 neighbourhood controls matched for age and sex per case	3.7% of cases and 4.0% of controls (Among men, RR for oral cavity cancer, 11.9. ^a Few women chewed.	The most common mixed use of tobacco was cigarettes and cigars (50%), followed by cigarettes and chewing tobacco (15.2%), and cigars and chewing tobacco (11.4%)
Browne <i>et al.</i> (1977)	English regional cancer registry, 1957-1971	75 patients with cancer of the oral cavity	150 living residents matched for age, sex, residence and primary occupation	9% of cases and 13% controls	All cases smoked. The proportion of controls with no tobacco habit not clear
Wynder & Stellman (1977)	20 hospitals in 8 US cities, 1969-1975	591 patients with cancer of the oral cavity, 1048 of the lung, 387 of the larynx, 183 of the oesophagus and 586 of the bladder	2560 patients without smoking-related diseases matched for age, sex, race and city	Among men, 10.3% of oral-cavity cases and 9.0% of controls; <0.5% of women	Smoking habits did not differ in chewers and non-chewers

^aRR, relative risk; calculated by the Working Group

Hartge *et al.* (1985) reported that use of chewing tobacco was unrelated to bladder-cancer risk. Their study included 2982 patients with bladder cancer who were identified from records of 10 large population-based case registries throughout the USA (1977-1978) and who were interviewed for information about tobacco use and other factors. There was a total of 5782 population-based controls: controls 65 years of age and older were selected from records of the Health Care Financing Administration, and controls aged under 65 years were chosen by a random digit-dialling method. The analysis was restricted to men. Among men who never smoked cigarettes, the relative risk for bladder cancer was 1.0 for chewing tobacco, controlling for age, race, residence and other tobacco habits. The authors cautioned that the relative risk estimates were somewhat unstable in view of the small number of users (40 in cases and 133 in controls).

Snuff (Tables 34 and 35)

Wynder *et al.* (1957b) compared 477 [misprinted as 472 in the table in the original paper] patients with cancers of the lip, oral cavity, maxillary sinus, nasopharynx, hypopharynx, oesophagus and larynx to 333 patients with other malignancies seen in a hospital in Stockholm, Sweden, from 1952-1955. Interviews with patients and a review of the medical history were undertaken for all study subjects. More of the buccal- and gum-cancer patients used snuff than did controls (no women practised the habit). There was suggestive evidence by ridit analyses that snuff use was related to buccal-mucosal cancer in men, and the majority of cases with gum and buccal-mucosal cancers had their tumours in the area of the mouth where the quid was held. [The Working Group could not extract the number of snuff users.]

In the case-control interview study in Atlanta, Georgia, USA, by Vogler *et al.* (1962) described on p. 98, among 642 female urban subjects, 40% of the 38 oral-cavity cases, but only 2%, 3% and 1% of the 57 other-mouth-disease, 170 other-cancer and 377 non-cancer controls, respectively, had used snuff. Similar findings were observed for the 371 rural females: 75% of the 55 cases had used snuff orally in contrast to 11% of 37 other-mouth-disease patients, 20% of 129 other-cancer patients, and 11% of 150 non-cancer patients. Only 7% of female rural patients smoked. About 30-40% of urban women smoked cigarettes, but smoking habits were similar in each study group. The differences in snuff use between cases and controls were statistically significant for most of the age strata studied. One of 3 (33%) female lip-cancer patients used snuff, in contrast to 53/72 (74%) women with oral-cavity cancer and 2/18 (11%) patients with pharyngeal or laryngeal cancer. [The Working Group noted that the reportedly similar proportions of smoking habits among urban women and the low proportion of smokers in the rural sample indicate that the association between snuff and oral/pharyngeal/laryngeal cancer was not confounded by smoking.]

In a case-control study of bladder cancer (Wynder *et al.*, 1963), study subjects were ascertained over a five-year period (1957-1961) in hospitals in New York City, USA. Snuff use was reported by interview in 6/300 male cases (2%) and 9/300 controls (3%).

In the study described on p. 98, Cole *et al.* (1971) found no difference in the observed number of male lower-urinary-tract cancer patients who used snuff (3) compared to the number expected (2.9), derived from distribution of habits in the controls.

In the study by Wynder and Stellman (1977) described on p. 99, 8 patients with oesophageal cancer, 11 with bladder cancer, 15 with laryngeal cancer, 10 with oral-cavity cancer and 35 with lung cancer used snuff. The highest relative risk was 1.7 for oesophageal

cancer associated with snuff use [but none of the risks attained statistical significance]. Smoking was strongly related to the development of cancer at each site studied, while alcohol consumption was linked to cancers of the oral cavity, larynx and oesophagus.

Westbrook *et al.* (1980) identified 55 female patients with cancer of the alveolar ridge or buccal mucosa from 1955 to 1975 at a university clinic in Arkansas, USA. A random sample of 55 female controls of comparable age seen at the institution over the same time period constituted the comparison group. Of the 55 female patients, 50 (91%) were oral-snuff users whereas only one (2%) member of the control group was a user (RR = 540, highly significant). Only three cases smoked cigarettes and one chewed tobacco. The average duration of snuff use was 52 years. The snuff users, 44 (80%) of whom were white, averaged 66 years of age. In the 15 patients for whom sufficient data were available, 14 were found to have a tumour where the snuff had been typically placed. The cancers in snuff users were all squamous-cell carcinomas, most of them well-differentiated. [The Working Group considered that the apparent use of medical records as a source of information on tobacco and alcohol use may have led to misestimation of snuff use. If controls who used snuff were less likely than cases to be recorded as such, the magnitude of the association would have been overestimated.]

In the study of Pottern *et al.* (1981) reported on p. 99, the proportion of oral-snuff users was slightly lower in matched controls than in oesophageal-cancer cases; 1.7% of oesophageal-cancer cases used snuff.

Winn *et al.* (1981a) conducted a case-control study of oral-cavity and pharyngeal cancers among women in North Carolina in 1975-1978 to examine reasons for the exceptionally high mortality rates from these cancers among white women throughout the south-eastern USA. A total of 232 women hospitalized with or who had died from cancers of the tongue (International Classification of Diseases, 8th revision, code 141), gum (code 143), floor of mouth (code 144), other mouth (code 145), oropharynx (code 146), hypopharynx (code 148), and pharynx unspecified (code 149) were included in the case group. Two age-, race- and region of residence-matched controls were obtained for each case; interview was completed for 410. Subjects or their next-of-kin were interviewed in their homes. Tobacco-related risks were estimated by using a common reference group: women with no tobacco habit. The relative risk for white women who used only oral snuff was 4.2 (95% confidence limits, 2.6-6.7), while the relative risk associated with cigarette smoking among non-users of snuff was 2.9 (1.8-4.7). Among whites, the relative risk in those with both habits was 3.3 (1.4-7.8); these women had smoked fewer cigarettes and used snuff for fewer years than women with only one habit. Risks for black women were somewhat lower, but they had used snuff for fewer years and used fewer tins per week. Although 37 women had chewed tobacco, all except three were also oral-snuff users. One-third of all oral snuff users had developed the habit by the age of 10 years, and the average duration of use was 45 years. For cases of cancer of the gum and buccal mucosa, oral-snuff use among nonsmokers was related to years of use, with relative risks ranging from 13.8 (1.9-98.0) for 1-24 years, 12.6 (2.7-58.3) for 25-49 years, and 47.5 (9.1-249.5) for 50 or more years of use. For cases of cancer at other mouth sites and of the pharynx, the corresponding relative risks were 1.7, 3.8 and 1.3. The findings relating to oral-snuff use could not be explained by poor dentition (Winn *et al.*, 1981b) or by use of mouthwashes (Blot *et al.*, 1983). The consumption of fruits and vegetables was associated with a reduction in risk in the study population, primarily evident in cigarette smokers and in women without tobacco habits, and not among oral-snuff users (Winn *et al.*, 1984).

In the study of Brinton *et al.* (1984) on cancer of the nose and paranasal sinuses, described on p. 99, a slightly elevated, but not statistically significant, relative risk of 1.5 was

attributable to oral-snuff use. This was higher than any smoking-associated risk and higher than the relative risk for chewing tobacco. When analysed by histological type, it was found that both squamous-cell carcinomas and adenocarcinomas were related to snuff use; relative risks were 1.9 and 3.1, respectively, controlling for sex. Snuff use was more strongly related to squamous-cell nasal-cancer risk in men (3.7) than in women (1.4). When data were analysed by site of cancer, it was found that the relative risk for maxillary-sinus cancer was 2.8 (95% confidence interval, 1.2-6.3).

Hartge *et al.* (1985), in the study described on p. 101, reported that snuff use was unrelated to bladder-cancer risk. Among men who never smoked cigarettes, the relative risk for bladder cancer was 0.77 for snuff use, controlling for age, race, residence and other tobacco habits. The authors cautioned that the relative risk estimates were somewhat unstable in view of the small number of users (11 in cases, 50 in controls).

(iii) Cohort studies

Chewing tobacco or oral-snuff use (not specified) (Table 36)

Bjelke and Schuman (abstract, 1982) and Schuman *et al.* (1982) described results from a cohort study of 12 945 men in Norway who had been followed for more than 10 years (1967-1978). Relative risks for regular users of oral tobacco were 2.8 for buccal-cavity and pharyngeal cancer and 3.1 for oesophageal cancer; these were statistically significant. In addition, users experienced a relative risk of 2.2 for histologically-confirmed cases of pancreatic cancer (reported to be 'significant'). Prostatic-cancer risk was unrelated to tobacco chewing or snuff use.

Bjelke and Schuman (abstract 1982) and Schuman *et al.* (1982) described cancer risk in relation to use of chewing tobacco and use of snuff in a study of 16 930 US men, who had been policy holders of an insurance association, and were followed for more than 10 years for vital status (1966-1981). Tobacco use was assessed by postal questionnaire. Former snuff users/tobacco chewers had a relative risk of 3.3 (statistically significant) for pancreatic cancer (based on 33 total deaths and 7 deaths in former users), controlling for age and urban/rural residence. The relative risk associated with regular snuff use/chewing was elevated, but was not as high (2.1, based on 5 deaths in regular users) as for former chewers and was not statistically significant. Regular snuff use/chewing (but not former or occasional use) was linked to a 2.2 relative risk for prostatic cancer (91 total deaths, 21 deaths in regular users), which was statistically significant, adjusting for age and urban-rural residence. The authors also noted that tobacco chewing and snuff use were positively related to oesophageal cancer (relative risk, 2.6, non-significant), and that a multiplicative effect was associated with use of chewing tobacco and snuff and of alcohol.

Heuch *et al.* (1983) examined pancreatic cancer etiology using data from a cohort study of 11 959 men and 2519 women who responded to a questionnaire on lifestyle factors. The group consisted of adult residents in the 1960 Norwegian census, brothers living in Norway of migrants to the USA, and the spouses and siblings of subjects from a case-control study of gastrointestinal cancer. Cancer incidence and mortality were ascertained from record linkage with the Norwegian Cancer Registry and death files. Adjusting for region, urban/rural residence, age, sex, and cigarette and alcohol consumption, a marginally significant trend of increasing risk of pancreatic cancer with increasing use of chewing tobacco or snuff was evident. The relative risk of developing cancer in histologically-verified cases was 2.9 in regular users compared to persons who had never used the products.

Table 34. Case-control studies of oral use of snuff and oral-cavity cancer

Reference	Source of patients	Cases	Controls	Snuff use, RR (95 % confidence limits) ^a	Distribution of smoking habits
Wynder <i>et al.</i> (1957b)	[REDACTED]	477 (265 men, 212 women) patients with cancer of lip, oral cavity, maxillary sinus, pharynx, larynx or oesophagus	333 patients with other cancers	In men, snuff use associated by risk analysis with buccal and gum cancer. Cancers often where quid placed	Smoking more common in cases
Vogler <i>et al.</i> (1982)	Atlanta, GA hospital, 1956-1957	333 (235 men, 98 women) patients with cancer of the lip, oral cavity, pharynx or larynx	3 groups: 214 with other mouth diseases, 584 with other cancers, 787 non-cancer patients	Among women, 40% of urban cases, and 2% of rural cases, and 1% of controls, respectively; 75% of rural cases, and 11%, 20% and 11% of controls, respectively	40% of urban and 7% of rural women smoked
Wynder & Stellman (1977)	New York, NY hospital	591 patients with cancer of the oral cavity, 1047 of the lung, 587 of the larynx, 183 of the oesophagus, 587 of the bladder	2580 patients without smoking-related diseases matched for age, sex, race and city	Among men, 1.7% of oral-cavity cancer cases and 2.7% of controls; only 1% of women	Smoking habits of snuff users not stated
Westbrook <i>et al.</i> (1980)	Little Rock, AR hospital, 1955-1975	55 women with cancer of buccal mucosa or alveolar ridge	55 random age-stratified samples of women patients	91% of cases and 1.8% of controls [RR, 540 (143.9-2026.0)]	5% of cases smoked. Controls said not to have different smoking habits
Winn <i>et al.</i> (1981a)	5 NC hospitals and death certificates, 1975-1978	232 women with cancer of the oral cavity and pharynx	410 controls with other diseases/causes of death matched for age, race and residence	46% of cases and 30% of controls. RR in white nonsmokers, 4.2	43% of cases and 33% of controls smoked, but controlled for in analysis. Association with snuff remained strong with control of other factors (Winn <i>et al.</i> , 1981b; Blot <i>et al.</i> , 1983; Winn <i>et al.</i> , 1984)

^aRR, relative risk; RR in square brackets calculated by the Working Group

Table 35. Case-control studies of non-oral cancer sites in which smokeless-tobacco use is described

Reference	Source of patients	Cases	Controls	Smokeless tobacco use, RR (95% confidence limits) ^a	Distribution of smoking habits
Nasal cancer					
Brinton <i>et al.</i> (1984)	VA and NC hospitals and death certificates	160 patients with cancer of nasal cavity or paranasal sinuses	290 matched controls from hospitals or death certificates	In oral snuff users, RR, 1.9 for squamous-cell carcinoma, 3.1 for adenocarcinoma. Maxillary sinus RR, 2.8 (1.2-6.3)	Mentioned but not controlled
Oesophageal cancer					
Wynder & Bross (1961)	NY hospitals, 1956-1959	150 men and 37 women with carcinoma of the oesophagus	150 men and 37 women with other cancers and benign conditions	In men, 21% of cases and 10% of controls chewed tobacco. RR, 2.4 (statistically significant)	Smoking more common in cases
Martinez (1969)	Cancer Registry, Puerto Rico, 1966	400 histologically-confirmed cases of cancer of lip, oral cavity, pharynx and oesophagus	1 hospital/clinic control per case, 2 neighbourhood controls matched for age and sex per case	[Estimated RR for oesophageal cancer, 1.2 for men and 2.7 for women]	The majority of men smoked but tobacco chewers only examined separately
Wynder & Stellman (1977)	20 hospitals in 8 US cities, 1969-1975	183 oesophageal cancers	2560 matched hospital controls	In men, 11% of cases and 9% of controls chewed tobacco	Smoking habits similar in cases and controls
Potter <i>et al.</i> (1981)	Washington DC	120 black men who died of oesophageal cancer	250 black men who died of other causes	3.3% of subjects chewed tobacco, 1.7% used snuff orally. Too few users for firm conclusions	Smoking more common in cases
Bladder cancer					
Wynder <i>et al.</i> (1963)	NY hospitals, 1957-1961	300 men and 70 women with bladder cancer	370 (300 men, 70 women) matched patients with other diseases	In men, 11% of cases and 8% of controls chewed tobacco; 2% of cases and 3% of controls used snuff orally. Too few users for firm conclusions	Smoking more common in cases
Cole (1971)	Boston/Brockton, MA, 1967-1968	470 population-based cases with bladder cancer	500 population-based controls	46 observed, 42.3 expected tobacco chewers; 3 observed, 2.9 expected oral snuff users. No difference	Smoking more common in cases
Howe <i>et al.</i> (1980)	3 Canadian provinces, 1974-1976	480 men and 152 women with bladder cancer	Pair-matched controls	RR, 0.9 for tobacco chewing (not significant)	Unchanged with adjustment for smoking
Hartge <i>et al.</i> (1985)	10 US population-based cancer registries, 1977-1978	2982 population-based cases with bladder cancer	5782 population-based controls	In men, RR, 0.77 for snuff and 1.0 for chewing tobacco (estimates unstable)	RRs controlled for age, race, residence and other tobacco habits
Other	Third National Cancer Survey, 1969-1971	7518 cancer patients from population-based cancer registries	Persons with other cancers	Elevated risks for cervical cancer, RR, 4.7 (statistically significant) for moderate, 3.6 for heavy use. Excess of laryngeal cancer suggestive in smokeless-tobacco users	RRs adjusted for smoking, age, race

^aRR, relative risk; estimated RR in square brackets calculated by the Working Group

Snuff

In Tennessee, USA, Smith *et al.* (1970) found that, among the 20 000 persons they examined in an unspecified number of clinics over an unspecified time interval, 15 000 were snuff users. This population included 1751 persons (1240 of them female) with mucosal changes warranting further study. Of the 1751, 157 were thought to require biopsy, but none were found to have a dyskeratotic or malignant lesion. Only 237 of the 1751 had cytological findings consistent with benign hyperkeratosis. [The Working Group noted that it is unclear whether patients with these 237 cytological abnormalities were in the group biopsied.] Repeated biopsies were made on over 75% of the 1751 with 'mucous membrane changes' at six-month intervals for 5.5 years. No cancer occurred.

In a subsequent follow-up of 1550 of the original study population of 1751 persons, including 128 of the original 157 biopsied patients (Smith, 1975), an additional 4.5 years of observation yielded no carcinoma or dyskeratosis. An additional group of 400 snuff users, apparently followed during the same 4.5 years, included 78 patients with mucosal change identified by biopsy. None of these patients developed dyskeratosis or carcinoma.

[The Working Group considered that, in these two papers, the consistent lack of clear specification as to which subset of the study group reference is being made makes it difficult to determine who was examined or followed up. While 15 000 persons appear to have been followed, only 1550 persons, selected on the basis of mucosal change present at outset and available for follow-up, received the 5.5-year follow-up. Perhaps as few as 128 received the full 10-year follow-up. The period of time during which the initial 20 000 persons were accrued is not specified, although at one point the authors state that the paper is a 'report of a 20-year study'. Since no tracing method is described, it is not clear whether the authors would have learned of any hospitalizations for oral cancer or deaths from all cancers in their study population.]

Table 36. Prevalence and follow-up studies of populations using smokeless tobacco

Reference	US state or country	Cohort description	Results ^a
Smith <i>et al.</i> (1970); Smith (1975)	Tennessee	128 oral snuff users with oral lesions (not dyskeratotic or malignant)	10-year follow-up yielded no malignancy. Not clear that follow-up methods would have detected new oral cancer patients
Bjelke & Schuman (1982); Schuman <i>et al.</i> (1982)	USA	16 930 men followed for 15 years	RR, 3.3 for pancreatic cancer for former snuff users/tobacco chewers (statistically significant). Also elevated RR for regular users (not significant). RR, 2.2 for prostatic cancer (statistically significant). Also association with oesophageal cancer
	Norway	12 945 men followed for 11 years	RR, 2.2 for pancreatic cancer, reported as significant. RR, 2.8 and 3.1 for cancer of the buccal cavity and pharynx and of the oesophagus (statistically significant)
Heuch <i>et al.</i> (1983)	Norway	11 959 men and 2519 women from several sources of Norwegians	RR, 2.9 for pancreatic cancer in smokeless-tobacco users, adjusted for cigarette smoking and alcohol consumption

^aRR, relative risk

(b) *Mishri*, *gudakhu* and *shammah*

No oral cancer was observed in 22 606 persons using *mishri* in a prevalence study of 101 761 Indian villagers. In contrast, eight oral cancers were noted in 28 638 Indians with a chewing habit which included use of tobacco in the quid; and two cancers occurred in 1073 mostly male users with mixed habits. No oral cancer occurred in persons with no tobacco habit. *Mishri* use was much more common among women (38.9%) than among men (22.2%) (Mehta *et al.*, 1972). [The Working Group noted that women might be expected to have lower cancer rates regardless of tobacco use.]

In a house-to-house survey of a random sample in Singhbhum district, India, 8.3% of the population were reported to use *gudakhu*. No oral cancer or precancerous lesion was found among them (Mehta *et al.*, 1971).

In a survey of 661 persons from Saudi Arabia, of whom 28% used *shammah*, Salem *et al.* (1984) described seven patients with squamous-cell carcinoma of the mouth. Leukoplakia was present, and all had used *shammah* for 'many' years. Smoking and alcohol consumption were not mentioned.

(c) *Tobacco plus lime*

Jafarey *et al.* (1977) reported a hospital-based case-control study in Pakistan. The cases were 1192 histologically-diagnosed oral-cavity and oropharyngeal cancers. Controls (3562) were matched for age, sex and place of birth. Among men, 4% (27/683) of cases and 3% (60/1978) of controls, and among women, 7.7% (39/509) of cases and 3% (48/1584) of controls chewed tobacco, giving relative risks of 10.4 and 13.7, respectively, compared to those who neither chewed nor smoked. For further details of this study see p. 108. [The Working Group considered that although the habit in this study is reported as 'tobacco' chewing, in view of other publications by the same authors, it is likely to have been chewing of tobacco and lime.]

Chandra (1962) selected 450 cases of cancer of the buccal mucosa registered in a hospital in Calcutta, India, during 1955-1959, and used 500 of the friends or relatives who came to hospital with the patients as controls. Cases and controls were approximately age matched. Tobacco chewing was reported by 6.3% (18/287) of cases and 4.2% (17/410) of controls among men and 3.1% (5/163) of cases and 2.2% (2/90) of controls among women. For further details see the monograph on betel-quid and areca-nut chewing (p. 177). [Relative risks calculated by the Working Group from the data for tobacco chewing and for no chewing or smoking were 2.7 for males and 2.5 for females. The author did not clarify whether the chewing habit was tobacco only or tobacco plus lime.]

[In addition to these two studies, which directly examined the habit of 'tobacco-and-lime' chewing, some indirect epidemiological evidence is available from various studies detailed in the monograph on betel-quid and areca-nut chewing. In those studies (Wahi *et al.*, 1965; Wahi, 1968; Jussawalla & Deshpande, 1971; see also Tables 17-20, 23, 24 of the monograph on betel-quid and areca-nut chewing, pp. 175-176, 180) in which cancer risks were studied in relation to unspecified habits of betel-tobacco-lime chewing, it is almost certain that the predominant habit within the study populations was tobacco-lime chewing *without* betel. Therefore, at least part of the increased cancer risk reported in those studies is reasonably attributable to tobacco-lime chewing *per se*.]

(d) *Tobacco plus lime plus other components*

The first mention in the literature of a possible association between the use of *nass* and oral cancer goes back to 1910, by Petrov (quoted in Shilovtsev, 1941). In 1929, the cancer-notification form developed for the Samarkand region included a question on the *nass* habit, and in 1936 a campaign against the use of *nass* was organized (Shilovtsev, 1941).

(i) *Descriptive studies and case series*

Early reports on a possible association between the use of *nass* and oral cancer are based on clinical observations. Four cases of oral cancer were observed by Borovsky in 1924 among 11 cases of cancer in the Uzbek SSR; 50 cases of oral cancer in *nass* users were described by Kasansky in 1935 in the Turkmenian SSR (quoted in Shilovtsev, 1941). Of 59 cancer cases diagnosed in 1935-1938 in Samarkand among the native population, 39 (66%) were cancers of the mouth; none of the 139 cancer patients of other ethnic groups had oral cancer. *Nass* use is frequent among the native population in Samarkand (Shilovtsev, 1941).

Sharipov (1965) reported that, out of 250 patients with oral cancer diagnosed in Samarkand, 233 were Uzbeks, of whom 203 (87%) used *nass*. Khasanov (1965) reported that of 133 Uzbek patients with oral cancer, 94 (71%) used *nass*.

According to Khasanov (1965), the most frequent sites of oral cancer in people in the Samarkand region are the floor of the mouth (25%) and tongue (48%), sites which are in direct contact with *nass*. In people in the Kazakh SSR, where *nass* is more frequently placed in the lower lip groove, the sites found chiefly to be affected are the gum, buccal-mucous membrane, lip and anterior tongue (Paches & Milievskaya, 1980).

The age-standardized incidence rate for oral cancer in the Uzbek SSR (an area where *nass* use is common) is 2.3 per 100 000, whereas the same figures for two republics where *nass* is not used are 0.9 and 0.4, respectively (Paches & Milievskaya, 1980).

In Afghanistan, only 2.0% of all cancers were of the oral cavity, although the habit of chewing *naswar* is frequent (Sobin, 1969).

(ii) *Analytical studies*

One case of oral cancer was reported among 289 *nass* users in the Kazakh SSR who underwent oral examination; no oral cancer was seen in 243 smokers or in 1480 persons who neither smoked nor used *nass* (Aleksandrova, 1970).

Nugmanov and Bainakanov (1970) carried out a study in the Kazakh SSR in which the habits of oral-cancer patients were compared with the habits of controls in relation to use of *nass*. Of 93 oral-cancer patients, 30.1% used *nass* while only 6.7% of 247 controls did so. Further comparisons, involving 28 *nass* users with oral cancer and 19 *nass*-using controls, revealed that patients with oral cancer used *nass* more frequently and kept it in the mouth longer than controls (Table 37). [The Working Group noted that the sources of cases and controls were not reported; confounding due to other tobacco-related habits was not adjusted for; and no adequate statistical analysis was performed.]

Jafarey *et al.* (1977) found that 35 oral-cancer patients and 33 controls in Pakistan used *nass*, 84 patients and 114 controls used *naswar*, and 88 patients and 1690 controls had no tobacco habit. The relative risk for oral cancer associated with *nass* use was thus 20.4,

Table 37. Oral cancer in *nass* users^a

Frequency of daily use of <i>nass</i>	Cases (28) %	Controls (19) %
<2 times	3.6	21.0
3-5 times	28.6	57.4
6-10 times	21.4	15.8
>10 times	46.4	15.8

^aFrom Nugmanov and Bainakanov (1970)

and that associated with *naswar* use was 14.2. [The Working Group noted that confounding due to other tobacco-related habits was not adjusted for.]

Nasal use

The first reference to nasal use of tobacco as a cause of cancer comes from Hill in 1761, who described nasal cancer in two of his patients in London, which he ascribed to heavy snuff inhaling (Redmond, 1970).

(a) Descriptive studies and case series

Of the 86 Bantu patients with respiratory cancer seen from 1949 to 1954 in a radiation department in Johannesburg, South Africa, 46 (54%) had nasal-cavity and sinus cancers, which were predominantly well-differentiated squamous-cell carcinomas of the maxillary antrum. The cases were drawn from a population of about 2 000 000, and the authors estimated that about 25% of cases reached a hospital. The authors compared this proportion with the 5% frequency of nasal cancer in previously published series of Europeans with respiratory-tract cancer. [The Working Group noted that the rate of 86/2 000 000 or 4.3/100 000 compares with the age-adjusted incidence rates for 1956-1959 of 1.3/100 000 in male Bantus, 1.1/100 000 in whites and 2.0/100 000 in cape coloureds (Doll *et al.*, 1970).] The authors noted that cigarette smoking is uncommon in the area, but snuff inhalation is widely practised by both Bantu men and women for whom its use has an important cultural and ritual history. The product typically contains tobacco leaves and an ash from aloe plants or other species, with the occasional addition of oil, lemon juice and herbs (Keen *et al.*, 1955); use is often 'one teaspoonful' per day (Baumslag *et al.*, 1971).

Higginson and Oettlé (1960) conducted a large incidence and mortality survey of cancer and a case-control study among South African Bantus. Cases were found through hospital records, death certificates and private doctors, and census data provided the denominators for the rates. They observed that the incidence of oral cavity cancer is similar for Bantus in South Africa and for US blacks, but that paranasal-sinus cancer occurs at far greater frequency in Africa than in the USA (31 observed, compared with <1 expected for US blacks or whites). Use of snuff both orally and nasally is common among Bantus (19% in men, 30% in women), on the basis of a small survey in one town. In rural hospitals, 21% of men and 37% of women used it nasally. In sinus cancer patients, 43% of seven men used snuff, a proportion higher than that found for patients with cancer of the mouth (0), lung (9%) or oesophagus (7%), or for hospital controls (6% young, 21% older men) and the surveyed population (4% young, 15% older men). [The Working Group noted that it is not always clear whether the snuff was taken nasally or orally.]

Hou-Jensen (1964) described 97 cases of cancer of the postnasal space (nasopharynx) ascertained from hospital and medical laboratory records in Kenya during 1957-1962. On the basis of these figures and census data, one tribe in particular, the Nandi, was found to have a moderately raised incidence of nasopharyngeal cancer, 1.43 per 100 000 per year, in contrast to an incidence of 0.52/100 000 or less for other tribes. The total incidence of other oral, nasal, pharyngeal and laryngeal cancers taken together did not show a high rate of occurrence in the Nandi. Six of 12 patients still alive had been snuff users and one had chewed tobacco. The author noted that snuff inhaling is common among many tribes in East Africa, but that the Nandis use 'liquid' snuff, which is not further described. [The Working Group noted that although the incidences in this report are high, they are based on small numbers and might have been due to over-representation of cases from the Nandi tribe.]

(b) *Analytical studies*

In a case-control study, Shapiro *et al.* (1955) reported that cancer of the paranasal sinuses (22 in men, five in women) accounts for a high proportion of respiratory-tract cancer (31 in men, six in women) (71% for men, 83% for women) in Bantu Africans, on the basis of radiation therapy department records from 1949-1951 of 37 Bantu cases from a group of hospitals in Johannesburg, South Africa. This was in sharp contrast to European cases seen in the Transvaal, where only 5% of respiratory-tract cancers occurred in the nasal sinuses. Most of the cancers were in the maxillary antrum (28/34 studied) and were described typically as well-differentiated squamous-cell 'epitheliomata'. The authors noted that 80% (22/28) of antral cancer cases reported 'prolonged and heavy' use of snuff [probably of the same composition as that described by Keen *et al.*, 1955] in contrast to only 34% in Bantu men with cancer at other sites. The authors stated that 'there was no obvious correlation between antral cancer and cigarette, pipe or *dagga* [marijuana] smoking.' [The Working Group noted that the source and nature of the control group is not described. There may be some overlap in the cases in this article with those in the study of Keen *et al.*, 1955.]

A case-control study of oral, pharyngeal and oesophageal cancer in South India was conducted by Shanta and Krishnamurthi (1963). Controls were drawn from a 'non-tumorous population' attending fairs and general health clinics. None of the controls used snuff, but some patients with cancers under study did (probably intranasally). This was especially evident for cancer of the oesophagus: 12.2% of male and 11.1% of female patients practised the habit; for those with cancer of the hypopharynx, 11.1% of men and 8.3% of women used snuff; and for cancer of the oropharynx, tonsils and epiglottis, 9% and 4.4% of men and women, respectively, took snuff. [The Working Group noted that this habit may have been spuriously related to cancer risk because of correlations with other risk factors for the diseases studied, namely, areca-nut and tobacco chewing, and smoking.]

Snuff inhalation was reported in a study from Ahmedabad, India. Out of 57 518 industrial workers examined, 1316 or (2.3%) used tobacco only in the form of snuff inhalation. No oral cancer was found in either a cross-sectional (Smith *et al.*, 1975) or follow-up study of this population (Bhargava *et al.*, 1975).

[The Working Group noted that the composition of the snuff used was not described in any of these studies.]

In three studies on wood-dust exposure (see IARC, 1981) and tumours of the nasal cavity and sinuses, enquiry was made into the use of snuff in order to assess its possible confounding role. Acheson *et al.* (1968) reported that three out of 11 furniture workers who had developed nasal adenocarcinomas and for whom the appropriate history could be elicited

had ever taken snuff, probably by inhalation. Andersen *et al.* (1977) reported that none of the cases of tumours of the nasal cavity and sinuses treated in a major Danish hospital during a 10-year period had used snuff.

Engzell *et al.* (1978) reported that the smoking and snuff habits of cases of carcinoma of the nose and paranasal sinuses reported to the cancer registry of the National Board of Health and Welfare in Sweden between 1961 and 1971 were no different from those found in a general survey. The report does not distinguish between the different ways of administering snuff.

4. Summary of Data Reported and Evaluation

4.1 Exposure data

Smokeless-tobacco habits are practised by many millions of people, principally in Africa, Asia, Europe and North America, utilizing several techniques, products and dosage levels. In some countries, average consumption by users is estimated to be about 5 kg per year.

Among the thousands of compounds present in tobacco, the tobacco-specific nitrosamines are the only identified carcinogens that occur in mg/kg concentrations. Low levels ($\mu\text{g/kg}$) of carcinogenic polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons and metals and of the α -emitting ^{210}Po (0.1-1.0 pCi/g) have also been detected. Use of smokeless tobacco entails extensive exposure to relatively high levels of tobacco-specific nitrosamines.

4.2 Experimental data

Various chewing tobaccos and unburnt cigarette tobaccos and their extracts were tested by oral administration in mice, by topical application to the oral mucosa of mice, rats and hamsters, and by subcutaneous administration, skin application, inhalation, intravesicular implantation and intravaginal application to mice. All of these studies suffered from certain deficiencies.

In a two-stage, mouse-skin assay, applications of tobacco extract followed by promotion by croton oil induced papillomas and squamous-cell carcinomas of the skin. In further two-stage, mouse-skin assays, application of tobacco extracts following initiation by 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene resulted in papillomas.

A commercial Swedish snuff was tested for carcinogenicity in rats, by topical administration in a surgically-created oral canal, alone or in combination with herpes simplex virus type 1 infection. Two squamous-cell carcinomas of the oral cavity were observed in the group receiving both treatments, but this result was not statistically significant.

Snuff was tested by oral administration in hamsters, alone and in combination with calcium hydroxide, but the data were insufficient for evaluation. Several studies in hamsters in which snuff was administered as single or repeated applications into the cheek pouch or fed in the diet yielded insufficient data for evaluation.

Subcutaneous injection of ethanol extracts of snuff to rats did not produce an increase in tumour incidence.

Nass was tested for carcinogenicity in hamsters by administration into the cheek pouch or by skin application. No tumour was found at the site of application. Although *nass* was associated with an apparent excess of liver tumours in various groups receiving cheek-pouch administrations, which may be indicative of carcinogenic activity, deficiencies in reporting do not allow an evaluation to be made.

Ethanol extracts of chewing tobacco (*Nicotiana tabacum*) induce mutations in *Salmonella typhimurium* and in Chinese hamster V79 cells. They also induce micronuclei in bone-marrow cells of Swiss mice.

Ethyl acetate extracts of a chewing tobacco induce sister chromatid exchanges in cultured human lymphocytes and in a human lymphoblastoid cell line. Ethyl acetate and ethanol extracts of this tobacco induce transformation in Syrian hamster embryo cells.

Aqueous extracts of *nass* and *khaini* induce chromosomal aberrations in Chinese hamster ovary cells.

Saliva collected during the chewing of an Indian tobacco induced chromosomal aberrations in Chinese hamster ovary cells.

An increased proportion of micronucleated cells was found in exfoliated oral-mucosa cells from users of *khaini* and *nass*.

Sister chromatid exchanges are induced in Chinese hamster ovary cells by anatabine, nicotine and nornicotine.

Overall assessment of data from short-term tests: Ethanol extracts of (*Nicotiana tabacum*) chewing tobacco^a

	Genetic activity			Cell transformation
	DNA damage	Mutation	Chromosomal effects	
Prokaryotes		+		
Fungi/green plants				
Insects				
Mammalian cells (in vitro)		+		
Mammals (in vivo)			+	
Humans (in vivo)				
Degree of evidence in short-term tests for genetic activity: Sufficient				Cell transformation: No data

^aThe groups into which the table is divided and the symbols used are defined on pp. 16-17 of the Preamble; the degrees of evidence are defined on p. 18.

Overall assessment of data from short-term tests: Ethyl acetate extracts of a chewing tobacco^a

	Genetic activity			Cell transformation
	DNA damage	Mutation	Chromosomal effects	
Prokaryotes				
Fungi/green plants				
Insects				
Mammalian cells (in vitro)			+	+ ^b
Mammals (in vivo)				
Humans (in vivo)				
Degree of evidence in short-term tests for genetic activity: <i>Inadequate</i>				Cell transformation: Positive

^aThe groups into which the table is divided and the symbols used are defined on pp. 16-17 of the Preamble; the degrees of evidence are defined on p. 18.

^bAn ethanol extract of this chewing tobacco also gave positive results.

4.3 Human data

Oral leukoplakia, a precancerous lesion, has been associated with oral-snuff use in a number of studies. One study of *shammah* users and several studies of *nass* users showed the same association.

Epidemiological studies of cancer and the oral use of smokeless tobacco in western populations have often not distinguished between tobacco chewing and snuff usage. Studies that have are summarized first.

Chewing tobacco

Reports of series of oral-cancer patients indicate that a high proportion were tobacco chewers and that the cancer often developed at the site at which the quid was placed habitually. However, data on chewing tobacco often came only from medical records; coexistent smoking habits often were not mentioned.

In two of five case-control studies in which data on tobacco use were appropriately obtained, the proportion of tobacco chewers among patients with cancer of the oral cavity, pharynx or larynx was two to three times higher than in control subjects; however, confounding by tobacco smoking or alcohol consumption could not be excluded. A large study of oral, pharyngeal and oesophageal cancer reported no difference in chewing-tobacco use between cases and controls; although the relative risk of having cancer of the oral cavity or pharynx was increased in tobacco chewers, this study is not convincing because of major

discrepancies in the tabulated data. Data on dose-response are lacking in all three studies. The other two case-control studies provide no clear evidence that tobacco chewing is associated with oral cancer: one study was very large but did not control for smoking, and one had serious methodological limitations.

Results from the four case-control studies of chewing-tobacco use and cancer of the oesophagus tend to show a slight increase in incidence. Nose and nasal-sinus cancers were found to be unrelated to tobacco chewing in one case-control study. No association between chewing tobacco and bladder cancer was observed in five case-control studies.

No cohort study of chewing tobacco alone and cancer has been reported.

Oral snuff

Reports of case series indicate that a high proportion of oral-cancer patients took snuff orally, and that the cancer frequently developed at the site of snuff application.

Four case-control studies, three from the south-eastern USA and one from Scandinavia, have implicated snuff use in the etiology of cancer of the oral cavity and, to a lesser extent, of the pharynx. In three of these studies, relative risks could not be computed; however, the differences in snuff usage between cases and controls were substantial, and confounding by cigarette smoking could be largely excluded. In the fourth study, in the south-eastern USA, the relative risk of oral and pharyngeal cancer for white women who used snuff but did not smoke was four times that for women with no tobacco habit; a strong dose-response relationship was observed; adjustment for other risk factors did not substantially reduce the relative risks.

In a cohort study of snuff users with non-malignant oral lesions, none developed cancer; however, the study was inadequately reported, had methodological limitations, and therefore could not be satisfactorily interpreted.

One case-control study has suggested that oral use of snuff may be associated with certain types of nasal-sinus cancer; in other case-control studies, no association was evident between snuff use and bladder cancer or between snuff use and cancer of the oesophagus.

Smokeless tobacco, unspecified

Studies that have not distinguished snuff from chewing tobacco are informative for four reasons when considered in conjunction with the habit-specific studies summarized above. First, reports of three case series confirm the high relative frequency of smokeless-tobacco use in oral-cancer patients. Four case-control studies have reported smokeless-tobacco use to be moderately to strongly associated with oral cancer, although smoking habits were not controlled for in three of the studies.

Second, a dose-response relationship was found in one large case-control study. The relative risks for oral cancer in men, after adjustment for other risk factors, ranged from four-fold for moderate smokeless-tobacco use to more than six-fold for heavy use.

Third, two cohort mortality studies, in which large numbers of persons with and without unspecified smokeless-tobacco habits were followed, provide evidence of a positive association with cancer. There was a two- to three-fold increased risk of death from oral, pharyngeal and oesophageal cancer in one study and from oesophageal cancer in the second.

Fourth, studies of unspecified smokeless-tobacco use provide some evidence of an increased risk of cancers at sites outside the upper digestive and respiratory tracts.

Whereas the data summarized above all come from studies in North America and western Europe, the data below refer to studies of oral use of tobacco and nasal use of snuff in South-East Asia and in Africa.

Mishri/gudakhu

Oral cancer in users of *mishri* and *gudakhu* has been studied only in prevalence surveys; no case was found.

Shammah

Oral cancers were seen in users of *shammah*.

Tobacco plus lime (khaini)

Two large case control-studies, from Pakistan and India, reported two-fold to 14-fold increases in the risk of oral-cancer occurrence in tobacco (presumably tobacco-lime) users relative to non-users, in smokers and nonsmokers considered separately. Indirect evidence, deducible from various other studies of chewing and oral cancer in which the predominant habit entailed use of tobacco and lime without areca nut, corroborates the existence of this increased cancer risk.

Tobacco plus lime plus other components

In two case series, the majority of oral-cancer patients used *nass*; in another, the cancers were found to develop at the site at which the *quid* was placed habitually. Two case-control studies showed five-fold to 20-fold increases in the risk of oral cancer in association with *nass* use in the USSR; however, adjustment was not made for smoking habits and other potential confounders.

Use of *naswar*, examined in one case-control study in Pakistan, was associated with a marked increase in oral-cancer risk; however, positive confounding by tobacco smoking and betel-quid chewing could not be eliminated.

Nasal snuff

Two case-control studies among Bantu subpopulations in Africa, among whom nasal and oral use of indigenous snuff (containing tobacco and other ingredients, including aloe) are common, showed a moderately elevated risk of nasal-sinus cancer in relation to this habit; however, the studies had severe methodological limitations.

In India, two studies (one cross-sectional, one prospective) of oral cancer found no association between oral cancer and snuff inhaling. A case-control study reported snuff inhaling to be more common among patients with cancers of the oesophagus, hypopharynx or oropharynx than among controls; however, adjustment was not made for other risk factors for these cancers.

No study was available that specifically addressed the possible carcinogenicity of nasal use of snuff formulated in North America or western Europe.

4.4 Evaluation¹

There is *sufficient evidence* that oral use of snuffs of the types commonly used in North America and western Europe is carcinogenic to humans. There is *limited evidence* that chewing tobacco of the types commonly used in these areas is carcinogenic.

Epidemiological studies that did not distinguish between chewing tobacco and snuff provide *sufficient evidence* for the carcinogenicity of oral use of smokeless-tobacco products, as reported in these studies.

In aggregate, there is *sufficient evidence* that oral use of smokeless tobacco of the above types is carcinogenic to humans.

There is *sufficient evidence* that oral use of tobacco mixed with lime (*khaini*) is carcinogenic to humans.

There is *inadequate evidence* that oral use of the other smokeless-tobacco preparations considered (*nass*, *naswar*, *mishri*, *gudakhu* and *shammah*) is carcinogenic to humans.

There is *inadequate evidence* that nasal use of snuff is carcinogenic to humans.

There is *inadequate evidence* to evaluate the carcinogenicity of chewing tobacco, snuff or *nass* to experimental animals.

5. References

- Abbe, R. (1915) Cancer of the mouth: The case against tobacco. *N.Y. med. J.*, 102, 1-2
- Abraham, S.K., Goswami, V. & Kesavan, P.C. (1979) A preliminary assessment of possible mutagenicity of betel nut and ingredients of the betel quid when administered alone or in combinations to larvae of *Drosophila melanogaster*. *Mutat. Res.*, 66, 261-266
- Acheson, E.D., Cowdell, R.H., Hadfield, E. & Macbeth, R.G. (1968) Nasal cancer in woodworkers in the furniture industry. *Br. med. J.*, ii, 587-596
- Ackerman, L.V. (1948) Verrucous carcinoma of the oral cavity. *Surgery*, 23, 670-678
- Agrawal, P., Chansoriya, M. & Kaul, K.K. (1983) Effect of tobacco chewing by mothers on placental morphology. *Indian Ped.*, 20, 561-565
- Ahlbom, H.E. (1937) Predisposing factors for squamous-cell epitheliomas of the oral cavity, larynx, pharynx and oesophagus. A statistical examination of data of the Radiumhemmet, Stockholm (Ger.). *Acta radiol.*, 18, 163-185

¹For definitions of the italicized terms, see Preamble, pp. 15-16 and 19.

- Ahmad, S.M. (1976) Tobacco production and consumption trends in Pakistan. *Tabac J. int.*, 4, 325
- Akehurst, B.C. (1981) *Tobacco*, 2nd ed., New York, Longman, pp. 641-642
- Aleksandrova, H.M. (1970) *Role of nass in the development of pathological changes in the mouth* (Russ.). In: *Epidemiology of Malignant Tumours*, Alma-Ata, Nauka Publishing House, pp. 243-246
- Andersen, H.C., Andersen, I. & Solgaard, J. (1977) Nasal cancers, symptoms and upper airway function in woodworkers. *Br. J. ind. Med.*, 34, 201-207
- Anon. (1953) *Report on Marketing of Tobacco in India, Agricultural Marketing in India*, pp. 236-237
- Anon. (1978) Statistics. *Tabak-J. int.*, 6, 421-424
- Anon. (1979) Statistics. Production of smoking tobacco in kg — for certain selected countries. *Tabak-J. int.*, 6, 471-472
- Anon. (1981) Snuff-making blends the new and the traditional. *World Tobacco*, December, pp. 57-58
- Anon. (1983) Boys in Atlanta go for snuff and chewing tobacco. *Chem. Eng. News*, 61, 56
- Anon. (1984) *Progressive Grocer*, September, p. 124
- Archard, H.O. & Tarpley, T.M., Jr (1972) Clinicopathologic and histochemical characterization of submucosal deposits in snuff dipper's keratosis. *J. oral Pathol.*, 1, 3-11
- Axéll, T. (1976) A prevalence study of oral mucosal lesions in an adult Swedish population. *Odontol. Rev.*, 27, Suppl. 36
- Axéll, T. (1979) *Sniffing and its adverse effects*. In: *Tobacco Smoking or Health. Adverse Medical Effects of Tobacco Smoking*, Stockholm, Liber Förlag, pp. 72-79
- Axéll, T., Mörnstad, H. & Sundström, B. (1976) The relation of the clinical picture to the histopathology of snuff dipper's lesions in a Swedish population. *J. oral Pathol.*, 5, 229-236
- Axéll, T., Mörnstad, H. & Sundström, B. (1978) Snuff and cancer of the oral cavity — A retrospective study (Swed.). *Läkartidningen*, 75, 2224-2226
- Axéll, T., Holmstrup, P., Kramer, I.R.A., Pindborg, J.J. & Shear, M. (1984) International seminar on oral leukoplakia and associated lesions related to tobacco habits. *Commun. Dent. oral Epidemiol.*, 12, 146-154
- Axton, W.F. (1975) *Tobacco and Kentucky*, Lexington, KE, University Press of Kentucky, pp. 8, 25, 58-59

- Balfour, D.J.K., ed. (1984) *International Encyclopedia of Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, Section 114, *Nicotine and the Tobacco Smoking Habit*, Oxford, Pergamon Press
- Barroll, A. & Ramström, L.M. (1979) *Tobacco habits in Sweden*. In: *Tobacco Smoking and Health. Adverse Effects of Tobacco Smoking*, Stockholm, Liber Förlag, pp. 12-29
- Baumslag, N., Keen, P. & Petering, H.G. (1971) Carcinoma of the maxillary antrum and its relationship to trace metal content of snuff. *Arch. environ. Health*, 23, 1-5
- Bhargava, K., Smith, L.W., Mani, N.J., Silverman, S., Jr, Malaowalla, A.M. & Bilimoria, K.F. (1975) A follow up study of oral cancer and precancerous lesions in 57,518 industrial workers of Gujarat India. *Indian J. Cancer*, 12, 124-129
- Bhide, S.V., Murdia, U.S. & Nair, J. (1984a) Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon profiles of pyrolysed tobacco products commonly used in India. *Cancer Lett.*, 24, 89-94
- Bhide, S.V., Shah, A.S., Nair, J. & Nagarajrao, D. (1984b) *Epidemiological and experimental studies on tobacco related oral cancer in India*. In: O'Neill, I.K., von Borstel, R.C., Miller, C.T., Long, J. & Bartsch, H., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Occurrence, Biological Effects and Relevance to Human Cancer (IARC Scientific Publications No. 57)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 851-857
- Bhonsle, R.B., Murti, P.R., Daftary, D.K. & Mehta, F.S. (1979) An oral lesion in tobacco-lime users in Maharashtra, India. *Indian J. oral Pathol.*, 8, 47-52
- Bjelke, E. & Schuman, L.M. (1982) *Chewing of tobacco and use of snuff: Relationship to cancer of the pancreas and other sites in two prospective studies*. In: *Proceedings of the XIIIth International Cancer Congress, Seattle, Washington* (Abstract No. 1172), p. 207
- Blot, W.J., Winn, D.M. & Fraumeni, J.F., Jr (1983) Oral cancer and mouthwash. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 70, 251-253
- Bock, F.G., Moore, G.E. & Crouch, S.K. (1964) Tumor-promoting activity of extracts of unburned tobacco. *Science*, 145, 831-833
- Bock, F.G., Shamberger, R.J. & Myers, H.K. (1965) Tumour-promoting agents in unburned cigarette tobacco. *Nature*, 208, 584-585
- Bordia, A., Purbiya, S.L., Khabya, B.L., Arora, S.K., Hatimi, I.H. & Singh, S.V. (1977) A comparative study of common modes of tobacco use on pulse, blood pressure, electrocardiogram and blood coaguability in patients with coronary artery disease. *J. Assoc. Phys. India*, 25, 395-401
- Brinton, L.A., Blot, W.J., Becker, J.A., Winn, D.M., Browder, J.P., Farmer, J.C., Jr & Fraumeni, J.F., Jr (1984) A case-control study of cancers of the nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses. *Am. J. Epidemiol.*, 119, 896-906
- Brooks, J.E. (1952) *The Mighty Leaf. Tobacco Through the Centuries*, Boston, MA, Little, Brown & Co., pp. 109, 213, 277

- therapeutics,
Press
- smoking and
12:29
- rum and its
- moria, K.F.
8 industrial
- les of pyro-
- perimental
i, R.C., Mil-
Biological
57) Lyon,
- bacco-lime
- tionship to
eedings of
No. 1172),
- nal Can-
- acts of un-
- unburned
- 7) A com-
e, electro-
J. Assoc.
- Ir & Frau-
and para-
- VA, Little,
- Brown, R.L., Suh, J.M., Scarborough, J.E., Wilkins, S.A., Jr & Smith, R.R. (1965) Snuff dip-
pers' intraoral cancer: Clinical characteristics and response to therapy. *Cancer*, 18,
2-13
- Browne, R.M., Camsey, M.C., Waterhouse, J.A.H. & Manning, G.L. (1977) Etiological factors
in oral squamous cell carcinoma. *Commun. Dent. oral Epidemiol.*, 5, 301-306
- Brunnemann, K.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1981) Assessment of carcinogenic N-nitrosodiethanol-
amine in tobacco products and tobacco smoke. *Carcinogenesis*, 2, 1123-1127
- Brunnemann, K.D., Scott, J.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1982) N-Nitrosomorpholine and other vola-
tile N-nitrosamines in snuff tobacco. *Carcinogenesis*, 3, 693-696
- Brunnemann, K.D., Scott, J.C. & Hoffmann, D. (1983) N-Nitrosoproline an indicator for
N-nitrosation of amines in processed tobacco. *J. agric. Food Chem.*, 31, 905-909
- Campbell, J.M. & Lindsey, A.J. (1956) Polycyclic hydrocarbons extracted from tobacco: The
effect upon total quantities found in smoking. *Br. J. Cancer*, 10, 649-652
- Campbell, J.M. & Lindsey, A.J. (1957) Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in snuff. *Chem. Ind.*,
6 July, p. 951
- Chakravarti, S.H., Dhiman, J. & Nagpaul, K.K. (1981) Uranium trace analysis of a chewable
betel-leaf preparation and tea leaves. *Health Phys.*, 40, 78-81
- Chandra, A. (1962) Different habits and their relation with cancer cheek. *Chittaranjan Can-
cer Hosp. Calcutta natl Cancer Res. Centre Bull.*, 33-36
- Chopra, N.M., Verma, M.M. & Zuniga, T.H. (1982) On the fate of maleic hydrazide in tobacco
smoke. *J. agric. Food Chem.*, 30, 672-676
- Chortyk, O.T., Severson, R.F. & Higman, H.C. (1975) Chromatographic determination of
hydrocarbon waxes in tobacco leaf and smoke. *Beitr. Tabakforsch.*, 8, 204-210
- Christen, A.G. (1980a) The case against smokeless tobacco: Five facts for the health pro-
fessional to consider. *J. Am. dent. Assoc.*, 101, 464-469
- Christen, A.G. (1980b) Tobacco chewing and snuff dipping. *New Engl. J. Med.*, 302, 818
- Christen, A.G. & Glover, E.D. (1981) Smokeless tobacco: Seduction of youth. *World
Smoking Health*, 6, 20-24
- Christen, A.G., McDaniel, R.K. & Doran, J.E. (1979a) Snuff dipping and tobacco chewing in
a group of Texas college athletes. *Texas dent. J.*, 97, 6-10
- Christen, A.G., Armstrong, W.R. & McDaniel, R.K. (1979b) Intraoral leukoplakia, abrasion,
periodontal breakdown, and tooth loss in a snuff dipper. *J. Am. dent. Assoc.*, 98,
584-586
- Christen, A.G., Swanson, B.Z., Glover, E.D. & Henderson, A.H. (1982) Smokeless tobacco:
The folklore and social history of snuffing, sneezing, dipping, and chewing. *J. Am. dent.
Assoc.*, 105, 821-829

- Cogbill, E.C. & Hobbs, M.E. (1967) Transfer of metallic constituents of cigarettes to the main-stream smoke. *Tobacco Sci.*, 1, 68-73
- Cole, P., Monson, R.R., Haning, H. & Friedell, G.H. (1971) Smoking and cancer of the lower urinary tract. *New Engl. J. Med.*, 284, 129-134
- Coleman, C.C., Jr (1965) Surgical treatment of extensive cancers of the mouth and pharynx. *Ann. Surg.*, 161, 634-644
- Cooper, R.L. & Campbell, J.M. (1955) The aetiology of respiratory tract cancer in the South African Bantu. Part II. Chemical identification of carcinogens. *Br. J. Cancer*, 9, 533-538
- Crowe, M.W. (1978) *Tobacco — A cause of congenital arthrogryposis*. In: Keeler, R.F., Van Kampen, K.R. & James, L.F., eds, *Effects of Poisonous Plants on Livestock*, New York, Academic Press, pp. 419-427
- Curtis, M.M. (1935) *The Book of Snuff and Snuff Boxes*, New York, Bramhall House, pp. 20-27, 67
- Davis, D.L. (1976) Waxes and lipids in leaf and their relationship to smoking quality and aroma. *Rec. Adv. Tobacco Sci.*, 2, 80-111
- Davis, D.L., Song, B.H. & Weeks, W.W. (1981) *Chemical composition of dark air-cured and fire-cured tobacco*. In: *35th Tobacco Chemists Research Conference, Winston Salem, NC, USA, October 7-9, 1981*, p. 48
- Demole, E. & Enggist, P. (1976) A chemical study of *Virginia* tobacco flavour (*Nicotiana tabacum* L.) 1. Isolation and synthesis of two bicyclodamascenones. *Helv. chim. Acta*, 59, 1938-1943
- Doll, R., Muir, C. & Waterhouse, J., eds (1970) *Cancer Incidence in Five Continents*, Vol. II, New York, Springer-Verlag, p. 354
- Dube, M.F. & Green, C.R. (1982) Methods of collection of smoke for analytical purposes. *Rec. Adv. Tobacco Sci.*, 8, 42-102
- Dunham, L.J. & Herrold, K.M. (1962) Failure to produce tumors in the hamster cheek pouch by exposure to ingredients of betel quid; histopathologic changes in the pouch and other organs by exposure to known carcinogens. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 29, 1047-1067
- Dunham, L.J., Muir, C.S. & Hamner, J.E., III (1966) Epithelial atypia in hamster cheek pouches treated repeatedly with calcium hydroxide. *Br. J. Cancer*, 20, 588-593
- Dunham, L.J., Sheets, R.H. & Morton, J.F. (1974) Proliferative lesions in cheek pouch and esophagus of hamsters treated with plants from Curacao, Netherland Antilles. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 53, 1259-1269
- Dunham, L.J., Snell, K.C. & Stewart, H.L. (1975) Argyrophilic carcinoids in two Syrian hamsters (*Mesocricetus auratus*). *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 54, 507-513

- cigarettes to the
- er of the lower
- and pharynx.
- cancer in the
- Br. J. Cancer*,
- eler, R.F., Van
- ock, New York,
- amhall House,
- g quality and
- air-cured and
- inston Salem,
- our (*Nicotiana*
- Helv. chim.*
- nents, Vol. II,
- cal purposes.
- cheek pouch
- e pouch and
- , 1047-1067
- mster cheek
- 8-593
- < pouch and
- tilles. *J. natl*
- Syrian ham-
- Dunn, W.I. & Dykstra, C.L. (1967) Tobacco habits in carcinoma of the upper respiratory tract. *Arch. Otolaryngol.*, 86, 105-107
- Dunn, W.I. & Farrior, R.T. (1962) Tobacco habits in oral and upper respiratory carcinoma: A review of 112 cases. *Arch. Otolaryngol.*, 75, 245-247
- Engzell, U., Englund, A. & Westerholm, P. (1978) Nasal cancer associated with occupational exposure to organic dust. *Acta otolaryngol.*, 86, 437-442
- Enzell, C.R. & Wahlberg, I. (1980) Leaf composition in relation to smoking quality and aroma. *Rec. Adv. Tobacco Sci.*, 6, 64-122
- Enzell, C.R., Wahlberg, I. & Aasen, A.J. (1977) *Isoprenoids and alkaloids of tobacco*. In: Herz, W., Grisebach, H. & Kirby, G.W., eds, *Progress in Chemistry of Organic Natural Products*, Vol. 34, Vienna, Springer-Verlag, pp. 1-79
- Everette, G. (1958) *Harvesting, Curing and Preparing Dark-Fired Tobacco for Market*, Lexington, KY, University of Kentucky
- Fonts, E.A., Greenlaw, R.H., Rush, B.F. & Rovin, S. (1969) Verrucous squamous cell carcinoma of the oral cavity. *Cancer*, 23, 152-160
- Friedell, H.L. & Rosenthal, L.M. (1941) The etiologic role of chewing tobacco in cancer of the mouth. *J. Am. med. Assoc.*, 116, 2130-2135
- Frithiof, L., Anneroth, G., Lasson, U. & Sederholm, C. (1983) The snuff-induced lesion. A clinical and morphological study of a Swedish material. *Acta odontol. scand.*, 1, 53-64
- Gaede, D. (1941) Nicotine absorption from chewing tobacco (Ger.). *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pathol. Pharmacol.*, 197, 72-77
- Garner, W.W. (1951) *The Production of Tobacco*, New York, The Blakiston Company, pp. 477-478
- Gennaro, A.R., Nora, A.H., Nora, J.J., Stander, R.W. & Weiss, L., eds (1979) *Blakiston's Gould Medical Dictionary*, 4th ed., New York, McGraw-Hill, p. 760
- Glover, E.D., Steven, W.E. & Christen, A.G. (1983) *Smokeless tobacco: A merging concern*. In: *Proc. 5th World Conference on Smoking and Health, Winnipeg, Canada, July 10-15*, pp. 60-61
- Goethals, P.L., Harrison, E.G., Jr & Devine, K.D. (1963) Verrucous squamous carcinoma of the oral cavity. *Am. J. Surg.*, 106, 845-851
- Goodman, A., Goodman, L.S. & Gilman, A., eds (1980) *Goodman and Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*, 6th ed., New York, McMillan
- Gothoskar, S.V., Sant, S.M. & Ranadive, K.J. (1975) Effect of tobacco and lime on oral mucosa of rats fed on vitamin B deficient diet. *Indian J. Cancer*, 12, 424-429
- Gottsegen, J.J. (1940) *Tobacco. A Study of Its Consumption in the United States*, New York, Pitman, p. 3

- Greer, R.O., Jr & Poulson, T.C. (1983) Oral tissue alterations associated with the use of smokeless tobacco by teen-agers. Part I. Clinical findings. *Oral Surg.*, **56**, 275-284
- Gritz, E.R., Baer-Weiss, V., Benowitz, N.L., Van Vunakis, H. & Jarvik, M.E. (1981) Plasma nicotine and cotinine concentrations in habitual smokeless tobacco users. *Clin. Pharmacol. Ther.*, **30**, 201-209
- Guthrie, F.E. & Bowery, T.G. (1967) Pesticide residues on tobacco. *Res. Rev.*, **19**, 31-56
- Hamazaki, Y. & Murao, T. (1969) On the carcinogenic factors of tobacco leaf powder. I. Inhalation of tobacco leaf powder. *J. Karyopathol. Esp. Tumor Tumovirus*, **12**, 163-178
- Harley, N.H., Cohen, B.S. & Tso, T.C. (1980) Polonium-210: A questionable risk factor in smoking-related carcinogenesis. In: Gori, G.B. & Bock, F.G., eds, *A Safe Cigarette?* (Banbury Report No. 3), Cold Spring Harbor, NY, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, pp. 93-104
- Harrison, D.F.N. (1964) Snuff - Its use and abuse. *Br. med. J.*, **ii**, 1649-1651
- Hartge, P., Hoover, R. & Kantor, A. (1985) Bladder cancer risk and pipes, cigars, and smokeless tobacco. *Cancer*, **55**, 901-906
- Hartselle, M.L. (1977) Oral carcinoma as related to the use of tobacco. *Alabama J. med. Sci.*, **14**, 188-194
- Häusermann, M. & Waltz, P. (1962) Quick spectrometric method for determination of chlorogenic acid and rutin in tobacco (Ger.). *Beitr. Tabakforsch.*, **1**, 275-284
- Hecht, S.S., Castonguay, A., Rivenson, A., Mu, B. & Hoffmann, D. (1983) Tobacco specific nitrosamines: Carcinogenicity, metabolism and possible role in human cancer. *J. environ. Sci. Health*, **1**, 1-54
- Heimann, R.K. (1960) *Tobacco and Americans*, New York, McGraw-Hill, pp. 8, 65, 118-119, 236
- Heuch, I., Kvåle, G., Jacobsen, B.K. & Bjelke, E. (1983) Use of alcohol, tobacco and coffee, and risk of pancreatic cancer. *Br. J. Cancer*, **48**, 637-643
- Hibell, B. & Jonsson, E. (1982) *A Study of School Children's Alcohol, Narcotics, Tobacco and Chewing Habits in Spring 1981*, Stockholm, Swedish Board of School Education
- Higginson, J. & Oettlé, A.G. (1960) Cancer incidence in the Bantu and 'Cape Colored' races of South Africa: Report of a cancer survey in the Transvaal (1953-55). *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, **24**, 589-671
- Higman, H.C., Severson, R.F., Chortyk, O.T. & Arrendale, R.F. (1979) Pyrolytic evaluation of close-grown tobaccos. *Beitr. Tabakforsch. int.*, **10**, 65-72
- Hirsch, J.-M. (1983) *Snuff-induced Lesions. A Clinical and Experimental Study*, Thesis, University of Göteborg

- Hirsch, J.-M. & Johansson, S.L. (1983) Effect of long-term application of snuff on the oral mucosa — An experimental study in the rat. *J. oral Pathol.*, 12, 187-198
- Hirsch, J.-M. & Thilander, H. (1981) Snuff-induced lesions of the oral mucosa — An experimental model in the rat. *J. oral Pathol.*, 10, 342-353
- Hirsch, J.-M., Heyden, G. & Thilander, H. (1982) A clinical, histomorphological and histochemical study of snuff-induced lesions of varying severity. *J. oral Pathol.*, 11, 387-398
- Hirsch, J.-M., Johansson, S.L. & Vahne, A. (1984a) Effect of snuff and herpes simplex virus-1 on rat oral mucosa: Possible association with development of squamous cell carcinoma. *J. oral Pathol.*, 13, 52-62
- Hirsch, J.-M., Svennerholm, B. & Vahne, A. (1984b) Inhibition of herpes simplex virus replication by tobacco extracts. *Cancer Res.*, 44, 1991-1997
- Hoffmann, D. & Adams, J.D. (1981) Carcinogenic tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in snuff and in the saliva of snuff dippers. *Cancer Res.*, 41, 4305-4308
- Hoffmann, D. & Hecht, S.S. (1985) Nicotine-derived N-nitrosamines and tobacco-related cancer: Current status and future directions. *Cancer Res.*, 45, 935-944
- Hoffmann, D. & Woziwodzki, H. (1968) Chemical studies in tobacco smoke. IV. Quantitative determination of free nonvolatile fatty acids in tobacco and tobacco smoke. *Beitr. Tabakforsch.*, 4, 167-175
- Hoffmann, D., Adams, J.D., Brunnemann, K.D., Rivenson, A. & Hecht, S.S. (1982) Tobacco specific N-nitrosamines: Occurrence and bioassays. In: Bartsch, H., Castegnaro, M., O'Neill, I.K., & Okada, M., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Occurrence and Biological Effects* (IARC Scientific Publications No. 41), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 309-318
- Hoffmann, D., Brunnemann, K.D., Adams, J.D. & Hecht, S.S. (1984) Formation and analysis of N-nitrosamines in tobacco products and their endogenous formation in consumers. In: O'Neill, I.K., von Borstel, R.C., Miller, C.T., Long, J. & Bartsch, H., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Occurrence, Biological Effects and Relevance to Human Cancer* (IARC Scientific Publications No. 57), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 743-762
- Holleb, A.I., ed. (1984) Smokeless tobacco and oral cancer: A cause for concern? *Can. Cancer J. Clin.*, 34, 247
- Homburger, F. (1971) Mechanical irritation, polycyclic hydrocarbons, and snuff. Effects on facial skin, cheek pouch, and oral mucosa in Syrian hamsters. *Arch. Pathol.*, 91, 411-417
- Homburger, F., Hsueh, S.-S., Russfield, A.B., Laird, C.W. & Van Dongen, C.G. (1976) Absence of carcinogenic effects of chronic feeding of snuff in inbred Syrian hamsters. *Toxicol. appl. Pharmacol.*, 35, 515-521
- Hou-Jensen, K. (1964) On the occurrence of post nasal space tumours in Kenya. *Br. J. Cancer*, 18, 58-68

- Howe, G.R., Burch, J.D., Miller, A.B., Cook, G.M., Esteve, J., Morrison, B., Gordon, P., Chambers, L.W., Fodor, G. & Winsor, G.M. (1980) Tobacco use, occupation, coffee, various nutrients, and bladder cancer. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 64, 701-713
- Hunter, S.M., Webber, L.S. & Berenson, G.S. (1980) Cigarette smoking and tobacco usage behavior in children and adolescents: Bogalusa Heart Study. *Prev. Med.*, 9, 701-712
- IARC (1973) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Man*, Vol. 2, *Some Inorganic and Organometallic Compounds*, Lyon, p. 80
- IARC (1976) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Man*, Vol. 11, *Cadmium, Nickel, Some Epoxides, Miscellaneous Industrial Chemicals and General Considerations on Volatile Anaesthetics*, Lyon, pp. 39-74, 75-112
- IARC (1980) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, Vol. 22, *Some Non-nutritive Sweetening Agents*
- IARC (1981) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, Vol. 25, *Wood, Leather and Some Associated Industries*, Lyon, pp. 99-138
- IARC (1982) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, Suppl. 4, *Chemicals, Industrial Processes and Industries Associated with Cancer in Humans (IARC Monographs Volumes 1 to 29)*, Lyon, pp. 167-170
- IARC (1983a) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, Vol. 32, *Polynuclear Aromatic Compounds. Part 1. Chemical, Environmental and Experimental Data*, Lyon, pp. 37-38
- IARC (1983b) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, Vol. 31, *Some Food Additives, Feed Additives and Naturally Occurring Substances*, Lyon, pp. 213-229
- IARC (1985) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, Vol. 36, *Allyl Compounds, Aldehydes, Epoxides and Peroxides*, Lyon, pp. 75-97
- International Trade Centre (1968) *The Major Markets for Unmanufactured Tobacco (ITC Publ. SF-43)*, Geneva, pp. 72-76, 548-549
- Jafarey, N.A., Mahmood, Z. & Zaidi, S.H.M. (1977) Habits and dietary pattern of cases of carcinoma of the oral cavity and oropharynx. *J. Pakistan med. Assoc.*, 27, 340-343
- Jarboe, C.H. & Quinn, A.D. (1960) Low temperature column chromatography of tobacco acids. *Tobacco Sci.*, 4, 168-171
- Joint Iran-International Agency for Research on Cancer Study Group (1977) Esophageal cancer studies in the Caspian littoral of Iran: Results of population studies. A prodrome. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 59, 1127-1138
- Jussawalla, D.J. & Deshpande, V.A. (1971) Evaluation of cancer risk in tobacco chewers and smokers: An epidemiologic assessment. *Cancer*, 28, 244-252

- Gordon, P.,
pation, coffee,
tobacco usage
1., 9, 701-712
nicals to Man,
nicals to Man,
hemicals and
2
Chemicals to
Chemicals to
pp. 99-138
of Chemicals
sociated with
70
Chemicals to
nvironmental
Chemicals to
curing Sub-
of Chemicals
xides, Lyon,
tobacco (ITC
of cases of
340-343
of tobacco
ageal can-
prodrome.
ewers and
- Kaburaki, Y. & Sato, Y. (1962) Volatile acids in Shibori-chu tobacco leaf. *Sci. Papers Central Res. Inst. Jpn. Monopoly Corp.*, 105, 285-286
- Kaburaki, Y., Mikami, Y. & Nakamura, M. (1969) Studies on the composition of tobacco smoke. XIII. Volatile acids in tobacco smoke. *Sci. Papers Central Res. Inst. Jpn. Monopoly Corp.*, 111, 159-168
- Kandarkar, S.V., Hasgekar, N.N. & Sirsat, S.M. (1981) Optical and ultrastructural pathology of vitamin A pretreated hamster cheek pouch exposed to lime ($\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$) and tobacco over total life span. *Neoplasia*, 28, 729-737
- Keeler, R.F. (1979) Congenital defects in calves from maternal ingestion of *Nicotiana glauca* of high anabasine content. *Clin. Toxicol.*, 15, 417-426
- Keeler, R.F., Crowe, M.W. & Lambert, E.A. (1984) Teratogenicity in swine of the tobacco alkaloid anabasine isolated from *Nicotiana glauca*. *Teratology*, 30, 61-69
- Keen, P., De Moor, N.G., Shapiro, M.P. & Cohen, L. (1955) The aetiology of respiratory tract cancer in the South African Bantu. Part I. Clinical aspects. *Br. J. Cancer*, 9, 528-533
- Khasanov, T.K. (1965) *Cancer of the oral mucosa in relation to use of nass*. In: *Problems of Geographic Pathology of Oropharyngeal Tumours*, Alma-Ata, Kazakhstan Publishing House, pp. 84-87
- Khasanov, T.K. & Fasiev, K.T. (1970) *Epidemiological study of oral precancer in the Bukhara region of Uzbekistan*. In: *Epidemiology of Malignant Tumours*, Alma-Ata, Nauka Publishing House, pp. 236-238
- ben Khedher, A., Bouacha, H., Azzouz, L., Bourguiba, M., Ghezal, S., Hlioui, R., Milli, F. & El Mekki, L. (1984) *Chronic bronchitis in adults in hospitals (3-year study)* (Fr.). In: El Gharbi, T., ed., *Proceedings of the XIIIth Congres Medical Maghrebin, Alger — Chronic Bronchitis in Tunisia*, Ariana-Tunis, Institut A. Mamo de Pneumophtisiologie, pp. 39-54
- Kiseleva, N.S., Milievskaia, I.L. & Čaklin, A.V. (1976) Development of tumours in Syrian hamsters during prolonged experimental exposure to nas. *Bull. World Health Organ.*, 54, 597-605
- Kozlowski, L.T. (1981) The determinants of tobacco use: Cigarette smoking in the context of other forms of tobacco use. *Can. J. publ. Health*, 72, 396-401
- Kraus, F.T. & Perez-Mesa, C. (1966) Verrucous carcinoma: Clinical and pathologic study of 105 cases involving oral cavity, larynx and genitalia. *Cancer*, 19, 26-38
- Krishna, K. (1978) Tobacco chewing in pregnancy. *Br. J. Obstet. Gynaecol.*, 85, 726-728
- Landauer, W. (1960) Nicotine-induced malformations of chicken embryos and their bearing on the phenocopy problem. *J. exp. Zool.*, 143, 107-122
- Landy, J.J. & White, H.J. (1961) Buccogingival carcinoma of snuff dippers. *Am. Surg.*, 27, 442-447

- Leffall, L.D., Jr & White, J.E. (1965) Cancer of the oral cavity in Negroes. *Surg. Gynecol. Obstet.*, 120, 70-72
- Lindemeyer, R.G., Baum, R.H., Hsu, S.C. & Going, R.E. (1981) In vitro effect of tobacco on the growth of oral cariogenic streptococci. *J. Am. dent. Assoc.*, 103, 719-722
- Lipp, G. (1965) Selective action of cigarette filters on nicotine and phenol as well as of tobacco type (Ger.). *Beitr. Tabakforsch.*, 3, 109-127
- Liu, Y.-Y. & Hoffmann, D. (1973) Quantitative chromatographic determination of maleic hydrazide in cigarette smoke. *Anal. Chem.*, 45, 2270-2273
- Loewe, W. (1981) *Snuff in Gothenburg* (Swed.). In: *Svenska Tobaks AB 1981*, Stockholm, pp. 19-22
- Lyon, H., Poulsen, H.E. & Pindborg, J.J. (1964) Studies in oral leukoplakias. 6. Deposits of amyloid in the oral submucosa induced by prolonged use of snuff. *Acta pathol. microbiol. scand.*, 60, 305-310
- Malej, M., Bouacha, H., Ben Khedher, A., Ben Miled, H.T., Nacef, T. & El Gharbi, B. (1984) *Epidemiological aspect of chronic bronchitis in Tunisia (Inquiry in different professional areas)* (Fr.). In: El Gharbi, T., ed., *Proceedings of the XIIIth Congress Medical Maghrebin, Alger - Chronic Bronchitis in Tunisia*, Ariana-Tunis, Institut A. Mami de Pneumophtisiologie, pp. 14-16
- Martinez, I. (1969) Factors associated with cancer of the esophagus, mouth, and pharynx in Puerto Rico. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 42, 1069-1094
- Maxwell, J.C., Jr (1980) Chewing, snuff is growth segment. *Tobacco Rep.*, 107, 32-35
- Maxwell, J.C., Jr (1982) The smokeless tobacco industry in 1982. *Tobacco int.*, 184, 118, 122, 125, 127
- Maxwell, J.C., Jr (1984) Smokeless tobacco market leveling out in the US. *Tobacco Rep.*, 111, 66, 68
- McGuirt, W.F. (1983a) Snuff dipper's carcinoma. *Arch. Otolaryngol.*, 109, 757-760
- McGuirt, W.F. (1983b) Head and neck cancer in women — A changing profile. *Laryngoscope*, 93, 106-107
- Mehta, F.J. & Pindborg, J.J. (1968) *Assignment Report on the Need for a Survey on Oral Pre-cancerous Conditions in Afghanistan; Cancer Studies (Oropharyngeal Cancer)* (WHO Project: Afghanistan 0069), Geneva, World Health Organization
- Mehta, F.S., Pindborg, J.J., Hamner, J.E., Gupta, P.C., Daftary, D.K., Sahiar, B.E., Shroff, B.C., Sanghvi, L.D., Bhonsle, R.B., Choksi, S.K., Dandekar, V.V., Mehta, Y.N., Pitkar, V.K., Sinor, P.N., Shah, N.C., Turner, P.S. & Upadhyay, S.A., eds (1971) *Report on Investigations of Oral Cancer and Precancerous Conditions in Indian Rural Populations, 1966-1969*, Copenhagen, Munksgaard, pp. 48, 107

- Surg. Gynecol.*
- of tobacco on
19-722
- as well as of
- of maleic hydra-
- 81, Stockholm,
6. Deposits of
pathol. micro-
- arbi, B. (1984)
ent professio-
Medical Mag-
lami de Pneu-
- and pharynx in
- 7, 32-35
- nt., 184, 118.
- tobacco Rep.,
- 760
- file. Laryngo-
- a Survey on
geal Cancer)
- B.E., Shroff,
Y.N., Pitkar,
) Report on
ural Popula-
- Mehta, F.S., Gupta, P.C., Daftary, D.K., Pindborg, J.J. & Choksi, S.K. (1972) An epidemiologic study of oral cancer and precancerous conditions among 101,761 villagers in Maharashtra, India. *Int. J. Cancer*, 10, 134-141
- ben Miled, M.T., Tanabene, A., Maalej, M., Chebbi, M.L., Zakhama, B. & El Gharbi, T. (1984) *Chronic bronchopathies in rural women in Tunisia* (Fr.). In: El Gharbi, T., ed., *Proceedings of the XIIIth Congres Medical Maghrebin, Alger — Chronic Bronchitis in Tunisia*, Ariana-Tunis, Institut A. Mami de Pneumophthysiologie, pp. 17-27
- Milievskaja, I.L. & Kiseleva, N.S. (1976) Comparative study of the carcinogenic activities of nas and some chemical carcinogens when introduced into the buccal pouch of the Syrian hamster. *Bull. World Health Organ.*, 54, 607-614
- Millar, W.J. & van Rensberg, S. (1984) Use of chewing tobacco and snuff by students in the Northwest Territories, 1982. *Chron. Dis. Canada*, 4, 54-56
- Modéer, T., Lavstedt, S. & Ahlund, C. (1980) Relation between tobacco consumption and oral health in Swedish schoolchildren. *Acta odontol. scand.*, 38, 223-227
- Mody, J.K. & Ranadive, K.J. (1959) Biological study of tobacco in relation to oral cancer. *Indian J. med. Sci.*, 13, 1023-1037
- Moertel, C.G. & Foss, E.L. (1958) Multicentric carcinoma of the oral cavity. *Surg. Gynecol. Obstet.*, 106, 652-654
- Mold, J.D., Stevens, R.K., Means, R.E. & Ruth, J.M. (1963) The paraffin hydrocarbons of tobacco; Normal, iso- and anteiso-homologs. *Biochemistry*, 2, 605-610
- Moore, G.E., Bissinger, L.L. & Proehl, E.C. (1952) Tobacco and intra-oral cancer. *Surg. Forum*, 3, 685-688
- Moore, G.E., Bissinger, L.L. & Proehl, E.C. (1953) Intraoral cancer and the use of chewing tobacco. *J. Am. geriatr. Soc.*, 1, 497-506
- Murdia, U.S., Mehta, F.J. & Bhide, S.V. (1982) Nitrate reductase activity and nitrite levels in the saliva of habitual users of various tobacco products. *Food Chem. Toxicol.*, 20, 269-271
- Nair, J., Ohshima, H., Friesen, M., Croisy, A., Bhide, S.V. & Bartsch, H. (1985) Tobacco-specific and betel-nut-specific N-nitroso compounds: Occurrence in saliva and urine of betel quid chewers and formation *in vitro* by nitrosation of betel quid. *Carcinogenesis*, 6, 295-303
- National Academy of Sciences (1975) *Medical and Biologic Effects of Environmental Pollutants — Nickel*, Washington DC, National Academy Press, pp. 178-183
- National Research Council (1981) *The Health Effects of Nitrate, Nitrite and N-Nitroso Compounds*, Assembly of Life Sciences, National Academy of Sciences, Washington DC, National Academy Press, pp. 7-35, 7-36
- Newman, I.M. & Duryea, E.J. (1981) Adolescent cigarette smoking and tobacco chewing in Nebraska. *Nebraska med. J.*, 66, 243-244

- Nicolaus, G. & Elmenhorst, H. (1982) Qualitative and quantitative detection of alkyl-naphthalenes in Latakia tobacco (Ger.). *Beitr. Tabakforsch.*, 11, 133-140
- Nishimura, H. & Nakai, K. (1958) Developmental anomalies in offspring of pregnant mice treated with nicotine. *Science*, 127, 877-878
- Nugmanov, S.N. & Baimakanov, S.S. (1970) *The result of an epidemiological study of oropharyngeal tumours in Kazakhstan following the WHO project* (Russ.). In: *Epidemiology of Malignant Tumours*, Alma-Ata, Nauka Publishing House, pp. 227-231.
- Onishi, I., Nagasawa, M., Tomita, H. & Fukuzumi, T. (1957) Studies on the essential oils of tobacco leaves. Part XVI. Neutral fraction. (3). Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons of Burley tobacco leaf. *Bull. agric. Chem. Soc. Jpn*, 22, 17-20
- Österdahl, B.-G. & Slorach, S.A. (1983) Volatile N-nitrosamines in snuff and chewing tobacco on the Swedish market. *Food Chem. Toxicol.*, 21, 759-762
- Paches, A.I. & Djuliev, S.S. (1965) *Pathological changes in the oral mucosa in relation to the use of nass in Tadzhikistan* (Russ.). In: *Problems of Geographic Pathology of Oropharyngeal Tumours*, Alma-Ata, 'Kazakhstan' Publishing House, pp. 101-106
- Paches, A.I. & Milievskaya, I.L. (1980) *Epidemiological study of cancer of the mucous membrane of the oral cavity in the USSR*. In: Levin, D.L., ed., *Cancer Epidemiology in the USA & USSR* (NIH Publ. No. 80-2044), Washington DC, US Department of Health and Human Services, pp. 177-184
- Peacock, E.E., Jr & Brawley, B.W. (1959) An evaluation of snuff and tobacco in the production of mouth cancer. *Plast. reconstr. Surg.*, 23, 628-635
- Peacock, E.E., Jr, Greenberg, B.G. & Brawley, B.W. (1960) The effect of snuff and tobacco on the production of oral carcinoma: An experimental and epidemiological study. *Ann. Surg.*, 151, 542-550
- Penn, W.A. (1901) *The Sovereign Herbe. A History of Tobacco*, London, Grant Richards, pp. 259-277
- Perinelli, M.A. & Carugno, N. (1978) Determination of trace metals in cigarette smoke by flameless atomic absorption spectrometry. *Beitr. Tabakforsch. int.*, 9, 214-217
- Piade, J.J. & Hoffmann, D. (1980) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXVII. Quantitative determination of alkaloids in tobacco by liquid chromatography. *J. liq. Chromatogr.*, 3, 1505-1515
- Pindborg, J.J. (1972) Is submucous fibrosis a precancerous condition in the oral cavity? *Int. dent. J.*, 22, 474-480
- Pindborg, J.J. & Axelsen, N.H. (1980) New age for non-smoked tobacco. *Lancet*, i, 775
- Pindborg, J.J. & Poulsen, H.E. (1962) Studies in oral leukoplakias. I. The influence of snuff upon the connective tissue of the oral mucosa. Preliminary report. *Acta pathol. microbiol. scand.*, 55, 412-414

- linaphtha-
nant mice
ty of oro-
Epidemiol-
ential oils
arbons of
tobacco
on to the
Orophal-
us mem-
gy in the
alth and
produc-
tobacco
dy. Ann.
ichards,
y flame-
titative
ogr., 3,
ty? Int.
75
f snuff
micro-
- Pindborg, J.J. & Renstrup, G. (1963) Studies in oral leukoplakias. II. Effect of snuff on oral epithelium. *Acta dermatol.-venereol.*, 43, 271-276
- Pindborg, J.J., Kiaer, J., Gupta, P.C. & Chawla, T.N. (1967) Studies in oral leukoplakias. Prevalence of leukoplakia among 10 000 persons in Lucknow, India, with special reference to use of tobacco and betel nut. *Bull. World Health Organ.*, 37, 109-116
- Pindborg, J.J., Mehta, F.S., Daftary, D.K., Gupta, P.C. & Bhonsle, R.B. (1972) Prevalence of oral lichen planus among 7 639 Indian villages in Kerala, South India. *Acta dermatol.-venereol.*, 52, 216-220
- Pindborg, J.J., Mehta, F.S. & Daftary, D.K. (1975) Incidence of oral cancer among 30,000 villagers in India in a 7-year follow-up study of oral precancerous lesions. *Commun. Dent. oral Epidemiol.*, 3, 86-88
- Pindborg, J.J., Reibel, J., Roed-Petersen, B. & Mehta, F.S. (1980) Tobacco-induced changes in oral leukoplakic epithelium. *Cancer*, 45, 2330-2336
- Pöschl, A. (1980) The international importance of snuff. *Tabak-J. int.*, 6, 490-491
- Pöschl, A. (1983) Manufacture of snuff. *Tabak-J. int.*, 6, 539-540
- Pottern, L.M., Morris, L.E., Blot, W.J., Ziegler, R.G. & Fraumeni, J.F., Jr (1981) Esophageal cancer among black men in Washington, D.C. I. Alcohol, tobacco, and other risk factors. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 67, 777-783
- Radford, E.P., Jr & Hunt, V.R. (1964) Polonium-210: A volatile radioelement in cigarettes. *Science*, 143, 247-249
- Rahmatian, H., Modjtabai, A., Zakarian, B. & Zarrine, K. (1965) Experimental carcinoma of esophagus. Effect of nass in the squamous epithelium of esophagus in rats and mice. *Acta med. iran.*, 8, 1-18
- Ranadive, K.J., Gothoskar, S.V. & Khanolkar, V.R. (1963) Experimental studies on the etiology of cancer types specific to India. a) Oral cancer; b) Kangri cancer. *Acta unio int. contra cancrum*, 19, 634-639
- Ranadive, K.J., Gothoskar, S.V., Rao, A.R., Tezabwalla, B.U. & Ambaye, R.Y. (1976) Experimental studies on betel nut and tobacco carcinogenicity. *Int. J. Cancer*, 17, 469-476
- Randeria, J.D. (1972) Tobacco induced changes in the bladder, buccal and vaginal mucosae. *Indian J. med. Res.*, 60, 694-698
- Rao, A.R. (1984) Modifying influences of betel quid ingredients on B(a)P-induced carcinogenesis in the buccal pouch of hamster. *Int. J. Cancer*, 33, 581-586
- Redmond, D.E. (1970) Tobacco and cancer: The first clinical report, 1761. *New Engl. J. Med.*, 282, 18-23
- Reif, H. & Moser, F. (1977) A method for the determination of organochlorine and organophosphorus pesticide residues on tobacco. *Beitr. Tabakforsch.*, 9, 168-175

- Riebe, M. & Westphal, K. (1983) Studies on the induction of sister-chromatid exchanges in Chinese hamster ovary cells by various tobacco alkaloids. *Mutat. Res.*, **124**, 281-286
- Rizio, D. (1984) Smokeless tobacco. *Tabak-J. int.*, **2**, 183-184
- Roed-Petersen, B. & Pindborg, J.J. (1973) A study of Danish snuff-induced oral leukoplakias. *J. oral Pathol.*, **2**, 301-313
- Root, H.D., Aust, J.B. & Sullivan, A., Jr (1960) Snuff and cancer of the ear. *New Engl. J. Med.*, **262**, 819-820
- Rosenfeld, L. & Callaway, J. (1963) Snuff dipper's cancer. *Am. J. Surg.*, **106**, 840-844
- Rosenfeld, L. & Green, J. (1969) Carcinoma of the oral cavity. *J. Tennessee med. Assoc.*, **62**, 707-710
- Rowell, P.P. & Clark, M.J. (1982) The effect of chronic oral nicotine administration on fetal weight and placental amino acid accumulation in mice. *Toxicol. appl. Pharmacol.*, **79**, 30-38
- Rowland, R.L. & Roberts, D.L. (1963) Macrocyclic diterpenes isolated from tobacco, α - and β -4,8,13-duvatriene-1,5-diols. *J. org. Chem.*, **28**, 1165-1169
- Russell, M.A.H., Jarvis, M.J. & Feyerabend, C. (1980) A new age for snuff? *Lancet*, **i**, 474-475
- Ryan, P. (1980) Snuff? Snus? At least, an alternative to smoke. *Smithsonian*, **10**(11), 176
- Salem, G., Juhl, R. & Schjødt, T. (1984) Oral malignant and premalignant changes in 'sham-mah'-users from the Gizan region, Saudi Arabia. *Acta odontol. scand.*, **42**, 41-45
- Saparov, B.S. (1965) *Cancer of the mouth in the department of oncology of the republic hospital No. 1 of Turkmenian SSR* (Russ.). In: *Problems of Geographic Pathology of Oropharyngeal Tumours*, Alma-Ata, Kazakhstan Publishing House, pp. 99-101
- Saparov, B.S. (1970) *Cancer of the oral cavity in Turkmenii* (Russ.). In: *Epidemiology of Malignant Tumours*, Alma-Ata, Nauka Publishing House pp. 248-250
- Schmähl, D. (1965) Investigation of chewing tobacco extracts for carcinogenic effects in rats (Ger.). *Arzneimittelforschung*, **15**, 704-705
- Schmeltz, I. & Hoffmann, D. (1977) Nitrogen-containing compounds in tobacco and tobacco smoke. *Chem. Rev.*, **77**, 295-311
- Schmeltz, I., de Paolis, A. & Hoffmann, D. (1975) Phytosterols in tobacco: Quantitative analysis and fate in tobacco combustion. *Beitr. Tabakforsch.*, **8**, 211-218
- Schmeltz, I., Tosk, J. & Hoffmann, D. (1976) Formation and determination of naphthalenes in cigarette smoke. *Anal. Chem.*, **48**, 645-650
- Schuman, L.M. (1977) *Patterns of smoking behavior*. In: *Research on Smoking Behavior (NIDA Research Monograph No. 17)*, Washington DC, National Institute of Drug Abuse, pp. 36-66

- Schuman, L.M., Bjelke, E., Gibson, R.W. & Watt, G.D. (1982) *Cancer among chewers of snuff/tobacco: International cohort comparisons for Norway and the United States*. In: *Proceedings of the XIIIth International Cancer Congress, Seattle, Washington* (Abstract No. 1172), p. 207
- Severson, R.F., Arrendale, R.F., Chortyk, O.T. & Snook, M.E. (1978) A method for determining the transfer of lipids from tobacco to smoke. *Tobacco Sci.*, 22, 130-133
- Severson, R.F., McDuffie, K.L., Arrendale, R.F. & Chortyk, O.T. (1981) A modified method for the rapid analysis of long-chain alkanes and neophytadiene from tobacco. *Beitr. Tabakforsch.*, 11, 27-32
- Shanta, V. & Krishnamurthi, S. (1963) Further study in aetiology of carcinomas of the upper alimentary tract. *Br. J. Cancer*, 17, 8-23
- Shapiro, L. (1981) Warning: Chewing tobacco and snuff may be dangerous to your health. *Coal Age*, 86, 74-79
- Shapiro, M.P., Keen, P., Cohen, L. & de Moor, N.G. (1955) Malignant disease in the Transvaal. III. Cancer of the respiratory tract. *S. Afr. med. J.*, 29, 96-101
- Sharipov, R.K. (1965) *Oral cancer and use of nass*. In: *Problems of Geographic Pathology of Oropharyngeal Tumours*, Alma-Ata, Kazakhstan Publishing House, pp. 73-78
- Shelton, A. (1984) Smokeless tobacco: Moist snuff leads American market. *Tobacco Rep.*, July, pp. 30-31
- Shilovtsev, S.P. (1941) *Cancer of the Floor of the Mouth in Relation to Nass Smoking* (Russ.), Tashkent, Uzgasisdat
- Shirname, L.P., Menon, M.M. & Bhide, S.V. (1984) Mutagenicity of betel quid and its ingredients using mammalian test systems. *Carcinogenesis*, 5, 501-503
- Shmuk, A.A. (1953) *The Chemistry and Technology of Tobacco*, Vol. III, Moscow, Pishchepromizdat, p. 53
- Silverman, S., Jr, Gorsky, M. & Lozada, F. (1984) Oral leukoplakia and malignant transformation. A follow-up study of 257 patients. *Cancer*, 53, 563-568
- Simon, D.L. & Iglauer, A. (1960) The acute effect of chewing tobacco and smoking in habitual users. *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.*, 90, 119-132
- Sinha, R. (1984) *Development of chewing, hookah and wrapper tobacco in India*. In: *Proceedings of the 5th National Symposium on Tobacco*, pp. 29-33
- Sisson, V.A. & Severson, R.F. (1984) *Alkaloid composition of the Nicotiana species*. In: *38th Tobacco Chemists' Research Conference, Atlanta, GA, USA, November 5-8, 1984*, Abstract 24
- Smith, J.F. (1975) Snuff-dippers lesion. A ten-year follow-up. *Arch. Otolaryngol.*, 101, 276-277

- Smith, J.F., Mincer, H.A., Hopkins, K.P. & Bell, J. (1970) Snuff-dipper's lesion: A cytological and pathological study in a large population. *Arch. Otolaryngol.*, **92**, 450-456
- Smith, L.W., Bhargava, K., Mani, N.J., Malaowalla, A.M. & Silverman, S., Jr (1975) Oral cancer and precancerous lesions in 57,518 industrial workers of Gujarat, India. *Indian J. Cancer*, **12**, 118-123
- Snook, M.E., Fortson, P.J. & Chortyk, O.T. (1981) Isolation and identification of phenolic acids from tobacco leaf. *Beitr. Tabakforsch. int.*, **11**, 19-26
- Sobin, L.H. (1969) Cancer in Afghanistan. *Cancer*, **23**, 678-688
- Sorger, K. & Myrden, J.A. (1960) Verrucous carcinoma of the buccal mucosa in tobacco chewers. *Can. med. Assoc. J.*, **83**, 1413-1417
- Spears, A.W. & Jones, S.T. (1981) Chemical and physical criteria for tobacco leaf of modern day cigarettes. *Rec. Adv. Tobacco Sci.*, **7**, 19-39
- Stecker, R.H., Devine, K.D. & Harrison, E.G., Jr (1964) Verrucose 'snuff dipper's' carcinoma of the oral cavity. *J. Am. med. Assoc.*, **189**, 144-146
- Stedman, R.L. (1968) The chemical composition of tobacco and tobacco smoke. *Chem. Rev.*, **68**, 153-207
- Stewart, G.G. (1967) A history of the medicinal use of tobacco, 1492-1860. *Med. Hist.*, **11**, 228-268
- Stich, H.F. & Rosin, M.P. (1984) Micronuclei in exfoliated human cells as a tool for studies in cancer risk and cancer intervention. *Cancer Lett.*, **22**, 241-253
- Stich, H.F. & Stich, W. (1982) Chromosome-damaging activity of saliva of betel nut and tobacco chewers. *Cancer Lett.*, **15**, 193-202
- Stich, H.F., Curtis, J.R. & Parida, B.B. (1982) Application of the micronucleus test to exfoliated cells of high cancer risk groups: Tobacco chewers. *Int. J. Cancer*, **30**, 553-559
- Sundström, B., Mörnstad, H. & Axéll, T. (1982) Oral carcinomas associated with snuff dipping: Some clinical and histological characteristics of 23 tumours in Swedish males. *J. oral Pathol.*, **11**, 245-251
- Suri, K., Goldman, H.M. & Wells, H. (1971) Carcinogenic effect of a dimethyl sulphoxide extract of betel nut on the mucosa of the hamster buccal pouch. *Nature*, **230**, 383-384
- Svenska Tobaks Ab (1964) *Tobacco in Sweden. Celebration Publication 1915-64*, Stockholm
- Svenska Tobaks Ab (1973) *Statistics on Sales and Markets, Annual Book 1965-73*, Stockholm
- Swedish Tobacco Co. (1980) *Annual Report 1980*, Stockholm
- Swedish Tobacco Co. (1981) *Annual Report 1981*, Stockholm

Swedish Tobacco Co. (1982) *Annual Report 1982*, Stockholm

Swedish Tobacco Co. (1983) *Chart of the Consumption of Tobacco Products in Sweden from 1973-1982*, Stockholm

Temple, D.J. (1976) The absorption of nicotine from tobacco snuff through the nasal mucosa. *Arch. Pharm.*, 309, 984-987

Tobacco Institute (1981) *Tobacco Industry Profile 1981*, Washington DC

Tobacco Institute (1982) *Tobacco Industry Profile 1982*, Washington DC

Tobacco Institute (1983) *Tobacco Industry Profile 1983*, Washington DC

Tso, T.C. (1972) *Physiology and Biochemistry of Tobacco Plants*, Stroudsburg, PA, Dowden, Hutchinson & Ross, Inc., pp. 43-66, 92-99, 152-157, 170-171, 202-208, 259-273, 282-283

Tso, T.C., Chaplin, J.F., LeLachenr, K.E. & Sheets, T.J. (1980) Pesticide-treated vs. 'pesticide-free' tobacco. I. Tobacco production and leaf analysis. *Beitr. Tabakforsch. int.*, 10, 114-119

Tyldesley, W.R. (1971) Tobacco chewing in English coal miners. A preliminary report. *Br. J. oral Surg.*, 9, 21-28

Tyldesley, W.R. (1976) Tobacco chewing in English coalminers. 2. Malignant transformation in a tobacco-induced leukoplakia. *Br. J. oral Surg.*, 14, 93-94

Umezawa, K., Takayama, S., Fujie, S., Matsushima, T. & Sugimura, T. (1978) In vitro transformation of hamster embryo cells by betel tobacco extracts. *Toxicol. Lett.*, 2, 243-246

Umezawa, K., Fujie, S., Sawamura, M., Matsushima, T., Katoh, Y., Tanaka, M. & Takayama, S. (1981) Morphological transformation, sister chromatid exchange and mutagenesis assay of betel constituents. *Toxicol. Lett.*, 8, 17-22

Upshall, D.G. (1972) Correlation of chick embryo teratogenicity with nicotinic activity of a series of tetrahydropyrimidines. *Teratology*, 5, 287-293

US Department of Agriculture (1976) *Tobacco Situation (TS-155)*, Washington DC, US Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service, March, p. 2

US Department of Agriculture (1980) *Tobacco Situation (TS-171)*, Washington DC, US Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service, March, p. 5

US Department of Agriculture (1982) *Tobacco Outlook and Situation (TS-180, TS-181, TS-182)*, Washington DC, US Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service, June, pp. 2, 6, 7, 31, 32

US Department of Agriculture (1983) *Tobacco Outlook and Situation (TS-183)*, Washington DC, US Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service, March, pp. 5-8

US Department of Agriculture (1984a) *Production of Chewing Tobacco, Smoking Tobacco and Snuff*, Washington DC, Internal Revenue Service

- US Department of Agriculture (1984b) *Tobacco Outlook and Situation (TS-187)*, Washington DC, US Department of Agriculture, Economic Research Service, March, pp. 2, 3, 4, 28, 29
- US Department of Health, Education, and Welfare (1979) *Smoking and Health. A Report of the Surgeon General*, Washington DC, pp. 13-10, 13-39, 14-13, 14-30
- US Environmental Protection Agency (1981) Maleic hydrazide: Notification of issuances of notices of intent to suspend pesticide registrations. *Fed. Regist.*, 46 (No. 179), 45999-46000
- Van Duuren, B.L., Sivak, A., Segal, A., Orris, L. & Langseth, L. (1966) The tumor-promoting agents of tobacco leaf and tobacco smoke condensate. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 37, 519-526
- Vara, P. & Kinnunen, O. (1951) The effect of nicotine on the female rabbit and developing foetus. *Ann. med. exp. biol. fenn.*, 29, 202-213
- Verma, R.C., Chansoriya, M. & Kaul, K.K. (1983) Effect of tobacco chewing by mothers on fetal outcome. *Indian Pediatr.*, 20, 105-111
- Vincent, R.G. & Marchetta, F. (1963) The relationship of the use of tobacco and alcohol to cancer of the oral cavity, pharynx or larynx. *Am. J. Surg.*, 106, 501-505
- Voges, E. (1984) The pleasures of tobacco — How it all began and the whole story. *Tobacco J. int.*, 1, 80-82
- Vogler, W.R., Lloyd, J.W. & Milmore, B.K. (1962) A retrospective study of etiological factors in cancer of the mouth, pharynx, and larynx. *Cancer*, 15, 246-258
- Voss, R.C. & Nicol, H. (1960) Metallic trace elements in tobacco. *Lancet*, ii, 435-436
- Wahi, P.N. (1968) The epidemiology of oral and oropharyngeal cancer. A report of the study in Mainpuri district, Uttar Pradesh, India. *Bull. World Health Organ.*, 38, 495-521
- Wahi, P.N., Kehar, U. & Lahiri, B. (1965) Factors influencing oral and oropharyngeal cancers in India. *Br. J. Cancer*, 19, 642-660
- Wahi, P.N., Mital, V.P., Lahiri, B., Luthra, U.K., Seth, R.K. & Arora, G.D. (1970) Epidemiological study of precancerous lesions of the oral cavity: A preliminary report. *Indian J. med. Res.*, 58, 1361-1391
- Weather, D.R. & Offenbacher, S. (1983) Effects of smokeless tobacco on caries prevalence in adolescent males (Abstract No. 313). *J. dent. Res.*, 62, 684
- Westbrook, K.C., Suen, J.Y., Hawkins, J.M. & McKinney, D.C. (1980) *Snuff dipper's carcinoma: Fact or fiction?* In: Nieburgg, H.E., ed., *Prevention and Detection of Cancer, Part II. Detection*, Vol. 2, *Cancer Detection in Specific Sites*, New York, Marcel Dekker, pp. 1367-1371
- WHO Collaborating Centre for Oral Precancerous Lesions (1978) Definition of leukoplakia and related lesions: An aid to studies on oral precancer. *Oral Surg.*, 46, 518-539

- Washington
h, pp. 2, 3, 4,
1. A Report of
- of issuances
46 (No. 179),
- ne tumor-pro-
ncer Inst., 37,
- nd developing
- y mothers on
- nd alcohol to
- ory. Tobacco
- ogical factors
- 5-436
- of the study
95-521
- jeal cancers
-) Epidemio-
rt. Indian J.
- prevalence
- er's carcin-
ancer, Part
el Dekker,
- eukoplakia
8-589
- Wilkins, S.A., Jr & Vogler, W.R. (1957) Cancer of the gingiva. *Surg. Gynecol. Obstet.*, 105, 145-152
- Williams, R.R. & Horm, J.W. (1977) Association of cancer sites with tobacco and alcohol consumption and socioeconomic status of patients: Interview study from the Third National Cancer Survey. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 58, 525-547
- Wilson, M.J. (1975) Tobacco consumption in various countries. In: Lee, P.N., ed., *Research Paper 6*, 4th ed., London, Tobacco Research Council, pp. 4-85
- Winn, D.M., Blot, W.J., Shy, C.M., Pickle, L.W., Toledo, A. & Fraumeni, J.F., Jr (1981a) Snuff dipping and oral cancer among women in the southern United States. *New Engl. J. Med.*, 304, 745-749
- Winn, D.M., Blot, W.J. & Fraumeni, J.F., Jr (1981b) Snuff dipping and oral cancer. *New Engl. J. Med.*, 305, 230-231
- Winn, D.M., Ziegler, R.G., Pickle, L.W., Gridley, G., Blot, W.J. & Hoover, R.N. (1984) Diet in the etiology of oral and pharyngeal cancer among women from the southern United States. *Cancer Res.*, 44, 1216-1222
- van Wyk, C.W. (1965) The oral lesion caused by snuff. A clinico-pathological study. *Med. Proc.*, 11, 531-537
- van Wyk, C.W. (1966) The oral lesion caused by snuff. A clinico-pathological study. *J. dent. Assoc. S. Afr.*, 21, 109-116
- van Wyk, C.W., Farman, A.G. & Staz, J. (1977) Oral health status of institutionalized elderly Cape Coloreds from the Cape Peninsula of South Africa. *Commun. Dent. oral Epidemiol.*, 5, 179-184
- Wynder, E.L. (1976) A corner of history: John Collins Warren (1778-1856). *Prev. Med.*, 5, 317-319
- Wynder, E.L. & Bross, I.J. (1961) A study of etiological factors in cancer of the esophagus. *Cancer*, 14, 389-413
- Wynder, E.L. & Hoffmann, D. (1967) *Tobacco and Tobacco Smoke. Studies in Experimental Carcinogenesis*, New York, Academic Press
- Wynder, E.L. & Stellman, S.D. (1977) Comparative epidemiology of tobacco-related cancers. *Cancer Res.*, 37, 4608-4622
- Wynder, E.L. & Wright, G. (1957) A study of tobacco carcinogenesis. I. The primary fractions. *Cancer*, 10, 255-271
- Wynder, E.L., Bross, I.J. & Feldman, R.M. (1957a) A study of the etiological factors in cancer of the mouth. *Cancer*, 10, 1300-1323
- Wynder, E.L., Hultberg, S., Jacobsson, F. & Bross, I.J. (1957b) Environmental factors in cancer of the upper alimentary tract: A Swedish study with special reference to Plummer-Vinson (Paterson-Kelly) syndrome. *Cancer*, 10, 470-487

- Wynder, E.L., Onderdonk, J. & Mantel, N. (1963) An epidemiological investigation of cancer of the bladder. *Cancer*, 16, 1388-1407
- Yousef, A. & Hashash, M. (1983) Common features and surgical interference in a prevalent oral cancer in Saudi Arabia (a preliminary report). *J. Laryngol. Otolaryngol.*, 97, 837-843
- Zacho, A., Nielsen, J. & Larsen, V. (1968) On the consumption of unburned tobacco in patients with cancer of the stomach. *Acta chir. scand.*, 134, 272-274
- Zacho, A., Nielsen, J. & Cederqvist, C. (1975) Relationship between type of tobacco used and localization of tumour in patients with gastric cancer. *Acta chir. scand.*, 141, 676-679
- Zaridze, D.G., Kuvshinov J.P., Matiakin E., Polakov B.I., Boyle P. & Blettner, M. (1985a) Chemoprevention of oral and esophageal cancer in Uzbekistan, Union of Soviet Socialist Republics. *Natl Cancer Inst. Monogr.* (in press)
- Zaridze, D.G., Blettner, M., Matiakin, E.G., Poljakov, B.P., Stich, H.F., Rosin, M.P., Hoffmann, D. & Brunnemann, K.D. (1985b) The effect of nass use and smoking on the risk of oral leukoplakia. *Cancer Detect. Prev.* (in press)
- Zaridze, D.G., Blettner, M., Trapeznikov, N.N., Kuvshinov, J.P., Matiakin, E.G., Poljakov, B.P., Poddubni, B.K., Parshikova, S.M., Rottenberg, V.I., Chamrakulov, F.S., Chodjaeva, M.C., Stich, H.F., Rosin, M.P., Thurnham, D.I., Hoffmann, D. & Brunnemann, K.D. (1985c) Survey of a population with a high incidence of oral and oesophageal cancer. *Int. J. Cancer*, 36, 153-158

4-(METHYLNITROSAMINO)-4-(3-PYRIDYL)BUTANAL (NNA)¹

1. Chemical and Physical Data

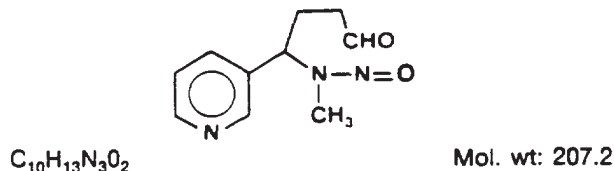
1.1 Synonyms and trade names

Chem. Abstr. Services Reg. No.: 64091-90-3

Chem. Abstr. Name: 3-Pyridinebutanal, γ -(methylnitrosoamino)-

IUPAC Systematic Name: γ -(Methylnitrosamino)-3-pyridinebutyraldehyde

1.2 Structural and molecular formulae and molecular weight



1.3 Chemical and physical properties of the pure substance

- (a) *Spectroscopy data:* Ultraviolet, infrared and mass spectroscopy data have been reported (Hecht *et al.*, 1976, 1977, 1981).
- (b) *Solubility:* Highly soluble in water (Hecht *et al.*, 1976)
- (c) *Stability:* Relatively stable when stored in dichloromethane under nitrogen and at 0°C for two months, but decomposes slowly in air (Hecht *et al.*, 1976).
- (d) *Reactivity:* Treatment with sodium nitrite gives 1-methyl-5-(3-pyridyl)pyrazole and other products (Hecht *et al.*, 1978a).

¹The abbreviation NNA was selected to emphasize the relationship of this compound to nicotine, and stands for 'nicotine-derived nitrosamino aldehyde'.

1.4 Technical products and impurities

This compound is not produced commercially.

Synthetic NNA is a mixture of 81% E-isomer and 19% Z-isomer (Hecht *et al.*, 1977).

2. Production, Use, Occurrence and Analysis

2.1 Production and use

NNA was prepared by Hecht *et al.* (1976) by the oxidation of 4-(methylnitroso-amino)-4-(3-pyridyl)butanol with dimethylsulphoxide and dicyclohexylcarbodiimide.

When nicotine was reacted with 1.4 equivalents of sodium nitrite in aqueous solution under mild conditions (pH 3.4 at 20°C for 17 h), 80-90% of the nicotine was unreacted, but NNA was produced in yields of up to 2.8% of the starting nicotine. After reaction with five equivalents of sodium nitrite at 90°C, no NNA was found in the products (Hecht *et al.*, 1978a).

No evidence was found that NNA has ever been produced in commercial quantities or that it has any use other than as a laboratory chemical.

2.2 Occurrence

Under certain laboratory conditions, formation of NNA from nicotine has been observed, suggesting its presence in tobacco (Hecht *et al.*, 1978b). However, no analytical evidence could be found that NNA occurs in tobacco or in the saliva of snuff users (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981).

2.3 Analysis

NNA formed by reaction of nicotine and sodium nitrite has been detected in laboratory solutions by gas chromatography-mass spectroscopy (Hecht *et al.*, 1978c). However, suitable analytical methods for NNA in matrices such as tobacco have not been developed.

3. Biological Data Relevant to the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk to Humans

3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in animals

Intraperitoneal administration

Mouse: In a screening assay for potential carcinogenicity using pulmonary adenomas as an end-point in strain A mice, a group of 25 female strain A/J mice, six to eight weeks old, received thrice-weekly i.p. injections of 0.2 ml of a 0.5% solution of NNA (purity >99%; Hecht *et al.*, 1977) in saline for seven weeks (total of 22 injections, to give a total dose of 22 mg

[0.11 mmol]) and were held without further treatment for an additional 30 weeks. Further groups, consisting of 25 mice each, served as untreated and vehicle controls. Histological examination of lung and other organs that showed macroscopic lesions revealed lung adenomas in 1/25 untreated controls, 3/25 vehicle controls and 9/25 NNA-treated mice [for vehicle controls compared to treated mice, $p = 0.047$]. Neither lung adenocarcinomas nor malignant tumours were observed at other sites in any of the groups (Hecht *et al.*, 1978b).

3.2 Other relevant biological data

No data were available to the Working Group.

3.3 Case reports and epidemiological studies of carcinogenicity to humans

No data were available to the Working Group.

4. Summary of Data Reported and Evaluation

4.1 Exposure data

No analytical evidence was found that 4-(methylnitrosamino)-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal (NNA) occurs in tobacco or in the saliva of snuff users, although, under certain laboratory conditions, its formation from nicotine has been observed.

4.2 Experimental data

NNA was tested by intraperitoneal injection in female mice of one strain at one dose level only. Although the incidence of lung adenomas in treated mice exceeded those in controls, the experiment does not allow an evaluation of the carcinogenicity of NNA.

No data were available on mutagenic or related effects of NNA.

4.3 Human data

No case report or epidemiological study of the carcinogenicity of NNA to humans was available to the Working Group.

4.4 Evaluation¹

The available data are *inadequate* to evaluate the carcinogenicity of 4-(methylnitrosamino)-4-(3-pyridyl)butanol to experimental animals.

No data on humans were available.

¹For descriptions of the italicized term, see Preamble, pp. 15-16.

5. References

- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B. & Hoffmann, D. (1976) Synthesis of *N*-nitrosamino aldehydes. *Tetrahedron Lett.*, **8**, 593-596
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Dong, M., Ornaf, R.M. & Hoffmann, D. (1977) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LI. Studies on non-volatile nitrosamines in tobacco. *Beitr. Tabakforsch. int.*, **9**, 1-6
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Ornaf, R.M., Hoffmann, D. & Tso, T.C. (1978a) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LVI. Tobacco specific nitrosoamines: Origins, carcinogenicity and metabolism. In: Walker, E.A., Castegnaro, M., Gričute, L. & Lyle, R.E., eds, *Environmental Aspects of N-Nitroso Compounds (IARC Scientific Publications No. 19)*. Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 395-413
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Hirota, N., Ornaf, R.M., Tso, T.C. & Hoffmann, D. (1978b) Tobacco-specific nitrosamines: Formation from nicotine *in vitro* and during tobacco curing and carcinogenicity in strain A mice. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, **60**, 819-824
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Ornaf, R.M., Jacobs, E., Adams, J.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1978c) Reaction of nicotine and sodium nitrite: Formation of nitrosamines and fragmentation of the pyrrolidine ring. *J. org. Chem.*, **43**, 72-76
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Young, R. & Hoffmann, D. (1981) Mass spectra of tobacco alkaloid-derived nitrosamines, their metabolites, and related compounds. *Beitr. Tabakforsch. int.*, **11**, 57-66
- Hoffmann, D. & Adams, J.D. (1981) Carcinogenic tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines in snuff and in the saliva of snuff dippers. *Cancer Res.*, **41**, 4305-4308

4-(METHYLNITROSAMINO)-1-(3-PYRIDYL)-1-BUTANONE (NNK)¹

1. Chemical and Physical Data

1.1 Synonyms and trade names

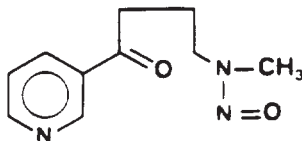
Chem. Abstr. Services Reg. No.: 64091-91-4

Chem. Abstr. Name: 1-Butanone, 4-(methylnitrosoamino)-1-(3-pyridinyl)-

IUPAC Systematic Name: 4-(Methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone

Synonym: 4-(*N*-Methyl-*N*-nitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone

1.2 Structural and molecular formulae and molecular weight



$C_{10}H_{13}N_3O_2$

Mol. wt: 207.2

1.3 Chemical and physical properties of the pure substance

- (a) *Description:* Light-yellow crystalline solid
- (b) *Melting-point:* 63-65°C (Hecht *et al.*, 1977)
- (c) *Spectroscopy data:* Infrared, nuclear magnetic resonance (Hecht *et al.*, 1977) and mass spectroscopy data (Hecht *et al.*, 1981) have been reported.
- (d) *Reactivity:* Reacts with isopropyl nitrite in a saturated solution of hydrogen chloride in methanol to form an α -oxime (Hecht *et al.*, 1978a). Can be reduced with sodium borohydride to 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)butan-1-ol (NNAI)². Can be oxidized with *meta*-chloroperbenzoic acid to give 4-(methylnitrosamino-1-(3-pyridyl-*N*-oxide)-1-butanone (NNK-*N*-oxide) (Hecht *et al.*, 1980a)

¹The abbreviation NNK was selected to emphasize the relationship of this compound to nicotine, and stands for 'nicotine-derived nitrosamino ketone'.

²NNAI, nicotine-derived nitrosamino alcohol

1.4 Technical products and impurities

This compound is not produced commercially.

Synthetic NNK and NNK isolated from tobacco are mixtures of 72.7% E-isomer and 27.3% Z-isomer (Hecht *et al.*, 1977; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1980a).

2. Production, Use, Occurrence and Analysis

2.1 Production and use

NNK was prepared by Hecht *et al.* (1977) by the reaction of sodium hydroxide and sodium nitrite with 4-(N-methyl)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone dihydrochloride.

NNK was obtained by Hecht *et al.* (1978b) as one of several reaction products when nicotine was allowed to react with 1.4 equivalents of sodium nitrite in aqueous solution at 20°C for 17 h. The highest yield of NNK at pH 4.5 was only 0.5% of the theoretical amount. When nicotine was reacted with five equivalents of sodium nitrite at 90°C for 3 h at pH 3.4-4.2, a 2.3% yield of NNK was obtained.

No evidence was found that NNK has ever been produced in commercial quantities or that it has any uses other than as a laboratory chemical.

2.2 Occurrence

(a) Tobacco and tobacco smoke

NNK is formed by oxidation and nitrosation of nicotine, during the curing, ageing, processing and smoking of tobacco. NNK has been found in tobacco at levels of 0.1-35 mg/kg, in snuff products at 0.2-8.3 mg/kg, and in cigarette smoke at 0.1-0.5 µg/cigarette. Additional quantities of NNK may be formed in the oral cavity during oral use of snuff or tobacco chewing (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1979, 1980b; Hoffmann & Adams, 1981; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982a; Brunemann *et al.*, 1983; Hoffmann & Hecht, 1983).

Table 1 summarizes the data obtained from analyses of the smoke of selected commercial cigarettes with and without filter tips and shows the effectiveness of the filters of cigarettes D and E in decreasing the occurrence levels of NNK (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982b).

Nicotine and NNK concentrations found in cigarette and cigar tobaccos, in both their mainstream (during puff drawing) and sidestream (generated during smouldering of tobacco in between puffs) smoke and in chewing tobacco are presented in Table 2.

Studies using tracer compounds [carbonyl-¹⁴C]NNK (Castonguay *et al.*, 1984a) demonstrated that 6.9-11.0% of the NNK formed in tobacco during the curing process transfer into the cigarette mainstream smoke. This constitutes 26-37% of the NNK present in the mainstream smoke. Thus, 63-74% of NNK in the cigarette mainstream smoke are formed during smoking. The cigarette types used in this study were a US commercial non-filter cigarette and three experimental non-filter cigarettes (burley tobacco, flue-cured tobacco and tobacco blend) (Adams *et al.*, 1983b).

Table 1. Reduction of nicotine and NNK concentrations in cigarette smoke by filtration^a

Cigarette	Length smoked/length of cigarette (mm)	Nicotine (mg/cigarette) ^b	NNK (µg/cigarette) ^b
A NF	50/85	1.82	0.7
F	50/85	1.10 (-40%)	0.4 (-50%)
B NF	50/85	1.84	0.5
F	50/85	1.31 (-29%)	0.3 (-48%)
C NF	50/85	1.66	0.7
F	50/85	1.15 (-30%)	0.4 (-45%)
D NF	50/85	1.60	0.8
F	50/85	1.05 (-34%)	0.2 (-73%)
E ^c NF	50/73	1.63	0.9
F	50/100	1.06 (-34%)	0.3 (-71%)

^aData from Hoffmann *et al.* (1982b)^bIn parentheses, percentage changes in yields on comparing filtered (F) and non-filtered (NF) smoke^cPerforated filter tipTable 2. NNK concentrations in cigarettes, cigars and chewing tobacco, and in cigarette and cigar mainstream and sidestream smoke^a

Tobacco product ^b	NNK concentration		
	In tobacco (mg/kg)	In mainstream smoke (µg/cig)	In sidestream smoke (µg/cig)
Burley cigarette, NF	ND ^c	0.3	0.7
Bright cigarette, NF	0.4	0.4	0.5
Commercial cigarette, NF	0.7	0.1	0.4
Commercial cigarette, FA	0.7	0.2	0.2
Kentucky 1R1, NF	0.1	0.2	0.2
US cigarette, NF ^d	—	0.8	—
US cigarette, NF ^e	1.4	0.2	—
German (Federal Republic) cigarettes ^f			
Brand A, NF	—	0.08	—
Brand B, NF	—	0.04	—
Brand C, FA	—	0.06	—
Brand D, FA	—	0.02	—
Brand E, FA	—	0.05	—
Brand F, FA	—	0.06	—
Commercial French cigarette, NF, 70 mm	0.5	0.4	—
Commercial French cigarettes, FA, 70 mm			
NF	0.4	0.4	—
FA	1.1	0.4	—
FA	1.1	0.2	—
FP	1.1	0.1	—
Little cigar, FA	35.0	4.2	0.8
Cigar (Colombian tobacco) (5.7 g)	1.1	1.9	15.7
Fine-cut chewing tobacco	2.4	NA ^g	NA
Fine-cut chewing tobacco ^d	7.4	NA	NA

^aData from Hoffmann *et al.* (1980b), unless otherwise noted^bAll cigarettes and the little cigar were 85 mm long, unless otherwise noted. Abbreviations: NF, non-filter; FA, cellulose acetate filter; FP, paper filter^cND, not detected^dData from Adams *et al.* (1983a); cigarettes and tobacco used were purchased in Westchester County, NY, in 1981^eData from Adams *et al.* (1983b); cigarettes used were purchased in Westchester County, NY, in 1981^fData from Rühl *et al.* (1980); cigarettes were popular brands purchased in Berlin in 1979^gNA, not applicable

NNK concentrations found after analysis of snuff obtained in Sweden, Denmark, the Federal Republic of Germany and the USA were higher than those in cigarette tobacco presented above. The results are summarized in Table 3. NNK concentrations differed not only among snuff brands but also in samples of the same brand bought in different cities. The latter differences were attributed to possible variations in NNK content between batches and/or effects of ageing. The effects of ageing were demonstrated by opening individual portions (packed in aluminium foil) and storing the snuff in the open air: within eight days, the NNK content had increased by 48% and then remained stable (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982b).

Table 3. Nicotine and NNK concentrations in commercial snuff^a

Snuff origin	Type of packaging ^b	Nicotine (%)	NNK (mg/kg) ^c
USA			
Brand I New York and Tennessee	A	2.4	2.4
Brand II New York and Tennessee	A	2.3	4.7
Brand III New York and Tennessee	B	1.5	1.3
Federal Republic of Germany			
Brand I Munich	C	0.6	1.5
Brand II Munich	C	0.5	1.5
Sweden			
Brand I Umeå	A	1.5	2.2
Brand I Uppsala	A	1.5	1.4
Brand I Lund	A	1.5	2.3
Brand II Umeå	A	1.8	1.8
Brand II Uppsala	A	1.8	0.6
Brand II Lund	A	1.8	2.1
Brand III Umeå	A	0.6	2.5
Brand III Uppsala	A	0.6	0.9
Brand III Lund	A	0.7	0.9
Brand IV Umeå	A	1.1	2.1
Brand IV Uppsala	A	1.1	3.8
Brand IV Lund	A	1.1	1.6
Brand V Umeå	D	2.2	1.3
Denmark			
Brand I Copenhagen	E	1.1	2.0
Brand II Copenhagen	E	2.1	1.4
Brand III Copenhagen	E	3.1	7.0
Ageing test ^d : 0 time	-	-	1.3
8 days	-	-	1.9

^aData from Hoffmann and Adams (1981) and Hoffmann *et al.* (1982b); values are given for dry snuff, moisture content about 50%.

^bAbbreviations: A, waxed-paper container with metallic lid, containing approximately 50 g; B, 25 individual portions of approximately 11 g packaged in paper in a plastic container; C, plastic foil-lined aluminium bags containing 100 g; D, individual snuff portion in a paper bag packaged in a crimped airtight aluminium envelope, with 10 envelopes in a plastic bag, amounting to approximately 10 g; E, hard-plastic container.

^cNNK values are averages of three runs.

^dThe aluminium foil-wrapped package (Swedish brand V) was opened at '0 time'.

(b) Human tissues and secretions

Saliva was examined from women who had been long-term oral-snuff users and who were employed in two southern US furniture companies. The wide range of NNK concentrations (2.1-201 ng/g) in the saliva of individual users indicated that during oral use of snuff NNK is extracted from the tobacco plug at varying rates (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981).

In another study, saliva of four women who were long-term (>10 years) oral-snuff users was analysed on two different days after they had used a specific brand of snuff with known levels of NNK. NNK and nicotine levels in saliva (Table 4) varied significantly between subjects, as well as between samples from the same individual taken on different days. The variations in NNK values were at least partially explained by differences in the intensity with which individuals practised the habit at different times, and perhaps are also due to varying rates of salivation (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981; Hoffmann *et al.* 1982b).

Table 4. Nicotine and NNK concentrations in snuff and in saliva of women who were long-term oral-snuff users^a

Subject	Age (years)	Snuff		Saliva ^b		
		Nicotine (mg/g)	NNK (µg/g)	Day of sampling	Nicotine (mg/g)	NNK (µg/g)
1	41	23.4	4.7	1	0.2	0.026
				2	0.5	0.021
2	37	23.4	4.7	1	0.07	0.013
				2	0.4	<0.010
3	44	23.4	4.3	1	1.2	0.096
				2	1.6	0.062
4	52	23.6	5.2	1	0.2	0.01
				2	0.4	0.023

^aData from Hoffmann and Adams (1981) and Hoffmann *et al.* (1982b)

^bSaliva of three women who did not use snuff (controls) was free of nicotine and tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines.

NNK was found in the saliva of chewers of betel quid with tobacco at levels of 1.0-2.3 ng/g [mean, 1.5 ng/g] (Wenke *et al.*, 1984) and up to 2.3 ng/ml (mean, 0.34 ng/ml) (Nair *et al.*, 1985).

2.3 Analysis

Standard methods for the analysis of NNK are described in detail in an IARC manual on selected methods of analysis (Egan *et al.*, 1983).

3. Biological Data Relevant to the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk to Humans

3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in animals

(a) Subcutaneous and/or intramuscular administration

Rat: Groups of 12 male and 12 female Fischer 344 rats, seven weeks of age, received thrice-weekly s.c. injections of 11.7 mg [0.06 mmol] NNK (purity, >99%) in 0.3 ml trioctanoin for 20 weeks (total dose, 702 mg; 3.5 mmol). Animals were maintained until they died spontaneously or were killed after 12 months. Malignant tumours of the nasal cavity (olfactory neuroblastomas and rhabdomyosarcomas) were observed in 6/12 males and in 4/12 females; malignant tumours of the lung (an adenocarcinoma and adenosquamous-cell carcin-

omas) in 5/12 males; and malignant liver tumours (hepatocellular carcinomas and haemangiosarcomas) in 7/12 males and 12/12 females. No tumour of the nasal cavity, lung or liver was found in 12 vehicle controls that received trioctanoin only (Hecht *et al.*, 1980b).

Groups of 15-27 male and 15-27 female Fischer 344 rats, nine weeks of age, received thrice weekly s.c. injections of NNK (purity, >99%; Hecht *et al.*, 1977) in trioctanoin (total doses, approximately 9.0, 3.0 and 1.0 mmol/kg bw), or trioctanoin alone (vehicle controls; 27 males and 27 females) for 20 weeks (with a two-week interruption after seven weeks of injections). Animals were killed when moribund or when only 20% of rats in a group were still alive (the experiment was ended at 70-120 weeks). No difference in body weight was seen among treated and control animals. By 80 weeks, all animals in the high-dose group had died; all animals in the other two groups had died by 120 and 130 weeks, respectively. The incidences of malignant tumours in the nasal cavity (aesthesioneuroepitheliomas, squamous-cell carcinomas, anaplastic carcinomas, spindle-cell sarcomas) and of benign tumours (squamous- and transitional-cell papillomas and polyps) in males and females of the high-, medium- and low-dose groups were 14/15 and 14/15, 13/15 and 12/15, and 20/27 and 10/27, respectively. Malignant tumours predominated in the high-dose group (21/28), but nasal-cavity tumours in the low-dose group were mostly benign (29/30). Incidences of lung tumours (adenomas, adenocarcinomas, squamous-cell carcinomas) for males and females in the high-, medium- and low-dose groups were 14/15 and 9/15, 13/15 and 7/15, and 23/27 and 8/27, respectively. These incidences all differed significantly from those in vehicle-control rats who received trioctanoin only: none had a nasal-cavity tumour and 1/52 had a lung adenoma. The incidences of benign and malignant liver tumours in treated males and females in the high-, medium- and low-dose groups were 6/15 and 5/15, 4/15 and 4/15, and 3/27 and 4/27, respectively. Of the vehicle-control rats, 3/26 males and 1/26 females had benign liver tumours. Among the 114 NNK-treated rats, only two benign oesophageal tumours were observed; none were observed in controls (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1984). [The Working Group interpreted these results as showing dose-response relationships for induction of tumours of the nasal cavity, lung and liver.]

Hamster. Groups of 15 male and 15 female Syrian golden hamsters, aged eight to 10 weeks, received thrice-weekly s.c. injections of 10 mg (0.048 mmol) NNK (purity, >99%) in 0.3 ml trioctanoin for 6.3 weeks (19 injections; total dose, 190 mg [0.91 mmol]); a second group of 10 males and 10 females, aged eight to 10 weeks, received thrice-weekly s.c. injections of 2.5 mg (0.012 mmol) NNK in 0.3 ml trioctanoin for 25 weeks (75 injections; total dose, 190 mg [0.91 mmol]). Hamsters were maintained until they died or were killed after 16 months (first group and vehicle controls) or 17 months (second group). There was extensive early mortality in the first group, with only 4/15 male and 4/15 female hamsters still alive after 14 weeks; in contrast, the percentages surviving in the second group after seven, 10 and 13 months were 80%, 75% and 30%, respectively. Among 15 male and 15 female vehicle controls, the only tumours observed were a sarcoma at the site of injection and an adrenocortical adenoma. In the first treated group, 22/30 hamsters had respiratory-tract tumours: 10 males with one adenocarcinoma and seven adenomas of the lung and two pleomorphic carcinomas of the nasal cavity; and 12 females with three adenocarcinomas and eight adenomas of the lung and one pleomorphic carcinoma of the nasal cavity. Of these, 14 hamsters with lung adenomas and one with lung adenocarcinoma died within the first 11 weeks of the experiment. In the second group, NNK induced tumours of the lung, trachea or nasal cavity in 18/20 animals (males and females). These included four adenomas and six adenocarcinomas of the lung, five pleomorphic carcinomas and one papilloma of the nasal cavity and three tumours of the trachea in males; and four adenocarcinomas and two adenomas of the lung, five pleomorphic carcinomas of the nasal cavity and four tumours of the trachea in females. In both groups, there were a number of malignant tumours at other sites, and several hamsters had multiple tumours (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1981).

Groups of 10 male and 9-10 female Syrian golden hamsters, eight weeks of age, received single s.c. injections of 1.0 mg (4.8 μ mol), 3.3 mg (15.9 μ mol) or 10 mg (48.3 μ mol) NNK (purity, >99%) in 0.3 ml trioctanoin and were exposed one week later to cigarette smoke or underwent sham exposure twice daily for 69 weeks, at which time surviving hamsters were killed. No tumour of the lung, trachea or nasal mucosa was observed in vehicle-control hamsters exposed to smoke or sham smoking. In contrast, hamsters in all groups treated with NNK had tumours of the respiratory tract (lung, nasal cavity or trachea); and in six (five groups exposed to cigarette smoke and one group sham exposed) of the 12 NNK-treated groups the numbers of animals with tumours significantly exceeded that among controls. Of the hamsters not exposed to smoke, 4/10 males given 10 mg NNK had tumours, including three with lung adenomas and two with papillomas of the nasal mucosa, and 1/9 females (a mucoepidermoid carcinoma of the lung and an olfactory neuroblastoma). Of the hamsters given 3.3 mg NNK, 2/10 males had tumours of the lung (1, an adenocarcinoma) and 1/10 females had a nasal papilloma. Of those given 1 mg NNK, 3/10 males had tumours, including two lung adenomas, one nasal-mucosa papilloma and one tumour of the trachea, and 3/10 females, including two lung adenomas and one nasal-mucosa papilloma (Hecht *et al.*, 1983a).

(b) *Intraperitoneal administration*

Mouse: In a screening study for potential carcinogenicity using pulmonary adenomas as an end-point in strain A mice, a group of 25 female strain A/J mice, six to eight weeks old, received thrice-weekly i.p. injections of 0.1 ml of a 1.0% solution of NNK (purity, >99%; Hecht *et al.*, 1977) in trioctanoin over 7.3 weeks (22 injections; total dose, 22 mg; 0.11 mmol) and were killed 30 weeks later. Lung adenomas were observed in 1/25 untreated controls, 5/24 vehicle controls, and 20/23 NNK-treated mice (2.6 lung tumours per animal). No lung adenocarcinoma or malignant tumour at any other site was seen (Hecht *et al.*, 1978c).

A group of 25 female strain A/J mice, six to eight weeks old, received thrice-weekly i.p. injections of 0.1 ml of a solution of NNK (purity, >99%) in 0.9% trioctanoin for 7.3 weeks (22 injections; total dose, 23 mg; 0.11 mmol) and were killed 30 weeks later. All of the 23 surviving, NNK-treated mice had lung tumours, with an average of 37.6 ± 11.8 per mouse. Of the total of 865 lung tumours, 412 were classified as carcinomas. In addition, one mouse had three liver adenomas and two hepatocellular carcinomas and one had a squamous-cell papilloma of the nasal cavity. In comparison, of 25 vehicle controls, four had lung tumours, with a total of five adenomas and no carcinoma. No other tumour was found in this group. In a group of 25 untreated controls, 10 had lung tumours including 16 adenomas and two carcinomas (Castonguay *et al.*, 1983a).

(c) *Carcinogenicity of metabolites*

Mouse: In a screening assay for potential carcinogenicity using pulmonary adenomas as an endpoint in strain A mice, a group of 25 female strain A/J mice, six to eight weeks old, received thrice-weekly i.p. injections of NNK-1-N-oxide (purity, >99%; Hecht *et al.*, 1980a) or 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)butan-1-ol (NNAI)¹ (purity, 99.8%) in 0.1 ml trioctanoin for 7.3 weeks (22 injections; total dose, 23 mg; 0.11 mmol) and were killed 30 weeks later. Lung adenomas were observed in 25/25 NNAI-treated mice (with an average of 26.3 ± 11.7 tumours per mouse), 24/25 NNK-1-N-oxide-treated mice (3.6 ± 2.7 tumours/mouse), 4/25 trioctanoin-treated controls (0.2 ± 0.5 tumours/mouse) and 10/25 untreated controls (0.6 ± 0.9 tumours per mouse) (Castonguay *et al.*, 1983a).

¹NNAI, nicotine-derived nitrosamino alcohol; see also Fig. 1, p. 217.

3.2 Other relevant biological data

(a) *Experimental systems*

Toxic effects

No data were available to the Working Group.

Effects on reproduction and prenatal toxicity

No data were available to the Working Group on effects on reproduction.

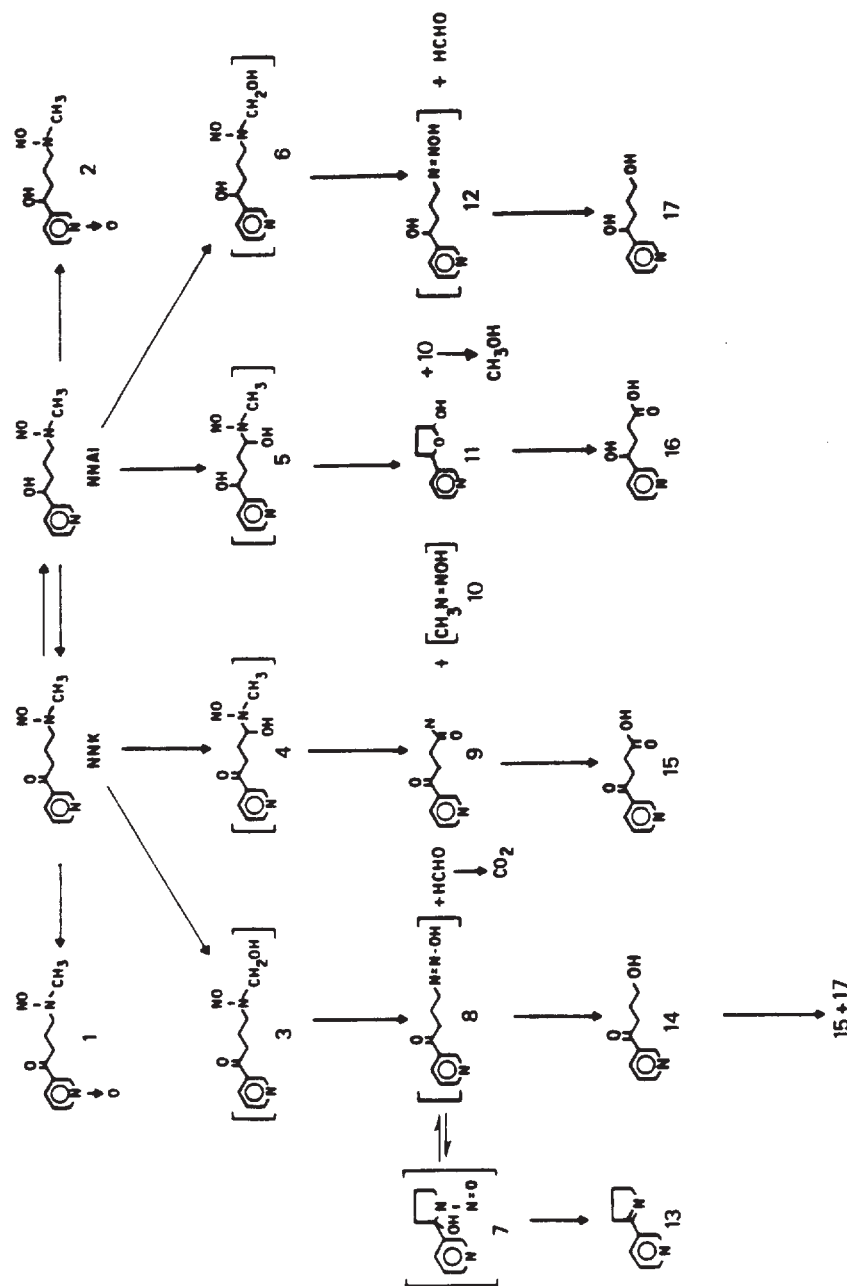
Pregnant C57BL mice were given intravenous injections of 7.0 mg/kg bw [carbonyl- ^{14}C]NNK (Castonguay & Hecht, 1985) on days 13, 16 or 18 of gestation and killed at intervals from 5 min to 8 h. Whole-body autoradiograms revealed the presence of radioactivity in various tissues of the mother, in foetal kidneys and urinary bladder, and in the amniotic fluid. NNK and its carbonyl-reduced metabolite, 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)butan-1-ol (NNAI)¹, were present in the placentas and foetal tissues; some NNK metabolites were covalently bound to tissues of the nose, lung and liver of 18-day-old fetuses. This was shown *in vitro* to be due to the capacity of these foetal tissues to activate NNK metabolically. Enzymatic α -hydroxylation of NNK did not occur in 13-day-old foetal tissue but did so in 16- and 18-day-old foetal tissue. These results demonstrate that NNK and NNAI can cross the placental barrier and be activated by foetal tissues (Castonguay *et al.*, 1984a).

Absorption, distribution, excretion and metabolism

Male Fischer 344 rats were administered 3.5 mg/kg bw [carbonyl- ^{14}C]NNK intravenously and killed at various intervals for whole-body autoradiographic studies. After one minute, radioactivity was distributed in most tissues at levels similar to that in blood. Radioactivity exceeding background levels was observed in the mucosa of the ethmoturbinates, the lateral nasal gland, liver, bronchial mucosa, adrenal cortex, preputial gland, submaxillary salivary gland and contents of the stomach. Four and 24 h after injection, these tissues still showed relatively high labelling. Non-extractable, tissue-bound radioactivity was present in the nasal tissues, bronchi and liver. After oral administration of 3.5 mg/kg bw [carbonyl- ^{14}C]NNK, the distribution of radioactivity was similar to that observed after intravenous administration, except that there was more labelling in the mouth, oesophagus and upper gastrointestinal tract (Castonguay *et al.*, 1983b). Syrian golden hamsters were given intravenous or subcutaneous injections of 4.9 mg/kg bw [carbonyl- ^{14}C]NNK and killed at various intervals for whole-body autoradiography; bound radioactivity was present in the tracheo-bronchial mucosa, nasal mucosa, liver and lateral nasal glands (Tjälve & Castonguay, 1983).

Male Fischer 344 rats given 7.1 $\mu\text{g/kg}$ bw [carbonyl- ^{14}C]NNK orally excreted 88% of the dose in 48-h urine, 3% in faeces and <0.5% in expired air; after oral administration of 5.2 $\mu\text{g/kg}$ bw [$^{14}\text{CH}_3$]NNK, 39% of the dose was excreted in 48-h urine, 8% in faeces, and 47% in expired air as $^{14}\text{CO}_2$ (Castonguay *et al.*, 1983b). Male Syrian golden hamsters given 10 mg (59 mg/kg bw) [carbonyl- ^{14}C]NNK subcutaneously excreted 96-98% of the radioactivity in 48-h urine and the remainder in faeces (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1981).

¹NNAI, nicotine-derived nitrosamino alcohol; see also Fig. 1, p. 217.

Fig. 1. Metabolic transformations of NNK. Structures in brackets represent hypothetical intermediates^a

^aAdapted from Castonguay *et al.* (1983a) and Hecht *et al.* (1983b). Compounds: 1, 1-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-N-oxide; 2, 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-N-oxide; 3, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 4, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 5, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 6, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 7, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 8, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 9, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 10, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 11, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 12, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 13, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 14, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 15, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 16, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 17, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butanal.

Metabolic pathways of NNK are summarized in Figure 1. Three types of metabolic reaction have been established; reduction of the carbonyl group to give 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)butan-1-ol (NNAI), hydroxylation of the methyl and methylene carbons adjacent (α -) to the *N*-nitroso group, to yield the unstable α -hydroxy-*N*-nitrosamines 3 and 4, and oxidation of the pyridine nitrogen, yielding compound 1. NNAI also undergoes α -hydroxylation, leading initially to compounds 5 and 6, and pyridine-*N*-oxidation, giving compound 2. Each of these pathways is discussed below in further detail.

NNAI, a major hepatic microsomal metabolite, is found in the urine of NNK-treated Fischer 344 rats (10% of the dose) and Syrian golden hamsters (7% of the dose). It is formed rapidly after administration of NNK to rats or hamsters in blood serum, stomach contents and most tissues at levels that exceed those of NNK. It is also formed rapidly in cultured A/J mouse peripheral lung treated with NNK. NNAI can be reoxidized to NNK *in vitro* and *in vivo* (Hecht *et al.*, 1980a; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1981; Castonguay *et al.*, 1983a,b; Adams *et al.*, 1984).

α -Hydroxylation is thought to be the major activation pathway of NNK. The unstable α -hydroxy-*N*-nitrosamine 4 decomposes to the keto-aldehyde 9, a rat hepatic microsomal metabolite of NNK, and a methylating agent, presumed to be methyldiazohydroxide (10). The mutagenic methylating agent 10 is structurally similar or identical to the methylating agents formed from such well-known carcinogens as *N*-nitrosodimethylamine and *N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea. Thus, administration of NNK to experimental animals should result in formation of *O*⁶-methylguanine and 7-methylguanine in DNA (Hecht *et al.*, 1980, 1983b). This has been confirmed in Fischer 344 rats treated intravenously with 85 mg/kg bw NNK; *O*⁶-methylguanine and 7-methylguanine were detected in the DNA of liver and lung — organs susceptible to the carcinogenic effects of NNK (Castonguay *et al.*, 1984b). Nasal mucosa of Fischer 344 rats cultured with NNK was shown to have a high capacity to hydroxylate the α -carbon of NNK (Brittebo *et al.*, 1983).

The unstable α -hydroxy-*N*-nitrosamine 3 spontaneously decomposes to formaldehyde and the electrophilic diazohydroxide 8, which induces mutations in *Salmonella typhimurium* (Hecht *et al.*, 1983b). The diazohydroxide 8 reacts with water, yielding keto-alcohol 14, a hepatic microsomal metabolite of NNK (Hecht *et al.*, 1980a). In Fischer 344 rats and Syrian golden hamsters, keto-alcohol 14 and keto-aldehyde 9 are oxidized or reduced to the urinary metabolites 15, 16 and 17 (Hecht *et al.*, 1980a; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1981). By pathways similar to those discussed above, α -hydroxylation of NNAI leads to the intermediates 5 and 6 and to the metabolites 16 and 17. α -Hydroxylation of NNAI occurs more slowly than that of NNK (Castonguay *et al.*, 1983a).

The pyridine-*N*-oxide, NNK-1-*N*-oxide (1) is a microsomal metabolite of NNK and has been detected in the urine, serum and various tissues of Fischer 344 rats treated with NNK (Hecht *et al.*, 1980a; Castonguay *et al.*, 1983b). The pyridine *N*-oxide 2 has been detected in tissues of C57Bl mice treated with this compound (Castonguay *et al.*, 1984a).

Mutagenicity and other short-term tests

In the presence of a liver microsomal preparation from Aroclor-induced rats, NNK, at 1–4 μ mol/plate, caused a dose-dependent increase in mutations in *Salmonella typhimurium* TA1535 and TA100 (Hecht *et al.*, 1983c).

NNK at 10⁻³M and 10⁻²M (1 and 10 mmol/ml) induced unscheduled DNA synthesis in freshly isolated hepatocytes from adult rats (Williams & Laspia, 1979).

O⁶-Methylguanine and 7-methylguanine were detected in the DNA of liver and lung of Fischer 344 rats treated intravenously with 85 mg/kg bw NNK (Castonguay *et al.*, 1984b).

(b) *Humans*

No data were available to the Working Group on toxic effects or on effects on reproduction and prenatal toxicity.

Absorption, distribution, excretion and metabolism

Human tissues obtained at immediate autopsy and cultured for 24 h with [carbonyl-¹⁴C]NNK metabolized NNK to NNAL and to compound 16 (see Fig. 1), as follows (values in nmol/100 ug DNA): buccal mucosa, 470 ± 273 and 0.26 ± 0.23 ; trachea, 315 ± 157 and 0.24 ± 0.13 ; oesophagus, 210 ± 163 and 0.14 ± 0.12 ; bronchus, 740 ± 581 and 0.86 ± 0.83 ; peripheral lung, 705 ± 398 and 0.37 ± 0.33 ; and urinary bladder, 398 ± 302 and 0.19 ± 0.28 . Of the [carbonyl-¹⁴C]NNK added to the medium, 50-80% was converted to NNAL. An unidentified metabolite was also formed (Castonguay *et al.*, 1983c).

No data were available to the Working Group on mutagenicity or chromosomal effects.

3.3 Case reports and epidemiological studies of carcinogenicity to humans

No data were available to the Working Group.

4. Summary of Data Reported and Evaluation

4.1 Exposure data

4-(Methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (NNK) has been found in a variety of tobacco products (chewing tobacco, snuff, cigarettes and cigars), in mainstream and sidestream smoke from cigars and cigarettes, in saliva of chewers of betel quid with tobacco, and in saliva of oral-snuff users. Some of the NNK in saliva appears to be formed endogenously from salivary nitrite and nicotine. Thus, there is widespread exposure to NNK among users of tobacco products and those exposed to sidestream smoke.

4.2 Experimental data

NNK was tested for carcinogenicity in several studies by subcutaneous injection in rats and hamsters and by intraperitoneal injection in mice. In rats, it induced carcinomas of the nasal cavity, lung and liver, with a clear dose-response relationship. In hamsters, it induced benign and malignant tumours of the nasal cavity, trachea and lung, even after a single administration. In mice, NNK and its metabolites 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl-N-oxide)-1-butanone and 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)buan-1-ol induced benign and malignant tumours of the lung.

NNK and its metabolites can cross the placental barrier in mice. NNK can be metabolically activated by mouse foetal tissues.

Administration of NNK to rats results in abnormal DNA methylation in liver and lung. NNK is mutagenic to *Salmonella typhimurium* in the presence of an exogenous metabolic system. It induces unscheduled DNA synthesis in primary cultures of rat hepatocytes.

Overall assessment of data from short-term tests: 4-(Methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone^a

	Genetic activity			Cell transformation
	DNA damage	Mutation	Chromosomal effects	
Prokaryotes		+		
Fungi/green plants				
Insects				
Mammalian cells (in vitro)	+			
Mammals (in vivo)	+			
Humans (in vivo)				
Degree of evidence in short-term tests for genetic activity: <i>Sufficient</i>				Cell transformation: No data

^aThe groups into which the table is divided and '+' are defined on pp. 16-17 of the Preamble; the degrees of evidence are defined on p. 18.

4.3 Human data

No case report or epidemiological study of the carcinogenicity of NNK to humans was available to the Working Group.

4.4 Evaluation¹

There is *sufficient evidence*² for the carcinogenicity of 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone to experimental animals.

No data on humans were available.

5. References

- Adams, J.D., Brunnemann, K.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1983a) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXXV. Rapid method for the analysis of tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines by gas-liquid chromatography with a thermal energy analyzer. *J. Chromatogr.*, **256**, 347-351

¹For description of the italicized term, see Preamble, pp. 15-16.

²In the absence of adequate data on humans, it is reasonable, for practical purposes, to regard chemicals for which there is *sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity in animals as if they presented a carcinogenic risk to humans.

- Adams, J.D., Lee, S.J., Vinchkoski, N., Castonguay, A. & Hoffmann, D. (1983b) On the formation of the tobacco-specific carcinogen 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone during smoking. *Cancer Lett.*, 17, 339-346
- Adams, J.D., LaVoie, E.J., O'Donnell, M. & Hoffmann, D. (1984) *Pharmacokinetics of tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines*. In: O'Neill, I.K., Miller, C.T., von Borstel, R.C., Long, J.E. & Bartsch, H., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Occurrence, Biological Effects and Relevance to Human Cancer (IARC Scientific Publications No. 57)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 779-785
- Brittebo, E.B., Castonguay, A., Furuya, K. & Hecht, S.S. (1983) Metabolism of tobacco-specific nitrosamines by cultured rat nasal mucosa. *Cancer Res.*, 43, 4343-4348
- Brunnemann, K.D., Hecht, S.S. & Hoffmann, D. (1983) *N-Nitrosamines: Environmental occurrence, in vivo formation and metabolism*. *J. toxicol.-clin. Toxicol.*, 19, 661-688
- Castonguay, A. & Hecht, S.S. (1985) Synthesis of carbon-14 labeled 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone. *J. labeled Compd Radio. Pharm.* (in press)
- Castonguay, A., Lin, D., Stoner, G.D., Radok, P., Furuya, K., Hecht, S.S., Schut, H.A.J. & Klaunig, J.E. (1983a) Comparative carcinogenicity in A/J mice and metabolism by cultured mouse peripheral lung of *N'*-nitrososornicotine, 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone, and their analogues. *Cancer Res.*, 43, 1223-1129
- Castonguay, A., Tjälve, H. & Hecht, S.S. (1983b) Tissue distribution of the tobacco-specific carcinogen 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone, and its metabolites in F344 rats. *Cancer Res.*, 43, 630-638
- Castonguay, A., Stoner, G.D., Schut, H.A.J. & Hecht, S.S. (1983c) Metabolism of tobacco-specific *N-nitrosamines* by cultured human tissues. *Proc. natl Acad. Sci. USA*, 80, 6694-6697
- Castonguay, A., Tjälve, H., Trushin, N. & Hecht, S.S. (1984a) Perinatal metabolism of the tobacco-specific carcinogen 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone in C57BL mice. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 72, 1117-1126
- Castonguay, A., Tharp, R. & Hecht, S.S. (1984b) *Kinetics of DNA methylation by the tobacco-specific carcinogen 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone in F344 rats*. In: O'Neill, K., Miller, C.T., von Borstel, R.C., Long, J.E. & Bartsch, H., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Occurrence, Biological Effects and Relevance to Human Cancer (IARC Scientific Publications No. 57)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 805-810
- Egan, H., Preussmann, R., O'Neill, I.K., Eisenbrand, G., Spiegelhalder, B. & Bartsch, H., eds (1983) *Environmental Carcinogens. Selected Methods of Analysis*, Vol. 6, *N-Nitroso Compounds (IARC Scientific Publications No. 45)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Dong, M., Ornaf, R.M. & Hoffmann, D. (1977) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LI. Studies on non-volatile nitrosamines in tobacco. *Beitr. Tabakforsch. int.*, 9, 1-6

- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Ornaf, R.M., Jacobs, E., Adams, J.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1978a) Reaction of nicotine and sodium nitrite: Formation of nitrosamines and fragmentation of the pyrrolidine ring. *J. org. Chem.*, **43**, 72-76
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Ornaf, R.M., Hoffmann, D. & Tso, T.C. (1978b) *Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LVI. Tobacco specific nitrosamines: Origins, carcinogenicity and metabolism.* In: Walker, E.A., Castegnaro, M., Griciute, L. & Lyle, R.E., eds, *Environmental Aspects of N-Nitroso Compounds (IARC Scientific Publications No. 19)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 395-413
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Hirota, N., Ornaf, R.M., Tso, T.C. & Hoffmann, D. (1978c) Tobacco-specific nitrosamines: Formation from nicotine *in vitro* and during tobacco curing and carcinogenicity in strain A mice. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, **60**, 819-824
- Hecht, S.S., Young, R. & Chen, C.-H.B. (1980a) Metabolism in the F344 rat of 4-(N-methyl-N-nitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone, a tobacco specific carcinogen. *Cancer Res.*, **40**, 4144-4150
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Ohmori, T. & Hoffmann, D. (1980b) Comparative carcinogenicity in F344 rats of the tobacco-specific nitrosamines, N'-nitrosonornicotine and 4-(N-methyl-N-nitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone. *Cancer Res.*, **40**, 298-302
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Young, R. & Hoffmann, D. (1981) Mass spectra of tobacco alkaloid-derived nitrosamines, their metabolites, and related compounds. *Beitr. Tabakforsch. int.*, **11**, 57-66
- Hecht, S.S., Adams, J.D., Numoto, S. & Hoffmann, D. (1983a) Induction of respiratory tract tumors in Syrian golden hamsters by a single dose of 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (NNK) and the effect of smoke inhalation. *Carcinogenesis*, **4**, 1287-1290
- Hecht, S.S., Castonguay, A., Rivenson, A., Mu, B. & Hoffmann, D. (1983b) Tobacco specific nitrosamines: Carcinogenicity, metabolism, and possible role in human cancer. *J. environ. Sci. Health*, **C1**, 1-54
- Hecht, S.S., Lin, D. & Castonguay, A. (1983c) Effects of α -deuterium substitution on the mutagenicity of 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (NNK). *Carcinogenesis*, **4**, 305-310
- Hoffmann, D. & Adams, J.D. (1981) Carcinogenic tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in snuff and in the saliva of snuff dippers. *Cancer Res.*, **41**, 4305-4308
- Hoffmann, D. & Hecht, S.S. (1983) *Tobacco and tobacco smoke (volatile and tobacco-specific nitrosamines). General aspects.* In: Egan, H., Preussmann, R., O'Neill, I.K., Eisenbrand, G., Spiegelhalder, B. & Bartsch, H., eds, *Environmental Carcinogens. Selected Methods of Analysis*, Vol. 6, N-Nitroso Compounds (IARC Scientific Publications No. 45), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 63-67
- Hoffmann, D., Adams, J.D., Brunnemann, K.D. & Hecht, S.S. (1979) Assessment of tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in tobacco products. *Cancer Res.*, **39**, 2505-2509
- Hoffmann, D., Adams, J.D., Piade, J.J. & Hecht, S.S. (1980a) *Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXVIII. Analysis of volatile and tobacco-specific nitrosamines in tobacco prod-*

- ucts. In: Walker, E.A., Castegnaro, M., Gričute, L. & Börzsönyi, M., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Analysis, Formation and Occurrence (IARC Scientific Publications No. 31)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 507-516
- Hoffmann, D., Chen, C.-H.B. & Hecht, S.S. (1980b) *The role of volatile and nonvolatile N-nitrosamines in tobacco carcinogenesis*. In: Gori, G.B. & Bock, F.G., eds, *A Safe Cigarette? (Banbury Report 3)*, Cold Spring Harbor, NY, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, pp. 113-127
- Hoffmann, D., Castonguay, A., Rivenson, A. & Hecht, S.S. (1981) Comparative carcinogenicity and metabolism of 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone and N'-nitrosornicotine in Syrian golden hamsters. *Cancer Res.*, 41, 2386-2393
- Hoffmann, D., Brunnemann, K.D., Adams, J.D., Rivenson, A. & Hecht, S.S. (1982a) *N-Nitrosamines in tobacco carcinogenesis*. In: Magee, P.N., ed., *Nitrosamines and Human Cancer (Banbury Report 12)*, Cold Spring Harbor, NY, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, pp. 211-225
- Hoffmann, D., Adams, J.D., Brunnemann, K.D., Rivenson, A. & Hecht, S.S. (1982b) *Tobacco specific N-nitrosamines: Occurrence and bioassays*. In: Bartsch, H., O'Neill, I.K., Castegnaro, M. & Okada, M., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Occurrence and Biological Effects (IARC Scientific Publications No. 41)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 309-318
- Hoffmann, D., Rivenson, A., Amin, S. & Hecht, S.S. (1984) Dose-response study of the carcinogenicity of tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in F344 rats. *J. Cancer Res. clin. Oncol.*, 108, 81-86
- Nair, J., Ohshima, H., Friesen, M., Croisy, A., Bhide, S.V. & Bartsch, H. (1985) Tobacco-specific and betel-nut-specific N-nitroso compounds: Occurrence in saliva and urine of betel quid chewers and formation *in vitro* by nitrosation of betel quid. *Carcinogenesis*, 6, 295-303
- Rühl, C., Adams, J.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1980) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXVI. Comparative assessment of volatile and tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in the smoke of selected cigarettes from the USA, West Germany and France. *J. anal. Toxicol.*, 4, 255-259
- Tjälve, H. & Castonguay, A. (1983) The *in vivo* tissue disposition and *in vitro* target-tissue metabolism of the tobacco-specific carcinogen 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone in Syrian golden hamsters. *Carcinogenesis*, 4, 1259-1265
- Wenke, G., Brunnemann, K.D., Hoffmann, D. & Bhide, S.V. (1984) A study of betel quid carcinogenesis. IV. Analysis of the saliva of betel chewers: A preliminary report. *J. Cancer Res. clin. Oncol.*, 108, 110-113
- Williams, G.M. & Laspi, M.F. (1979) The detection of various nitrosamines in the hepatocyte primary culture/DNA repair test. *Cancer Lett.*, 6, 199-206

N'-NITROSOANABASINE (NAB)

1. Chemical and Physical Data

1.1 Synonyms and trade names

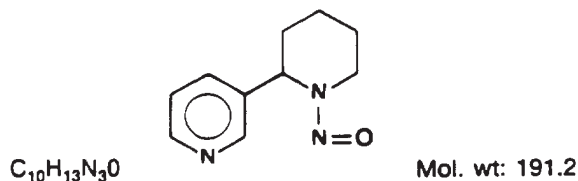
Chem. Abstr. Services Reg. Nos: 37620-20-5; 1133-64-8¹; 84237-39-8²

Chem. Abstr. Names: Pyridine, 3-(1-nitroso-2-piperidinyl)-; pyridine, 3-(1-nitroso-2-piperidinyl)-, (S)-¹; pyridine, 3-(1-nitroso-2-piperidinyl), (+, -)-²

IUPAC Systematic Name: 1-Nitrosoanabasine

Synonym: N-Nitrosoanabasine

1.2 Structural and molecular formulae and molecular weight



1.3 Chemical and physical properties of the pure substance

From Hecht *et al.* (1975) unless otherwise specified

- (a) *Boiling-point:* 162°C at 1 mm Hg
- (b) *Optical rotation:* The specific rotation of NAB has been reported (Nazrullaeva *et al.*, 1976).
- (c) *Spectroscopy data:* Infrared, ultraviolet, nuclear magnetic resonance and mass spectra have been reported.
- (d) *Reactivity:* Can be reduced to the corresponding hydrazine with lithium aluminium hydride (Neurath & Duenger, 1966). Can be oxidized with *meta*-chloroperoxybenzoic acid to give N'-nitrosoanabasine-1-N-oxide (Hecht & Young, 1982)

¹The Chemical Abstracts Services Registry Number and Name refer to a single stereoisomer (S).

²The Chemical Abstracts Services Registry Number and Name refer to the racemic mixture that was synthesized and used in the biological studies reported in this monograph.

1.4 Technical products and impurities

NAB is not produced commercially.

2. Production, Use, Occurrence and Analysis

2.1 Production and use

NAB was prepared by Boyland *et al.* (1964) by treating anabasine with sodium nitrite in dilute hydrochloric acid solution.

No evidence was found that NAB has ever been produced in commercial quantities or that it has any uses other than as a laboratory chemical.

2.2 Occurrence

In several studies, NAB was not detected in tobacco, even when its precursor, anabasine, was present in high concentrations. Various 1-kg samples of commercial and experimental tobacco products were reported in 1975 to be free of NAB, using analytical methods with a detection limit of 0.5 µg/kg. Tobacco products studied included *Nicotiana glauca* (high anabasine content), snuff, fine-cut chewing tobacco (high nitrate and nitrite levels) and plug chewing tobacco (a commercial tobacco with a relatively high anabasine content). NAB was not detected in three commercial tobacco products containing 40-80 mg/kg of anabasine nor in *Nicotiana glauca* tobacco, which contained 2800 mg/kg of anabasine (Hecht *et al.*, 1975). It has been suggested that NAB may be formed in tobacco chewers or smokers from anabasine by nitrosation in the mouth or stomach after swallowing saliva that contains nitrite (Mirvish *et al.*, 1977).

More recently (Brunnemann *et al.*, 1982, 1983), NAB has been identified in tobacco at concentrations of up to 1.9 mg/kg. Cigarette smoke was found to contain up to 120 ng (mean value) NAB per cigarette; and a mean value of 120 ng/cigarette was found in the combined mainstream smoke of 500 non-filter 85-mm US cigarettes (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982a; Adams *et al.*, 1983; Brunnemann *et al.*, 1983; Hoffmann & Hecht, 1983). It was also identified in fine-cut chewing tobacco purchased in 1981 in Westchester County, NY, at a concentration of 1.8 mg/kg (Adams *et al.*, 1983).

Various brands of snuff from the USA and Sweden were analysed for the presence of NAB. The results are summarized in Table 1. A significant reduction in the concentration of nitrosamines (including NAB) was found in brands introduced in the 1980s (American brand V and Swedish brand V) as compared to other (older) brands shown in Table 1 (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982b).

2.3 Analysis

Typical methods for the analysis of NAB are summarized in Table 2.

Table 1. NAB content of commercial snuff^a

Snuff brand	Type of packaging ^b	NAB ($\mu\text{g/kg}$)
USA		
Brand I	A	100
Brand II	A	800
Brand III	A	1900
Brand IV	B	500
Brand V	C	10
Sweden		
Brand I	A	140
Brand II	A	80
Brand III	A	70
Brand IV	A	80
Brand V	D	40

^aData from Brunnemann *et al.* (1982, 1983); values are based on dry weight

^bAbbreviations: A, cardboard box with a metal lid; B, plastic containers with individual snuff portions in porous paper bags; C, plastic container; D, individual snuff portions in aluminium bags

Table 2. Methods for the analysis of NAB

Sample matrix	Sample preparation	Assay procedure ^a	Limit of detection	Reference
Tobacco or tobacco smoke	Extract tobacco with aqueous ascorbic acid solution; collect smoke in aqueous ascorbic acid traps; enrich by extraction with dichloromethane followed by column chromatography	GC/TEA	Approximately 0.1 ng per injection	Adams <i>et al.</i> (1983)
Fine-cut chewing tobacco	As above	HPLC/TEA followed by GC/MS	Not given	Adams <i>et al.</i> (1983)

^aAbbreviations: GC/TEA, gas chromatography with thermal-energy analyser; HPLC/TEA, high-performance liquid chromatography with thermal-energy analyser; GC/MS, gas chromatography with mass spectrometry

3. Biological Data Relevant to the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk to Humans

3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in animals

(a) Oral administration

Rat: Groups of 16 male and 16 female Chester Beatty strain albino rats, approximately seven weeks old, were given drinking-water containing 0.2% NAB [purity not specified] *ad libitum* on six days per week [presumably continuously]. The estimated daily dose was 5 mg/day and animals were killed when moribund or sick, at various intervals between 251 and 550 days of study. A group of 16 males and 16 females served as untreated controls. All but two female rats in the treated group were subjected to post-mortem examination. Of

the 16 treated males, four had oesophageal carcinomas, nine had oesophageal papillomas and three had no tumour; of the 14 treated females, one had an oesophageal carcinoma, 11 had oesophageal papillomas and two had no tumour. No oesophageal tumour was reported in the control rats (Boyland *et al.*, 1964).

A group of 20 male Fischer rats, seven weeks of age, was administered 200 mg/ml NAB (purity, >99%; Hecht *et al.*, 1975) in the drinking-water on five days per week for 30 weeks (estimated total dose, 630 mg). Animals were killed when moribund or after 11 months, and all animals, except those lost by cannibalism or autolysis, were necropsied. Among the 17 rats necropsied from the treated group, one had an oesophageal papilloma and one a pharyngeal papilloma. No tumour was reported in 20 untreated controls (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1975). [The Working Group noted the short duration of treatment and observation, and the low dose used. It was noted, however, that the two observed tumours occurred in the upper digestive tract; this was consistent with the results of the previous study.]

(b) *Subcutaneous and/or intramuscular administration*

Hamster: Groups of 10 male and 10 female Syrian golden hamsters, eight to 10 weeks of age, received thrice-weekly s.c. injections of 5 mg NAB (purity, >99%; Hecht *et al.*, 1975) in saline for 25 weeks (total dose, 375 mg). A further group of 10 males and 10 females received injections of saline only and served as vehicle controls. Animals were killed when moribund or at termination of the experiment at 83 weeks. All animals, except one female in the treated group and one male and two females in the control group lost due to cannibalism, were necropsied and examined histologically. No tumour was detected in any of the treated animals or among the males in the control group; one fibrovascular polyp of the uterus was found in a female in the control group (Hilfrich *et al.*, 1977). [The Working Group noted the short duration of treatment and the small number of animals used.]

3.2 Other relevant biological data

(a) *Experimental systems*

Toxic effects

The subcutaneous LD₅₀ of NAB in Fischer rats was >1000 mg/kg bw (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1975).

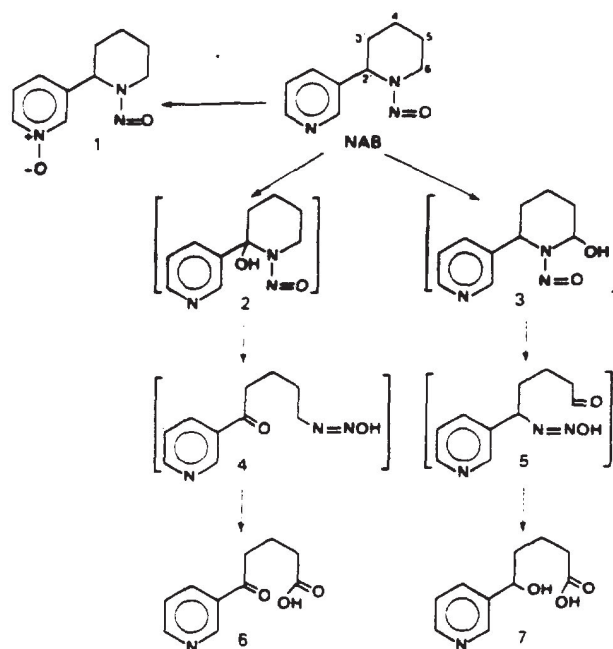
Effects on reproduction and prenatal toxicity

No data were available to the Working Group.

Absorption, distribution, excretion and metabolism

Male Fischer 344 rats administered 100 mg/kg bw [2'-¹⁴C]-NAB (racemic) by gavage excreted 68.5% of the dose in the urine over 30 h.

Metabolic pathways for NAB are illustrated in Figure 1. 5-Hydroxy-5-(3-pyridyl)pentanoic acid (7) (9.8% of the dose administered), resulting from 6'-hydroxylation of NAB, and N'-nitro-soanabasine-1-N-oxide (1) (30% of the dose), resulting from pyridine-N-oxidation of NAB, were detected as urinary metabolites. 5-Oxo-5-(3-pyridyl)pentanoic acid (6), which could have resulted from 2'-hydroxylation of NAB, was not detected in the urine. Similar results were obtained with the S-enantiomer (Hecht & Young, 1982).

Figure 1. Metabolism of NAB. Structures in brackets represent hypothetical intermediates^a

^aFrom Hecht and Young (1982). Compounds: 1, N'-nitrosoanabasine-1-N-oxide; 6, 5-oxo-5-(3-pyridyl)pentanoic acid; 7, 5-hydroxy-5-(3-pyridyl)pentanoic acid

In cultured Fischer 344 rat oesophagus, the major metabolite of [2'-¹⁴C]-NAB (racemic) was 5-hydroxy-5-(3-pyridyl)pentanoic acid (7), resulting from 6'-hydroxylation; small amounts of 5-oxo-5-(3-pyridyl)pentanoic acid (6), formed by 2'-hydroxylation, were also observed (Hecht & Young, 1982).

These results, with regard to the metabolism of NAB, can be compared with those obtained under identical conditions in metabolic studies of NNN, which is structurally similar to NAB. After 48 h of incubation of cultured rat oesophagus with NNN or NAB, the ratios of 2'-hydroxylation to 5'- or 6'-hydroxylation were 3.1 or 0.2, respectively. In the metabolites identified in the urine, the ratio of α -hydroxylation to N-oxidation was 4.2 for NNN and 0.3 for NAB (Hecht & Young, 1982).

Mutagenicity and other short-term tests

No data were available to the Working Group.

(b) Humans

No data were available to the Working Group.

3.3 Case reports and epidemiological studies of carcinogenicity to humans

No data were available to the Working Group.

4. Summary of Data Reported and Evaluation

4.1 Exposure data

N'-Nitrosoanabasine (NAB) has been found in tobacco products (chewing tobacco and snuff) and in mainstream smoke from cigarettes. Thus, there is widespread exposure to NAB among users of tobacco products.

4.2 Experimental data

NAB was tested for carcinogenicity by oral administration in two strains of rats and by subcutaneous injection in hamsters. In rats, it induced oesophageal carcinomas and/or papillomas. The study in hamsters was inadequate for evaluation.

No data were available on mutagenic or related effects of NAB.

4.3 Human data

No case report or epidemiological study of the carcinogenicity of NAB to humans was available to the Working Group.

4.4 Evaluation¹

There is *limited evidence* for the carcinogenicity of *N*'-nitrosoanabasine to experimental animals.

No data on humans were available.

5. References

- Adams, J.D., Brunneemann, K.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1983) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXXV. Rapid method for the analysis of tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines by gas-liquid chromatography with a thermal energy analyzer. *J. Chromatogr.*, **256**, 347-351
- Boyland, E., Roe, F.J.C., Gorrod, J.W. & Mitchley, B.C.V. (1964) The carcinogenicity of nitrosoanabasine, a possible constituent of tobacco smoke. *Br. J. Cancer*, **18**, 265-270
- Brunneemann, K.D., Scott, J.C. & Hoffmann, D. (1982) *N*-Nitrosomorpholine and other volatile *N*-nitrosamines in snuff tobacco. *Carcinogenesis*, **3**, 693-696

¹For description of the italicized term, see Preamble, pp. 15-16.

- Brunnemann, K.D., Hecht, S.S. & Hoffmann, D. (1983) N-Nitrosamines: Environmental occurrence, in vivo formation and metabolism. *J. toxicol.-clin. Toxicol.*, 19, 661-688
- Hecht, S.S. & Young, R. (1982) Regiospecificity in the metabolism of the homologous cyclic nitrosamines, N'-nitrosonornicotine and N'-nitrosoanabasine. *Carcinogenesis*, 3, 1195-1199
- Hecht, S.S., Ornat, R.M. & Hoffmann, D. (1975) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. XXXIII. N'-Nitrosonornicotine in tobacco: Analysis of possible contributing factors and biologic implications. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 54, 1237-1244
- Hilfrich, J., Hecht, S.S. & Hoffmann, D. (1977) A study of tobacco carcinogenesis. XV. Effects of N'-nitrosonornicotine and N'-nitrosoanabasine in Syrian golden hamsters. *Cancer Lett.*, 2, 169-175
- Hoffmann, D. & Hecht, S.S. (1983) Tobacco and tobacco smoke (volatile and tobacco-specific nitrosamines). General aspects. In: Egan, H., Preussmann, R., O'Neill, I.K., Eisenbrand, G., Spiegelhalder, B. & Bartsch, H., eds, *Environmental Carcinogens. Selected Methods of Analysis*, Vol. 6, N-Nitroso Compounds (IARC Scientific Publications No. 45), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 63-67
- Hoffmann, D., Raineri, R., Hecht, S.S., Maronpot, R. & Wynder, E.L. (1975) A study of tobacco carcinogenesis. XIV. Effects of N'-nitrosonornicotine and N'-nitrosoanabasine in rats. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 55, 977-981
- Hoffmann, D., Adams, J.D., Brunnemann, K.D., Rivenson, A. & Hecht, S.S. (1982a) Tobacco specific N-nitrosamines: Occurrence and bioassays. In: Bartsch, H., O'Neill, I.K., Castegnaro, M. & Okada, M., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Occurrence and Biological Effects* (IARC Scientific Publications No. 41), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 309-318
- Hoffmann, D., Brunnemann, K.D., Adams, J.D., Rivenson, A. & Hecht, S.S. (1982b) N-Nitrosamines in tobacco carcinogenesis. In: Magee, P.N., ed., *Nitrosamines and Human Cancer* (Banbury Report 12), Cold Spring Harbor, NY, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, pp. 211-225
- Mirvish, S.S., Sams, J. & Hecht, S.S. (1977) Kinetics of nornicotine and anabasine nitrosation in relation to N'-nitrosonornicotine occurrence in tobacco and to tobacco-induced cancer. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 59, 1211-1213
- Nazrullaeva, N.Z., Astanov, K.A., Abduvakhabov, A.A. & Mukhamedzhanov, S.Z. (1976) Specific rotation of anabasine (Russ.). *Khim. Priir. Soedin.*, 4, 552 [*Chem. Abstr.*, 86, 106854x]
- Neurath, G. & Duenger, M. (1966) N-Nitroso compounds from tobacco alkaloids (Ger.). *Beitr. Tabakforsch.*, 3, 339-345 [*Chem. Abstr.*, 67, 64605s]

N'-NITROSOANATABINE (NAT)

1. Chemical and Physical Data

1.1 Synonyms and trade names

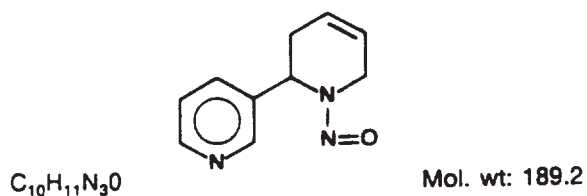
Chem. Abstr. Services Reg. No.: 71267-22-6

Chem. Abstr. Name: 2,3'-Bipyridine, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydro-1-nitroso-

IUPAC Systematic Name: 1,2,3,6-Tetrahydro-1-nitroso-2,3-bipyridine

Synonym: NATB

1.2 Structural and molecular formulae and molecular weight



1.3 Chemical and physical properties of the pure substance

(a) *Boiling-point:* 176°C at 0.5 mm Hg (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1979)

(b) *Spectroscopy data:* Infrared, mass and nuclear magnetic resonance spectra have been reported (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1979; Hecht *et al.*, 1981).

1.4 Technical products and impurities

NAT is not produced commercially.

2. Production, Use, Occurrence and Analysis

2.1 Production and use

NAT was prepared by Hoffmann *et al.* (1979) by the reaction of sodium nitrite with a solution of anatabine in hydrochloric acid (Hu *et al.*, 1974).

No evidence was found that NAT has ever been produced in commercial quantities or that it has any uses other than as a laboratory chemical.

2.2 Occurrence

(a) Tobacco and tobacco smoke

NAT is produced by nitrosation of anatabine during the curing, ageing, processing and smoking of tobacco. The presence of NAT in cigarette smoke was suggested by Klus and Kuhn (1975) on the basis of data on thin-layer chromatography. It has been found in tobacco at levels of 0.4-13 mg/kg, in snuff products at 0.2-44 mg/kg, and in cigarette smoke at 0.1-4.6 µg/cigarette; laboratory evidence has suggested that additional quantities of NAT may be formed in the oral cavity during oral use of snuff and tobacco (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1979, 1980a,b; Hoffmann & Adams, 1981; Brunnemann *et al.*, 1982, 1983; Hoffmann & Hecht, 1983).

Table 1 summarizes the data obtained from analyses of smoke from selected commercial cigarettes with and without filter tips and shows the effectiveness of the filters of cigarettes D and E in decreasing the occurrence levels of NAT (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982).

NAT concentrations found in cigarette and cigar tobaccos, in both their mainstream (during puff drawing) and sidestream (generated during smouldering of tobacco in between puffs) smoke, and in chewing tobacco are presented in Table 2.

NAT concentrations found after analysis of snuff brands obtained in Sweden, Denmark, the Federal Republic of Germany and the USA far exceeded (levels of up to 44 mg/kg) those levels presented above for cigarette tobacco. The results are summarized in Table 3. NAT concentrations differed not only among snuff brands, but also in samples of the same brand bought in different cities. The latter differences were attributed to possible variations in NAT content between batches and/or effects of ageing. The effects of ageing were demonstrated by opening individual portions (packed in aluminium foil) and storing the snuff in open air: within 14 days, the NAT content had increased by 50% (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982).

(b) Human tissues and secretions

Saliva from women who had been long-term oral-snuff users and who were employed in two southern US furniture companies contained NAT. The wide range of NAT concentrations (6.6-147 ng/g) in the saliva of individual users indicated that during oral use of snuff NAT is extracted from the tobacco plug at varying rates (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981).

Table 1. Reduction of NAT concentrations in cigarette smoke by filtration^a

Cigarette	Length smoked/length of cigarette (mm)	NAT ($\mu\text{g}/\text{cigarette}$) ^b
A NF	50/85	1.1
F	50/85	0.6 (-47%)
B NF	50/85	0.7
F	50/85	0.4 (-47%)
C NF	50/85	1.1
F	50/85	0.7 (-39%)
D NF	50/85	1.3
F	50/85	0.4 (-70%)
E ^c NF	50/73	1.9
F	50/100	0.6 (-69%)

^aFrom Hoffmann *et al.* (1982)^bIn parentheses, percentage changes in yields on comparing filtered (F) and non-filtered (NF) smoke^cPerforated filter tipTable 2. NAT concentrations in cigarettes, cigars and chewing tobacco, and in cigarette and cigar mainstream and sidestream smoke^a

Tobacco product ^b	NAT concentration		
	In tobacco (mg/kg)	In mainstream smoke ($\mu\text{g}/\text{cig}$)	In sidestream smoke ($\mu\text{g}/\text{cig}$)
Burley cigarette, NF	3.2	4.6	1.5
Bright cigarette, NF	0.4	0.4	0.4
Commercial cigarette, NF	1.6	0.3	0.3
Commercial cigarette, FA	1.3	0.4	0.2
Kentucky 1R1, NF	0.6	0.5	0.2
US cigarette, NF ^c	—	1.0	—
German (Federal Republic) cigarettes ^d			
Brand A, NF	—	0.2	—
Brand B, NF	—	0.1	—
Brand C, FA	—	0.2	—
Brand D, FA	—	0.04	—
Brand E, FA	—	0.1	—
Brand F, FA	—	0.1	—
Commercial French cigarette, NF, 70 mm	1.8	0.2	—
Commercial French cigarettes, FA, 70 mm			
NF	1.5	0.2	—
FA	2.0	0.6	—
FA	2.0	0.2	—
FP	2.0	0.2	—
Little cigar, FA	13.0	1.7	0.6
Cigar (Colombian tobacco) (5.7 g)	3.3	1.9	— ^e
Fine-cut chewing tobacco	44.0	NA ^f	NA
Fine-cut chewing tobacco ^g	47.7	NA	NA

^aData from Hoffmann *et al.* (1980a), unless otherwise noted^bAll cigarettes and the little cigar were 85 mm long, unless otherwise noted. Abbreviations: NF, non-filter; FA, cellulose acetate filter; FP, paper filter^cData from Adams *et al.* (1983); cigarettes and tobacco used were purchased in Westchester County, NY, in 1981^dData from Rühl *et al.* (1980); cigarettes were popular brands purchased in Berlin in 1979^eNot determined because of interference by unknowns^fNA, not applicable

Table 3. Anatabine and NAT concentrations in commercial snuff^a

Snuff origin	Type of packaging ^b	Anatabine (mg/kg)	NAT (mg/kg) ^c
USA			
Brand I New York and Tennessee	A	600	44
Brand II New York and Tennessee	A	5400	22.7
Brand III New York and Tennessee	B	400	1.8
Federal Republic of Germany			
Brand I Munich	C	100	4.4
Brand III Munich	C	100	3.9
Sweden			
Brand I Umeå	A	200	5.6
Brand II Uppsala	A	200	4.3
Brand III Lund	A	200	5.6
Brand II Umeå	A	200	3.2
Brand II Uppsala	A	200	3.1
Brand II Lund	A	200	7.0
Brand III Umeå	A	50	3.1
Brand III Uppsala	A	50	1.2
Brand III Lund	A	50	0.8
Brand IV Umeå	A	100	6.0
Brand IV Uppsala	A	100	25.1
Brand IV Lund	A	200	5.0
Brand V Umeå	D	300	1.0
Denmark			
Brand I Copenhagen	E	30	2.7
Brand II Copenhagen	E	700	3.7
Brand III Copenhagen	E	200	6.2
Ageing test ^d : 0 time	-	-	1.0
14 days	-	-	1.5

^aData from Hoffmann and Adams (1981) and Hoffmann *et al.* (1982); values are given for dry snuff, moisture content about 50%.

^bAbbreviations: A, waxed-paper container with metallic lid, containing approximately 50 g; B, 25 individual portions of approximately 11 g packaged in paper in a plastic container; C, plastic foil-lined aluminium bags containing 100 g; D, individual snuff portion in a paper bag packaged in a crimped airtight aluminium envelope, with 10 envelopes in a plastic bag, amounting to approximately 10 g; E, hard-plastic container.

^cNAT values are averages of three runs.

^dThe aluminium foil-wrapped package (Swedish brand V) was opened at '0 time'.

Table 4. Anatabine and NAT concentrations in snuff and NAT concentrations in saliva of women who were long-term oral-snuff users^a

Subject	Age (years)	Snuff		Saliva ^b	
		Anatabine (mg/g)	NAT (µg/g)	Day of sampling	NAT (µg/g)
1	41	0.5	22.7	1	0.2
				2	0.5
2	37	0.5	22.7	1	0.02
				2	0.05
3	44	0.5	20.4	1	0.4
				2	0.3
4	52	0.6	22.6	1	0.01
				2	0.05

^aData from Hoffmann and Adams (1981).

^bSaliva of three women who did not use snuff (controls) was free of nicotine and tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines.

In another study, saliva of four women who were long-term (>10 years) oral-snuff users was analysed on two different days after they had used a specific brand of snuff with known concentrations of NAT. NAT levels in saliva (Table 4) varied significantly between subjects, as well as between samples from the same individual taken on different days. The variations in these values were at least partially due to the differences in the intensity with which individuals practised the habit at different times, and perhaps also to varying rates of salivation (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982).

NAT was found in the saliva of chewers of betel quid with tobacco at levels of 3.2-40 ng/g [mean, 15.6 ng/g] (Wenke *et al.*, 1984) and 1.0-10.9 ng/ml (mean, 4.8 ng/ml); it was also detected in the saliva of chewers of tobacco at levels of 13.5-51.7 ng/ml (mean, 29.8 ng/ml) (Nair *et al.*, 1985).

2.3 Analysis

Standard methods for the analysis of NAT are described in detail in an IARC manual on selected methods of analysis (Egan *et al.*, 1983).

3. Biological Data Relevant to the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk to Humans

3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in animals

(a) Subcutaneous and/or intramuscular administration

Rat: Groups of 12-21 male and 12-21 female Fischer 344 rats, nine weeks of age, received thrice-weekly s.c. injections of NAT (purity, >95%; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1979) in trioctanoin (total doses, approximately 1.0, 3.0 or 9.0 mmol/kg bw), or trioctanoin alone (vehicle controls; 27 males and 27 females), for a total of 20 weeks (with a two-week interruption after seven weeks of injections). Animals were killed when moribund or when only 20% of rats in a group were still alive. Survival (70-90% in males and 66-100% in females at 100 weeks; 0-30% and 25-40%, respectively, at 120 weeks) and body weights of the treated groups were comparable to those of vehicle controls. There was no significant difference in the number and distribution of tumours (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1984). [The Working Group noted the short duration of treatment and the limited number of animals per dose level.]

3.2 Other relevant biological data

No data were available to the Working Group.

3.3 Case reports and epidemiological studies of carcinogenicity to humans

No data were available to the Working Group.

4. Summary of Data Reported and Evaluation

4.1 Exposure data

N-Nitrosoanatabine (NAT) has been found in a variety of tobacco products (snuff, chewing tobacco, cigarettes and cigars), in mainstream and sidestream smoke from cigars and cigarettes, in saliva of chewers of betel quid with tobacco and in saliva of users of chewing tobacco and oral snuff. Some of the NAT in saliva appears to be formed endogenously from nitrite in saliva and tobacco alkaloids. Thus, there is widespread exposure to NAT among users of tobacco products and those exposed to sidestream smoke.

4.2 Experimental data

NAT was tested for carcinogenicity by subcutaneous injection in rats of one strain at three dose levels. There was no increase in tumour incidence.

No data were available on mutagenic or related effects of NAT.

4.3 Human data

No case report or epidemiological study of the carcinogenicity of NAT was available to the Working Group.

4.4 Evaluation¹

The available data are *inadequate* to evaluate the carcinogenicity of *N*-nitrosoanatabine to experimental animals.

No data on humans were available.

5. References

- Adams, J.D., Brunnemann, K.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1983) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXXV. Rapid method for the analysis of tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines by gas-liquid chromatography with a thermal energy analyzer. *J. Chromatogr.*, **256**, 347-351
- Brunnemann, K.D., Scott, J.C. & Hoffmann, D. (1982) *N*-Nitrosomorpholine and other volatile *N*-nitrosamines in snuff tobacco. *Carcinogenesis*, **3**, 693-696
- Brunnemann, K.D., Hecht, S.S. & Hoffmann, D. (1983) *N*-Nitrosamines: Environmental occurrence, in vivo formation and metabolism. *J. toxicol.-clin. Toxicol.*, **19**, 661-688

¹For description of the italicized term, see Preamble, pp. 15-16.

- Egan, H., Preussmann, R., O'Neill, I.K., Eisenbrand, G., Spiegelhalder, B. & Bartsch, H., eds (1983) *Environmental Carcinogens. Selected Methods of Analysis*, Vol. 6, *N-Nitroso Compounds* (IARC Scientific Publications No. 45), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Young, R. & Hoffmann, D. (1981) Mass spectra of tobacco alkaloid-derived nitrosamines, their metabolites, and related compound. *Beitr. Tabakforsch. int.*, **11**, 57-66
- Hoffmann, D. & Adams, J.D. (1981) Carcinogenic tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in snuff and in saliva of snuff dippers. *Cancer Res.*, **41**, 4305-4308
- Hoffmann, D. & Hecht, S.S. (1983) *Tobacco and tobacco smoke (volatile and tobacco-specific nitrosamines). General aspects*. In: Egan, H., Preussmann, R., O'Neill, I.K., Eisenbrand, G., Spiegelhalder, B., O'Neill, I.K. & Bartsch, H., eds, *Environmental Carcinogens. Selected Methods of Analysis*, Vol. 6, *N-Nitroso Compounds* (IARC Scientific Publications No. 45), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 63-67
- Hoffmann, D., Adams, J.D., Brunnemann, K.D. & Hecht, S.S. (1979) Assessment of tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in tobacco products. *Cancer Res.*, **39**, 2505-2509
- Hoffmann, D., Adams, J.D., Piade, J.J. & Hecht, S.S. (1980a) *Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXVIII. Analysis of volatile and tobacco-specific nitrosamines in tobacco products*. In: Walker, E.A., Castegnaro, M., Gričute, L. & Börzsönyi, M., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Analysis, Formation and Occurrence* (IARC Scientific Publications No. 31), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 507-516
- Hoffmann, D., Chen, C.-H.B. & Hecht, S.S. (1980b) *The role of volatile and nonvolatile N-nitrosamines in tobacco carcinogenesis*. In: Gori, G.B. & Bock, F.G., eds, *A Safe Cigarette? (Banbury Report 3)*, Cold Spring Harbor, NY, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, pp. 113-127
- Hoffmann, D., Adams, J.D., Brunnemann, K.D., Rivenson, A. & Hecht, S.S. (1982) *Tobacco specific N-nitrosamines: Occurrence and bioassays*. In: Bartsch, H., O'Neill, I.K., Castegnaro, M. & Okada, M., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Occurrence and Biological Effects* (IARC Scientific Publications No. 41), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 309-318
- Hoffmann, D., Rivenson, A., Amin, S. & Hecht, S.S. (1984) Dose-response study of the carcinogenicity of tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in F344 rats. *J. Cancer Res. clin. Oncol.*, **108**, 81-86
- Hu, M.W., Bondinell, W.E. & Hoffmann, D. (1974) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. XXIII. Synthesis of carbon-14 labelled myosmine, nornicotine and N'-nitrosonornicotine. *J. labelled Compd.*, **10**, 79-88
- Klus, H. & Kuhn, H. (1975) Studies on the nonvolatile N-nitrosamines of the tobacco alkaloids (Ger.). *Fachl. Mitt. Austria Tabakwerke*, **16**, 307-317
- Nair, J., Ohshima, H., Friesen, M., Croisy, A., Bhide, S.V. & Bartsch, H. (1985) Tobacco-specific and betel-nut-specific N-nitroso compounds: Occurrence in saliva and urine of betel quid chewers and formation *in vitro* by nitrosation of betel quid. *Carcinogenesis*, **6**, 295-303

- Rühl, C., Adams, J.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1980) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXVI. Comparative assessment of volatile and tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines in the smoke of selected cigarettes from the USA, West Germany and France. *J. anal. Toxicol.*, 4, 255-259
- Wenke, G., Brunnemann, K.D., Hoffmann, D. & Bhide, S.V. (1984) A study of betel quid carcinogenesis. IV. Analysis of the saliva of betel chewers: A preliminary report. *J. Cancer Res. clin. Oncol.*, 108, 110-113

N'-NITROSONORNICOTINE (NNN)

This substance was considered by a previous Working Group, in October 1977 (IARC, 1978). Since that time, new data have become available, and these have been incorporated into the monograph and taken into account in the present evaluation.

1. Chemical and Physical Data

1.1 Synonyms and trade names

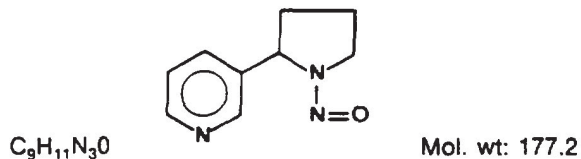
Chem. Abstr. Services Reg. Nos: 80508-23-2; 16543-55-8¹; 84237-38-7²

Chem. Abstr. Names: Pyridine, 3-(1-nitroso-2-pyrrolidinyl)-; pyridine, 3-(1-nitroso-2-pyrrolidinyl)-,(S)-¹; pyridine, 3-(1-nitroso-2-pyrrolidinyl)-, (+,-)-²

IUPAC Systematic Name: 1'-Demethyl-1'-nitrosonicotine

Synonyms: 1'-Demethyl-1'-nitrosonicotine; 1'-desmethyl-1'-nitrosonicotine; 1'-nitroso-1'-demethylnicotine; N-nitrosonornicotine; 1'-nitrosonornicotine; nitroso-nornicotine; 1-nitroso-2-(3-pyridyl)pyrrolidine; 3-(1-nitroso-2-pyrrolidinyl)pyridine

1.2 Structural and molecular formulae and molecular weight



1.3 Chemical and physical properties of the pure substance

(a) *Description:* Yellow oil that solidifies on standing in the cold

(b) *Boiling-point:* 154°C at 0.2 mm (Hu *et al.*, 1974)

¹The Chemical Abstracts Services Registry Number and Name refer to a single stereoisomer (S).

²The Chemical Abstracts Services Registry Number and Name refer to the racemic mixture that was synthesized and used in the biological studies reported in this monograph.

- (c) *Melting-point*: 47°C
- (d) *Spectroscopy data*: Mass (Hecht *et al.*, 1981a), ultraviolet, infrared, and nuclear magnetic resonance spectra (Hu *et al.*, 1974) have been reported.
- (e) *Reactivity*: Can be reduced to the corresponding hydrazine with lithium aluminium hydride (Neurath & Duenger, 1966). For formation of *N*'-nitrosonornicotine-1-*N*-oxide, see Hecht *et al.* (1980a). For other reactions, see Chen *et al.* (1979) and Hecht *et al.* (1979).

1.4 Technical products and impurities

NNN is not produced commercially.

2. Production, Use, Occurrence and Analysis

2.1 Production and use

NNN was prepared by Boyland *et al.* (1964) by treating nornicotine with sodium nitrite in dilute hydrochloric acid. Using a variation of this procedure, Hu *et al.* (1974) obtained a yield of 93%. It has also been made by the reaction of nicotine-*N*'-oxide with nitrites or nitrogen dioxide (Klimisch & Stadler, 1976).

When nicotine was reacted with five equivalents of sodium nitrite in aqueous solution at 90°C for 3 h at pH 3.4-4.2, NNN was the identified reaction-product formed in the second highest yield (8.8% of the starting nicotine) (Hecht *et al.*, 1978a).

No evidence was found that NNN has ever been produced in commercial quantities or that it has any uses other than as a laboratory chemical.

2.2 Occurrence

(a) Tobacco and tobacco smoke

NNN has not been detected in freshly harvested tobacco (Hecht *et al.*, 1978a); however, it was detected in freshly homogenized, leaf-cured tobacco (Andersen *et al.*, 1982).

NNN has been reported to be produced by nitrosation of nicotine, the most prevalent alkaloid in commercial tobacco, and only to a minor extent from the tobacco alkaloid, nornicotine, during the curing, ageing, processing and smoking of tobacco (Hecht *et al.*, 1978b). NNN has been found in tobacco at levels of 0.2-130 mg/kg, in snuff products at 0.8-77 mg/kg, in chewing tobacco at 1.0-90.6 mg/kg, and in cigarette smoke (mainstream) at 0.1-3.7 µg/cigarette (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1974; Klus & Kuhn, 1975; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1976; Munson & Abdine, 1977; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1979; US Department of Health and Human Services, 1981; Andersen *et al.*, 1982; Brunnemann *et al.*, 1983a; Chamberlain & Arrendale, 1983; Hoffmann & Hecht, 1983). Additional quantities of NNN may be formed in the oral cavity during oral use of snuff or tobacco (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1980a; Hoffmann & Adams, 1981; Brunnemann *et al.*, 1983a; Sipahimalani *et al.*, 1984).

Two studies reported no correlation between nicotine content and NNN levels in 12 flue-cured tobacco samples (Brunnemann *et al.*, 1983b; Chamberlain & Arrendale, 1983).

Table 1 summarizes the data obtained from analyses of smoke from selected commercial cigarettes with and without filter tips and shows the effectiveness of the filters of cigarettes D and E in decreasing the occurrence levels of NNN (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982).

Table 1. Reduction of nicotine and NNN concentrations in cigarette smoke by filtration^a

Cigarette	Length smoked/ length of cigarette (mm)	Nicotine (mg/cigarette) ^b	NNN (µg/cigarette) ^b
A NF	50/65	1.8	0.8
F	50/85	1.1 (-40%)	0.5 (-44%)
B NF	50/65	1.8	0.5
F	50/85	1.3 (-29%)	0.3 (-39%)
C NF	50/65	1.7	0.8
F	50/85	1.2 (-30%)	0.5 (-38%)
D NF	50/65	1.6	1.1
F	50/85	1.1 (-34%)	0.3 (-69%)
E ^c NF	50/73	1.6	1.8
F	50/100	1.1 (-34%)	0.5 (-71%)

^aData from Hoffmann *et al.* (1982)

^bIn parentheses, percentage changes in yields on comparing filtered (F) and non-filtered (NF) smoke

^cPerforated filter tip

Nicotine and NNN concentrations found in cigarette and cigar tobaccos, in both their mainstream (during puff drawing) and sidestream (generated during smouldering of tobacco in between puffs) smoke, and in pipe and chewing tobacco are presented in Table 2.

In studies with [2'-¹⁴C]NNN, the NNN in tobacco smoke was demonstrated to be partially formed during smoking; however, 40-50% were shown to originate from NNN in the tobacco by direct transfer into the mainstream smoke. Approximately 46% of the NNN in the smoke of a US, blended, non-filter cigarette originated from the tobacco, whereas the rest was formed during smoking. In the case of a French, dark-tobacco cigarette with alkaline smoke, the transfer of NNN from the tobacco into the smoke was about 41%; therefore, the balance of 59% was formed during smoking (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1980b; Adams *et al.*, 1983b).

NNN concentrations found after analysis of snuff obtained in Sweden, Denmark, Federal Republic of Germany and the USA were higher than those in cigarette tobacco presented above. The results are summarized in Table 3. NNN concentrations differed not only among snuff brands but also in samples of the same brand bought in different cities. The latter differences were attributed to possible variations in NNN content between batches and/or effects of ageing. The effects of ageing were demonstrated by opening individual portions (packed in aluminium foil) and storing the snuff in the open air: within eight days, the NNN content had increased by 34% and then remained stable. The data presented in Table 3 suggest that part of the nitrate in the snuff (present at about 2%) was reduced to nitrite while standing in the open air, an occurrence that was not observed in a germ-free atmosphere (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982).

Addition of nitrate to cigarettes increased the yields of nitrosamines in mainstream smoke (Adams *et al.*, 1984). This may be important, because the levels of nitrate in cigarettes have increased from about 0.5% to 1.2-1.5% over the last 20 years (US Department of Health and Human Services, 1982).

Table 2. NNN concentrations in cigarette, cigar, pipe and chewing tobacco, and cigarette and cigar mainstream and sidestream smoke^a

Tobacco product ^b	NNN concentration		
	In tobacco (mg/kg) ^c	In mainstream smoke (µg/cig)	In sidestream smoke (µg/cig)
Burley cigarette, NF	7.0	3.7	6.1
Bright cigarette, NF	0.2	0.6	1.7
Commercial cigarette, NF	1.7	0.2	1.7
Commercial cigarette, FA	1.4	0.3	0.2
US cigarettes ^d			
F	2.6	--	--
F	2.2	--	--
NF	1.8	--	--
NF, 70 mm	2.0	--	--
F, menthol	1.9	--	--
F, light	4.4	--	--
F, ultra-light	3.2	--	--
US cigarette, NF ^e	--	1.0	--
Kentucky 1R1 ^d	0.7	--	0.2
Kentucky 1R1, NF	0.6	0.4	--
German (Federal Republic) cigarettes ^f			
Brand A, NF	--	0.5	--
Brand B, NF	--	0.2	--
Brand C, FA	--	0.2	--
Brand D, FA	--	0.1	--
Brand E, FA	--	0.2	--
Brand F, FA	--	0.2	--
Commercial French cigarette, NF, 70 mm	2.9	0.5	--
Commercial French cigarettes, FA, 70 mm			
NF	2.7	0.5	--
FA	11.9	3.2	--
FA	11.9	0.0	--
FP	11.9	0.7	--
British cigarette, NF ^g	0.3	5.5	0.9
Little cigar, FA	45.0	3.2	16.6
Cigar (Columbian tobacco) (5.7 g)	10.7	--	--
Cigar ^h	2.9	--	--
Loose-leaf tobacco ^d	1.2	NA ^h	NA
Fine-cut chewing tobacco	39.0	NA	NA
Fine-cut chewing tobacco ^g	45.6	--	--
Japanese tobaccos ⁱ			
Cigarette 1	1.1	--	--
Cigarette 2	D	--	--
Cigarette 3	D	--	--
Cigarette 4	D	--	--
Cigarette 5	D	--	--
Cigarette 6	ND	--	--
Kiseru tobacco	1.8	--	--
Pipe tobacco 1	D	--	--
Pipe tobacco 2	ND	--	--
Pipe tobacco 3	ND	--	--
Chewing tobacco ^d			
Scrap-leaf A	3.5	NA	NA
Scrap-leaf B	3.9	NA	NA
Scrap-leaf C	8.2	NA	NA
Plug A	3.4	NA	NA
Plug B	4.3	NA	NA
Fine-cut	90.6	NA	NA
Indian tobacco for betel quid	2.4	NA	--
Pipe tobaccos ^j			
US	1.6	--	--
US	3.1	--	--

^aData from Hoffmann *et al.* (1980a), unless otherwise noted

^bAll cigarettes and the little cigar were 85 mm long, unless otherwise noted. Abbreviations: NF, non-filter; FA, cellulose acetate filter; FP, paper filter; F, unspecified filter

^cAbbreviations: D, presence doubtful; ND, not detected (detection limit, 0.01 mg/kg (Hecht *et al.*, 1975a))

^dData from Brunnemann *et al.* (1983b); products (excluding Kentucky 1R1) were purchased in Westchester County, NY, in 1982

^eData from Adams *et al.* (1983a); cigarettes and tobacco used were purchased in Westchester County, NY, in 1981

^fData from Rühl *et al.* (1980); cigarettes were popular brands purchased in Berlin in 1979

^gData from Hoffmann *et al.* (1976)

^hData from Bharadwaj *et al.* (1975)

ⁱNA, not applicable

^jData from Munson and Abdine (1977)

Table 3. Nicotine, normicotine and NNN concentrations in commercial snuff^a

Snuff origin	Type of packaging ^b	Nicotine (g/kg)	Normicotine (g/kg)	NNN (mg/kg) ^c
USA				
Brand I New York and Tennessee	A	23.8	0.6	39
Brand II New York and Tennessee	A	23.4	0.5	26.5
Brand III New York and Tennessee	B	14.5	0.3	3.5
Federal Republic of Germany				
Brand I Munich	C	5.7	0.8	6.7
Brand II Munich	C	5.4	0.6	6.1
Sweden				
Brand I Umeå	A	15.2	0.3	8.6
Brand I Uppsala	A	15.0	0.3	6.1
Brand I Lund	A	15.1	0.3	8.9
Brand II Umeå	A	18.1	0.2	8.4
Brand II Uppsala	A	18.0	0.2	5.2
Brand II Lund	A	18.1	0.2	10.3
Brand III Umeå	A	6.0	0.05	7.8
Brand III Uppsala	A	6.2	0.05	3.5
Brand III Lund	A	6.7	0.05	3.8
Brand IV Umeå	A	11.2	0.07	9.7
Brand IV Uppsala	A	11.2	0.06	77.1
Brand IV Lund	A	11.4	0.08	8.2
Brand V Umeå	D	21.7	0.9	4.7
Denmark (3)				
Brand I Copenhagen	E	11.1	0.8	6.4
Brand II Copenhagen	E	21.2	0.9	4.5
Brand III Copenhagen	E	30.5	0.6	8.0
Ageing test ^d : 0 time	—	—	—	4.7
8 days	—	—	—	6.3
Snuff and smokeless tobacco ^e				
US	—	—	—	3.2
US	—	—	—	9.3

^aData from Hoffmann and Adams (1981), unless otherwise noted; values are given for dry snuff, moisture content about 50%.

^bAbbreviations: A, waxed-paper container with metallic lid, containing approximately 50 g; B, 25 individual portions of approximately 11 g packaged in paper in a plastic container; C, plastic foil-lined aluminium bags containing 100 g; D, individual snuff portion in a paper bag packaged in a crimped airtight aluminium envelope, with 10 envelopes in a plastic bag amounting to approximately 10 g; E, hard-plastic container.

^cNNN values are averages of three runs.

^dData from Hoffmann *et al.* (1982). The aluminium foil-wrapped package (Swedish brand V) was opened at '0 time'.

^eData from Munson and Abdine (1977).

(b) Human tissues and secretions

Formation of additional quantities of NNN by the reaction of salivary nitrite with nicotine or normicotine during oral use of snuff or tobacco chewing has been implied from in-vitro studies (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981). Incubation of fine-cut chewing tobacco (for 3 h at 37°C) with saliva resulted in a value for NNN of 127 µg/g, an increase of 44% over the 88.6 µg/g found in the original chewing tobacco. A similar value, 133 µg/g, was obtained when fine-cut chewing tobacco was extracted with saliva for 18 h at 20°C (Hecht *et al.*, 1975a).

Saliva was examined from women who had been long-term oral-snuff users and who were employed in two southern US furniture companies. The wide range in NNN concentrations (5.0-125 ng/g) in the saliva of individual users indicated that during oral use of snuff NNN is extracted from the tobacco plug at varying rates (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981).

In another study, saliva of four women who were long-term (>10 years) oral-snuff users was analysed on two different days after they had used a specific brand of snuff with known concentrations of NNN. The results (Table 4) indicate that the saliva of users contains significant amounts of NNN and that the levels vary significantly between subjects, as well as between samples from the same individual taken on different days. The variations in NNN values were at least partially explained by differences in the intensity with which individuals practised the habit at different times, and perhaps also by varying rates of salivation (Hoffmann & Adams, 1981; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1982).

Table 4. Nicotine, normicotine and NNN concentrations in snuff and in the saliva of women who were long-term oral-snuff users^a

Subject	Age (years)	Snuff			Saliva ^b		
		Nicotine (mg/g)	Nor-nicotine (mg/g)	NNN (µg/g)	Day of sampling	Nicotine (mg/g)	NNN (µg/g)
1	41	23.4	0.05	26.5	1	0.2	0.2
					2	0.5	0.1
2	37	23.4	0.05	26.5	1	0.07	0.03
					2	0.4	0.1
3	44	23.4	0.05	23.1	1	1.2	0.4
					2	1.6	0.3
4	52	23.6	0.06	24.8	1	0.2	0.03
					2	0.4	0.06

^aData from Hoffmann and Adams (1981)

^bSaliva of three women who did not use snuff (controls) was free of nicotine and tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines.

NNN was not detected in the combined gastric juices of 14 volunteers who each smoked 28 cigarettes per day (Schweinsberg *et al.*, 1975). [The Working Group noted that analytical methods have improved since 1975-1977.]

NNN was found in the saliva of chewers of betel quid with tobacco at levels of 1.2-38 ng/g [mean, 13.1 ng/g] (Wenke *et al.*, 1984) and 1.6-14.7 ng/ml (mean, 7.5 ng/ml); it was also detected in the saliva of chewers of tobacco, at levels of 16.5-59.7 ng/ml (mean, 33.4 ng/ml) (Nair *et al.*, 1985).

2.3 Analysis

Standard methods for the analysis of NNN are described in detail in an IARC manual on selected methods of analysis (Egan *et al.*, 1983).

3. Biological Data Relevant to the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk to Humans

3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in animals

(a) Oral administration

Rat: A group of 20 male Fischer rats, seven weeks old, was given 200 mg/l NNN (purity, >99%; Hu *et al.*, 1974) in the drinking-water on five days per week for 30 weeks (esti-

mated total dose, 630 mg). Animals were killed when moribund or after 11 months, and all animals, except those lost by cannibalism or autolysis, were necropsied. All 12 rats necropsied from the treated groups had developed oesophageal tumours (11 papillomas and three carcinomas); in addition, one pharyngeal papilloma and three carcinomas of the nasal cavity with invasion of the brain were observed. No tumour was observed in 19 untreated controls (Hecht *et al.*, 1975b; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1975).

A group of 15 female Sprague-Dawley rats, eight weeks old, was given approximately 7 mg NNN [purification and characterization checked by ultraviolet and mass spectra] per rat per day in the drinking-water (354 mg/l) on five days per week for 44 weeks. All rats died within 46 weeks, and all had nasal-cavity adenocarcinomas. In addition, one squamous-cell papilloma of the oesophagus, one squamous-cell papilloma of the forestomach and one hepatocellular tumour occurred in three rats surviving 43 weeks or longer (Singer & Taylor, 1976). [The Working Group noted that no detail concerning parallel or historical control groups was reported.]

Groups of 12 male and 12 female Fischer 344 rats, six to eight weeks of age, received 0.012% (w/v) NNN (purity, >99%; Hu *et al.*, 1974) in the drinking-water continuously for 36 weeks (total doses, approximately 3.6 and 3.3 mmol, respectively). The combined incidence of oesophageal tumours in animals of both sexes, including squamous-cell carcinomas (six) and papillomas, was 23/24 rats by 11 months; all rats had died by month 12. Nasal-cavity tumours, including 15 benign and 15 malignant tumours, occurred in 21/24 rats. One female rat had a tracheal papilloma. No such tumour was reported in 12 male or 12 female controls (Hecht *et al.*, 1983a).

Two groups of 30 male Fischer 344 rats were pair-fed either a control liquid diet or an isocaloric liquid diet containing ethanol (6% w/v) starting at nine weeks of age. Starting at 13 weeks of age, rats were placed on control or ethanol liquid diets containing 17.5 mg/l NNN (purity, 98%) continuously, seven days per week for the following 27 weeks until each animal had consumed 1 mmol NNN (3.2-3.7 mmol/kg bw). Thereafter, the liquid diets were replaced by a standard diet, and rats were maintained until killed when moribund or when 98 weeks old (mean survival time, 83 weeks). Two control groups consisted of 26 rats receiving liquid diet with or without ethanol and receiving three injections per week of 0.9% saline solution [number of injections not specified, presumably 56-66]. At the end of the series of injections, the control rats were switched to standard diet and maintained and killed in parallel to the treated rats. All of the NNN-treated rats developed head-and-neck tumours (nasal cavity, oesophagus and tongue), whereas none of the controls had a tumour at these sites. In the group receiving NNN and ethanol, there were 20 benign tumours [not histologically classified], one aesthesioneuroepithelioma, three squamous-cell carcinomas and two anaplastic tumours of the nasal cavity; 13 benign tumours [not histologically classified]; seven squamous-cell carcinomas of the oesophagus; three benign tumours of the root of the tongue; and three adenocarcinomas of the lung. In the group receiving NNN but no ethanol, there were 11 benign tumours, two aesthesioneuroepitheliomas and five squamous-cell carcinomas of the nasal cavity; 16 benign tumours and nine squamous-cell carcinomas of the oesophagus; two benign tumours of the root of the tongue; and one squamous-cell carcinoma of the lung. Among 26 control rats given neither ethanol nor NNN there was one lung adenocarcinoma. Among 26 control rats given ethanol, there was one adenoma and one adenocarcinoma of the lung. Each group had a number of other benign or malignant tumours distributed among several tissues and organs, as would be expected in ageing rats (Castonguay *et al.*, 1984).

Hamster: Groups of 10 male and 10 female Syrian golden hamsters, six to seven weeks of age, received 0.016% (w/v) NNN (purity, >99%; Hu *et al.*, 1974) in the drinking-water con-

tinuously for 31 weeks (total doses, approximately 1.9 and 2.8 mmol). The experiment was terminated after 96 weeks. Papillomas of the nasal cavity developed in 4/20 animals and papillomas of the trachea in 2/20; one lymphoma of the caecum and one angiosarcoma of the liver also occurred. No such tumour occurred in 10 male or 10 female controls (Hecht *et al.*, 1983a).

(b) *Skin application*

Mouse: A group of 20 female Ha/ICR/mil Swiss mice, seven to eight weeks of age, received thrice-weekly applications of 0.1 ml of a 0.03% solution of NNN (purity, >99%; Hu *et al.*, 1974) in acetone for 50 weeks. No skin tumour developed in this group (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1976). [The Working Group noted that no data were available on tumours in other organs.]

(c) *Subcutaneous and/or intramuscular administration*

Rat: Groups of 12 male and 12 female Fischer 344 rats, seven weeks of age, received thrice-weekly s.c. injections of 10 mg [0.06 mmol] NNN (purity, >99%) in 0.3 ml trioctanoin for 20 weeks (total dose, 600 mg; 3.4 mmol). Animals were maintained until they died spontaneously or were killed after 12 months. Malignant tumours of the nasal cavity (15 olfactory neuroblastomas and two rhabdomyosarcomas) developed in 17/24 rats; in addition, 3/24 rats developed benign nasal-cavity tumours [this category included papillomas, adenomatous polyps and villous polyps, but the histological types of these three tumours were not stated explicitly], and another developed a lesion described as a neoplastic nodule of the liver. No such tumour was seen in 24 vehicle controls that received trioctanoin only (Hecht *et al.*, 1980b).

Three groups of 15-27 male and 15-27 female Fischer 344 rats, nine weeks of age, received thrice-weekly s.c. injections of NNN (purity, >99%; Hu *et al.*, 1974) in trioctanoin (total doses, 9.0, 3.0 or 1.0 mmol/kg bw), or trioctanoin alone (vehicle controls; 52 animals) for 20 weeks. Animals were killed when moribund or when only 20% of rats in a group were still alive. No animal was still alive after 60, 120 or 130 weeks in the three groups, respectively; no difference in body weight was observed between treated and control animals. Nasal-cavity tumours were found in 12/14 males and 15/15 females given the high dose; all were malignant aesthesioneuroepitheliomas, squamous-cell carcinomas, anaplastic carcinomas or spindle-cell sarcomas. In the medium-dose group, 8/15 males and 5/15 females had malignant nasal-cavity tumours, and 3/15 males and 4/15 females had benign nasal-cavity tumours (squamous-cell papillomas, transitional-cell papillomas or polyps). In the low-dose group, 4/27 males had malignant, and 11/27 males and 12/27 females had benign nasal-cavity tumours. Benign oesophageal tumours [histological type not reported] were seen in 4/14 males and 3/15 females in the high-dose group, 5/15 males and 2/15 females in the medium-dose group, and 1/27 males and 1/27 females in the low-dose group. In the three groups combined, four rats developed benign liver tumours, four, bladder tumours, one, a lung adenocarcinoma and 11, lung adenomas. The occurrence of nasal-cavity tumours suggests a dose-response relationship. Four benign liver tumours were observed in controls treated with trioctanoin only (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1984).

Two groups of 30 male Fischer 344 rats were pair-fed either a control liquid diet or an isocaloric liquid diet containing ethanol (6% w/v) starting at nine weeks of age. Starting at 13 weeks of age, each animal was injected s.c. with 10 mg/kg bw NNN (purity, 98%) in a 0.9% saline solution, three times per week until a total dose of 1 mmol/rat (3.2-3.7 mmol/kg;

56-66 injections) had been delivered. The liquid diets were replaced by a standard diet 24 h after the last injection. Rats were killed when moribund or when 98 weeks old (mean survival time, 83 weeks). Two control groups maintained on liquid diet with or without ethanol received s.c. injections of 0.9% saline solution without NNN [number of injections not specified, presumably 56-66] and were then switched to standard diet. Of the NNN-treated rats, 22/30 on the diet with ethanol and 26/30 on the diet without ethanol had head-and-neck tumours, whereas none were seen in controls with or without ethanol in the diet. In the group receiving NNN and ethanol, there were two benign tumours [not histologically classified], 17 aesthesioneuroepitheliomas, two squamous-cell carcinomas and one sarcoma of the nasal cavity; two benign tumours [not histologically classified] and one squamous-cell carcinoma of the oesophagus; and one benign tumour of the root of the tongue. No lung tumour was observed. In the group given NNN but not ethanol, there were four benign tumours, 18 aesthesioneuroepitheliomas, one squamous-cell carcinoma and one anaplastic tumour of the nasal cavity; no oesophageal or tongue tumour; and one lung adenoma. Among 26 control rats given neither ethanol nor NNN, there was one lung adenocarcinoma. Among 26 control rats given ethanol, there was one adenoma and one adenocarcinoma of the lung. Each group had a number of other benign or malignant tumours distributed among several tissues and organs, as would be expected in ageing rats (Castonguay *et al.*, 1984).

Groups of 15 male and 15 female Fischer 344 rats, six weeks of age, were given s.c. injections of 10 mg NNN, 2',5',5'-trideutero-NNN or 2'-deutero-NNN (purity, >99%; Chen *et al.*, 1979) in saline three times per week for 14 weeks (total of 41 injections; total dose, 410 mg/rat). All surviving animals were killed at 21 months. Controls received s.c. injections of saline alone. The mean length of survival was 13 months for the animals treated with NNN and 15 months for animals treated with the deuterated compounds. A total of 20 animals treated with NNN (males and females combined) had invasive olfactory tumours [unspecified]; the corresponding numbers for animals treated with 2',5',5'-trideutero-NNN and 2'-deutero-NNN were 15 and 13; no such tumour was seen in controls. No significant increase in the incidence of tumours at other sites was observed (Hecht *et al.*, 1982a).

Hamster. Groups of 10 male and 10 female Syrian golden hamsters, eight to 10 weeks of age, received thrice-weekly s.c. injections of 5 mg NNN (purity, >99%; Hu *et al.*, 1974) in saline for 25 weeks (total dose, 375 mg). A group of 10 males and 10 females received injections of saline only and served as vehicle controls. Animals were killed when moribund, or at termination of the experiment at 83 weeks. Of 19 effective animals, 12 developed single papillary tumours of the trachea within 83 weeks (first tumour after 38 weeks). One animal had an adenocarcinoma of the nasal cavity after 45 weeks. No such tumour was observed in 17 effective controls given saline only (Hilfrich *et al.*, 1977).

A group of 15 male and 15 female Syrian golden hamsters, eight to 10 weeks of age, received 19 s.c. injections of 8.5 mg (0.048 mmol) NNN (purity, >99%) in 0.3 ml trioctanoin on a three-injection-per-week schedule (total dose, 160 mg [0.91 mmol]). The experiment was terminated after 16 months. Survival rates were the same in treated and untreated animals. Among the 28 effective animals in the treated group, five tracheal papillomas, one lung adenoma and one tumour described as an 'undifferentiated carcinoma of the leg' were reported. A further group of 10 males and 10 females received thrice-weekly s.c. injections of 2.5 mg (0.012 mmol) NNN in trioctanoin for 25 weeks. The experiment was terminated after 17 months; after 13 months, 60% of the treated animals were still alive. Among the 18 effective animals, one tracheal papilloma and one adenocarcinoma of the lung were reported. No respiratory-tract tumour was observed in 30 vehicle controls receiving trioctanoin only (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1981).

(d) *Intraperitoneal administration*

Mouse: Groups of 20 male and 20 female Chester Beatty stock mice, approximately six weeks old, were injected i.p. once a week with 0.1 ml NNN [purity unspecified] dissolved in arachis oil (2%) for 41 weeks; 14 males and 11 females died during the first seven months with no tumour. Of eight animals that died after the eighth month, seven (five females and two males) had multiple pulmonary adenomas. Groups of 15 male and 15 female mice injected i.p. weekly with arachis oil served as vehicle controls; the only tumour reported among these 30 control mice was a single lung adenoma in a mouse killed at 11 months (Boyland *et al.*, 1964). These results were confirmed in A/HE mice (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1976).

In a screening assay for potential carcinogenicity using pulmonary adenomas as an end-point in strain A mice, a group of 21 female strain A/J mice, six to eight weeks old, received thrice-weekly i.p. injections of 1 mg NNN (purity, >99%; Hu *et al.*, 1974) in 0.2 ml saline for seven weeks (total of 22 injections; total dose, 22 mg [0.13 mmol]) and were held without further treatment for an additional 30 weeks. A further 23 mice received NNN in trioctanoin by the same schedule; and an untreated control group of 25 mice was available. Among the 23 mice that received NNN in trioctanoin, 12 had lung adenomas, one had a lung adenocarcinoma, one had an undifferentiated carcinoma of the salivary glands and one had a malignant lymphoma. Of the 21 mice that received NNN in saline, 16 had lung adenomas and one had an undifferentiated carcinoma of the salivary gland. In untreated, saline and trioctanoin controls, lung adenomas were seen in 1/25, 3/25 and 5/24 mice, respectively (Hecht *et al.*, 1978b).

In another study, female A/J mice, six to eight weeks old, received 22 thrice-weekly i.p. injections of NNN (purity, >99%; Hu *et al.*, 1974) or 2',5',5'-trideutero-NNN (purity, >99%; Chen *et al.*, 1979) in saline over seven weeks (total dose, 0.12 mmol). Animals were killed 30 weeks after the last injection. Of the treated mice, 16/24 animals developed lung tumours, compared with 7/24 controls receiving a saline solution. The total number of lung tumours in NNN-treated animals was 29, 10 of which were malignant, compared with nine (one malignant) in controls. No tumour was found in other organs. Of mice treated with 2',5',5'-trideutero-NNN, 20/25 had 37 lung tumours, 14 of which were malignant (Castonguay *et al.*, 1983a).

Hamster: Groups of 21 male Syrian golden hamsters received thrice-weekly i.p. injections of NNN (purity, >99%; Hu *et al.*, 1974) in saline for 25 weeks beginning at 13 weeks of age [total dose, 1 mmol (low-dose) or 2 mmol (high-dose)]. The animals were maintained on a liquid diet with or without ethanol, beginning at eight weeks of age. Of the 21 animals in the low-dose group receiving an ethanol-free diet, one developed an invasive nasal-cavity tumour (reported to be of olfactory origin but not further classified) and four developed tracheal papillomas. Of the high-dose group receiving an ethanol-free diet, 5/21 developed nasal-cavity tumours (olfactory but not further classified; two invasive), and 9/21 developed tracheal papillomas. A number of other tumours were observed; many of these were similar to those seen in vehicle controls, except for an adenosquamous-cell carcinoma of the lung. Ethanol did not appear to influence the tumorigenicity of NNN in this study (McCoy *et al.*, 1981a).

(e) *Carcinogenicity of metabolites*

In a screening assay for potential carcinogenicity using pulmonary adenomas as an end-point in strain A mice, groups of 25 female A/J mice, six to eight weeks old, received thrice-weekly i.p. injections of 0.2 ml 3'-hydroxy-NNN, 4'-hydroxy-NNN or NNN-1-N-oxide

(purity, >99%; Hecht *et al.*, 1980a) in saline for seven weeks (22 injections; total dose, 0.12 mmol) and were killed 30 weeks later. Twenty-five animals served as untreated controls, and 24 vehicle controls received saline only by the same schedule. Ten untreated controls had a total of 16 lung tumours, two of which were carcinomas [histological type not specified]; the average multiplicity of lung tumours per mouse was 0.6 ± 0.9 . Seven vehicle controls had a total of nine lung tumours, one of which was malignant; the average multiplicity was 0.4 ± 0.6 per mouse. Of mice treated with 3'-hydroxy-NNN, 12/25 had a total of 23 lung tumours, including six carcinomas, and 0.9 ± 1.4 lung tumours per mouse. In mice treated with 4'-hydroxy-NNN, 19/25 had lung tumours, with a total of 41 lung tumours, including 13 carcinomas, and an average multiplicity of 1.6 ± 1.5 lung tumours per mouse. Of 25 mice treated with NNN-1-N-oxide, 16 had a total of 21 lung tumours, of which six were carcinomas; the average multiplicity was 0.8 ± 0.7 lung tumours per mouse. Tumours of other organs included a gastric papilloma in a mouse treated with 3'-hydroxy-NNN and an angioma of the adrenal medulla in a mouse treated with NNN-1-N-oxide (Castonguay *et al.*, 1983a).

Rat: A group of 12 male and 12 female Fischer 344 rats, six to eight weeks of age, was given 0.012% (w/v) NNN-1-N-oxide (purity, >99%; Hecht *et al.*, 1980) in the drinking-water (0.012%, w/v) every day for 36 weeks; the experiment was terminated after 104 weeks. Oesophageal papillomas developed in 5/12 males and 0/12 females; squamous-cell carcinomas of the oesophagus developed in 3/12 males and 3/12 females. Nasal-cavity tumours (papillomas and/or carcinomas) were found in 11/12 males and 7/12 females. In addition, two pulmonary adenomas and two papillomas of the tongue developed in treated males. No such tumour was found in 12 male or 12 female control rats (Hecht *et al.*, 1983a).

Hamster: Groups of 10 male and 10 female Syrian golden hamsters, six to seven weeks of age, were given NNN-1-N-oxide in the drinking-water (0.016%, w/v) daily for 31 weeks; the experiment was terminated after 96 weeks. No tumour of the nasal cavity or trachea was reported (Hecht *et al.*, 1983a).

3.2 Other relevant biological data

(a) Experimental systems

Toxic effects

The subcutaneous LD₅₀ of NNN in male rats observed for eight days was >1000 mg/kg bw. In rats that died, haemorrhages were observed in the lungs and abdominal organs and epithelial-cell necrosis in the posterior nasal cavities and liver (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1975).

Effects on reproduction and prenatal toxicity

No data were available to the Working Group.

Absorption, distribution, excretion and metabolism

Single intravenous doses of 3.4-7 mg/kg bw [²-¹⁴C]NNN were distributed within 1-5 min throughout the tissues of C57Bl mice, as determined by whole-body autoradiography. After 24 h, non-extractable radioactivity was present in the tracheobronchial and nasal mucosa, liver, submaxillary and sublingual salivary glands, and oesophagus. Binding to the melanin of the eyes and hair was observed *in vivo* and *in vitro* (Brittebo & Tjälve, 1980; Waddell &

Marlowe, 1980, 1983). Single intravenous doses of 4-5 mg/kg bw [2 - 14 C]NNN were distributed in tissues of Fischer 344 or Sprague-Dawley rats within 5 min of injection. A high uptake of radioactivity was seen in the mucosa of the ethmo-, naso- and maxilloturbinates, in the submaxillary salivary glands, lachrymal glands, Zymbal glands, tarsal glands of the eyelids, preputial glands, oesophagus and tongue, and in the contents of the stomach. After 24 h, non-extractable radioactivity was present in the nasal, tracheobronchial and oesophageal mucosa, and in the liver (Brittebo & Tjälve, 1981).

Male Fischer 344 rats that received a subcutaneous injection of 3-300 mg/kg bw [2 - 14 C]NNN excreted 73-91% of the dose in urine over 48 h. Less than 1% of the dose was detected in expired air (Chen *et al.*, 1978; Hecht *et al.*, 1981b). Male Syrian golden hamsters that were given subcutaneous injections of 60 mg/kg bw [2 - 14 C]NNN excreted 62-78% of the dose in urine over 48 h, 10% in faeces and <0.5% in expired air as 14 CO $_2$ (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1981). Urine was also the major pathway of excretion in male A/J mice after intraperitoneal injection of 50 mg/kg bw [2 - 14 C]NNN (Hecht *et al.*, 1981b).

Metabolic pathways of NNN are summarized in Figure 1. The metabolites formed initially result from hydroxylation of each position of the pyrrolidine ring, giving compounds 2-5, and from oxidation of the pyridine nitrogen, yielding compound 1.

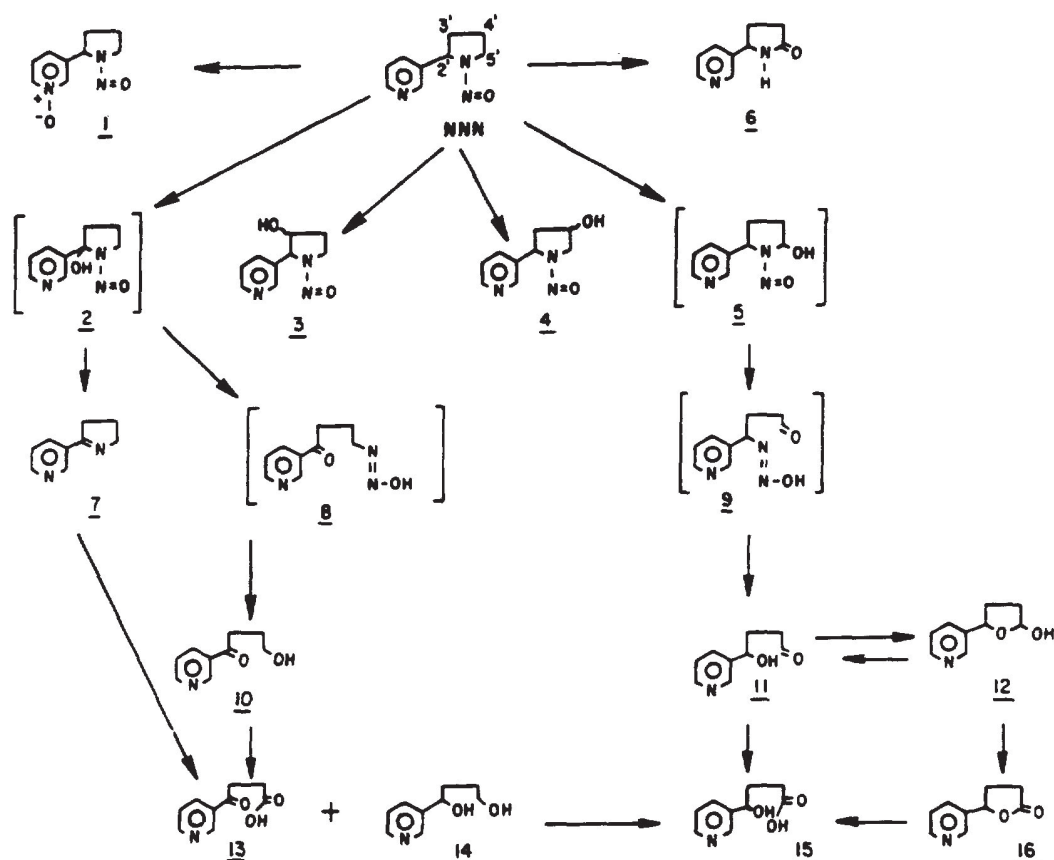
2'-Hydroxylation and 5'-hydroxylation are thought to be the major activation processes in NNN metabolism. 2'-Hydroxylation gives 2'-hydroxy-NNN (2), which is unstable and tautomerizes spontaneously to the electrophilic intermediate 8. This intermediate, which is also formed from 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (NNK) (see monograph, p. 209), induces mutations in *Salmonella typhimurium* (Chen *et al.*, 1978; Hecht *et al.*, 1983b). It also reacts with water to give 4-hydroxy-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (10), a major metabolite of NNN formed by rat-liver microsomes (Chen *et al.*, 1978, 1979). Metabolite 10 is further oxidized *in vivo* to give 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butyric acid (13), a major urinary metabolite of NNN in rats, hamsters and mice (Chen *et al.*, 1978). It accounted for 13-31% of a dose of NNN administered to Fischer 344 rats (Hecht *et al.*, 1981b) and 15% of one given to Syrian golden hamsters (Hoffmann *et al.*, 1981).

3'-Hydroxylation and 4'-hydroxylation of NNN lead to the formation of the stable metabolites, 3'- and 4'-hydroxy-NNN (3 and 4), which have been detected as minor urinary metabolites in Fischer 344 rats and as minor products of metabolism by Fischer 344 rat-liver microsomes (Hecht *et al.*, 1980a).

5'-Hydroxylation yields 5'-hydroxy-NNN (5), which is unstable and tautomerizes spontaneously to the electrophile 9. Since 5'-hydroxy-NNN is unstable, the corresponding acetate was tested, and was found to induce mutations in *S. typhimurium* (Chen *et al.*, 1978). Reaction of 9 with water gives 2-hydroxy-5-(3-pyridyl)tetrahydrofuran (12), a major metabolite of NNN formed by rat-liver microsomes (Chen *et al.*, 1978). Oxidation and ring-opening of this metabolite *in vivo* yield 4-hydroxy-4-(3-pyridyl)butyric acid (15), the principal urinary metabolite of NNN in rats (37-53% of the dose administered), hamsters (39% of the dose) and mice (Chen *et al.*, 1978; Hecht *et al.*, 1981b; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1981).

Pyridine-N-oxidation of NNN gives NNN-1-N-oxide (1), a stable metabolite formed by Fischer 344 rat-liver microsomes and excreted in the urine of Fischer 344 rats (7-11% of the dose administered) and Syrian golden hamsters (3% of the dose) (Hecht *et al.*, 1980a, 1981b; Hoffmann *et al.*, 1981). Another urinary metabolite of NNN, norcotinine (6), constituted 3-5% of a dose administered to rats (Hecht *et al.*, 1981b).

Figure 1. Metabolism of NNN. Structures in brackets represent hypothetical intermediates*



*From Hecht *et al.* (1981b). Compounds: 1, N'-nitrososornicotine-1-N-oxide (NNN-1-N-oxide); 3, 3'-hydroxy-N'-nitrososornicotine (3'-hydroxy-NNN); 4, 4'-hydroxy-N'-nitrososornicotine (4'-hydroxy-NNN); 5, norcotinine; 6, myosmine; 7, 4-hydroxy-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone; 10, 4-hydroxy-1-(3-pyridyl)butanal; 11, 2-hydroxy-5-(3-pyridyl)tetrahydrofuran; 12, 4-oxo-4-(3-pyridyl)butyric acid; 13, 4-hydroxy-4-(3-pyridyl)butanol; 14, 4-hydroxy-4-(3-pyridyl)butyric acid; 15, 5-(3-pyridyl)tetrahydrofuran-2-one.

Metabolism of NNN by 2'- and 5'-hydroxylation has been demonstrated in various animal tissues. Cultured Fischer 344 rat oesophagus and nasal mucosa, target tissues in which NNN induces tumours, metabolized NNN extensively, with preferential 2'-hydroxylation; the 2'- to 5'-hydroxylation ratios after 24 h were 3.4 and 1.8, respectively, as compared to a ratio of 0.3 in cultured Syrian golden hamster oesophagus, a non-target tissue (Hecht *et al.*, 1982b; Brittebo *et al.*, 1983). Pieces of rat nasal mucosa converted [2'-¹⁴C]NNN to tissue-bound metabolites more efficiently than either rat liver or oesophagus (Brittebo & Tjälve, 1981). In corroboration of these findings, Sprague-Dawley rats that received two intravenous injections of 0.18 mg/kg bw [2'-¹⁴C]NNN had greater tissue-bound radioactivity levels

in the nasal mucosa than in any other tissue one, 4 and 24 h after administration. Labeling of DNA was detected in the liver and in nasal mucosa (Löfberg *et al.*, 1982). Cultured A/J mouse peripheral lung principally metabolized NNN by 2'- and 5'-hydroxylation, giving a ratio of 2'- to 5'-hydroxylation of 0.6 24 h after administration (Castonguay *et al.*, 1983a).

The levels of 2'- and 5'-hydroxylation of NNN in various tissues are affected by inducers of the cytochrome-P-450 mixed-function oxidase system. Pretreatment of Fischer 344 rats with 500 mg/kg bw Aroclor 1254 four days prior to killing resulted in a 20-fold induction of 2'-hydroxylation and a 1.9-fold induction of 5'-hydroxylation in hepatic microsomes (Chen *et al.*, 1979). Pretreatment of Fischer 344 rats with 80 mg/kg bw per day phenobarbital intraperitoneally for four days prior to killing increased hepatic microsomal 2'-hydroxylation 1.5-fold but had no effect on 5'-hydroxylation; pretreatment of Syrian golden hamsters by the same protocol had no effect on 2'-hydroxylation but increased 5'-hydroxylation 2.5-fold; pretreatment of Fischer 344 rats with 20 mg/kg bw per day 3-methylcholanthrene intraperitoneally for four days prior to killing increased 2'-hydroxylation 2.7-fold but caused a 2.2-fold decrease in 5'-hydroxylation in hepatic microsomes; no effect was observed in hamsters (McCoy *et al.*, 1981b).

Administration of a liquid diet, in which ethanol isocalorically replaced carbohydrate, to Syrian golden hamsters for four weeks resulted in a 1.8-fold increase in liver microsomal 5'-hydroxylation but did not affect 2'-hydroxylation. No effect of ethanol on NNN metabolism was observed in cultured tracheal rings (Chen *et al.*, 1980; McCoy *et al.*, 1982). Treatment of male Fischer 344 rats with a liquid diet containing ethanol for four weeks caused a 1.5-fold increase in 2'-hydroxylation and a 1.7-fold increase in 5'-hydroxylation in cultured nasal mucosa; no effect was observed in cultured lingual mucosa or oesophagus (Castonguay *et al.*, 1984). Pretreatment of male Fischer 344 rats with a variety of isothiocyanates and related compounds, either by gavage 2 h prior to killing or in the diet for two weeks prior to killing, generally caused an inhibition of 2'- and 5'-hydroxylation in cultured rat oesophagus (Chung *et al.*, 1984).

Mutagenicity and other short-term tests

In the presence of a liver microsomal preparation from Aroclor-induced rats, NNN (highest dose tested, 2.5 $\mu\text{mol/plate}$) caused a dose-dependent increase in mutations in *Salmonella typhimurium* TA100 (Bartsch *et al.*, 1980) and induced mutations in strain TA1530 at 1000 $\mu\text{g/plate}$ (5.7 $\mu\text{mol/plate}$) (Andrews *et al.*, 1978).

NNN (10^{-3} and 10^{-2}M) induced unscheduled DNA synthesis in freshly isolated hepatocytes from adult rats (Williams & Laspia, 1979).

(b) Humans

No data were available to the Working Group on toxic effects or on effects on reproduction and prenatal toxicity.

Absorption, distribution, excretion and metabolism

Human liver microsomes obtained from biopsies catalysed 2'- and 5'-hydroxylation of NNN and gave a 2'- to 5'-hydroxylation ratio of 0.6 (Hecht *et al.*, 1979). Human tissues obtained at immediate autopsy and cultured for 24 h with $[2\text{'-}^{14}\text{C}]$ NNN metabolized NNN to compounds 1 and 15 (see Fig. 1) by N-oxidation and 5'-hydroxylation, respectively, as follows (values in nmol/100 μg DNA): buccal mucosa, 0.2 ± 0.2 and 0.03 ± 0.03 ; trachea, 0.7

± 0.7 and 0.2 ± 0.1 ; oesophagus, 0.2 ± 0.2 and 0.4 ± 0.9 ; bronchus, 0.8 ± 1.1 and 0.9 ± 1.7 ; peripheral lung, 0.5 ± 0.2 and 0.4 ± 0.7 ; urinary bladder, 2.4 ± 3.4 and 1.1 ± 1.8 . Metabolite 13 (see Fig. 1), formed by 2'-hydroxylation, was detected in only a few explants. The ratio of compounds 1 to 15 was different in human tissues from that in the corresponding tissues of animals (Castonguay *et al.*, 1983b).

Mutagenicity and chromosomal effects

No data were available to the Working Group.

3.3 Case reports and epidemiological studies of carcinogenicity to humans

No data were available to the Working Group.

4. Summary of Data Reported and Evaluation

4.1 Exposure data

N'-Nitrosonornicotine (NNN) has been found in a variety of tobacco products (chewing tobacco, snuff, cigarettes and cigars), in mainstream and sidestream smoke from cigars and cigarettes, in saliva of chewers of betel quid with tobacco and in saliva of oral-snuff users. Some of the NNN in saliva appears to be formed endogenously from nitrite in saliva and tobacco alkaloids. Thus, there is widespread exposure to NNN among users of tobacco products and those exposed to sidestream smoke.

4.2 Experimental data

NNN was tested for carcinogenicity in rats, mice and hamsters by different routes of administration in multiple experiments. Following its oral administration, NNN produced carcinomas of the upper digestive tract, mainly the oesophagus, and of the nasal cavity in rats and nasal-cavity tumours in hamsters. Following its subcutaneous administration, NNN produced primarily tumours of the nasal cavity in rats and tumours of the trachea in hamsters. Intraperitoneal injection produced lung tumours in mice and tumours of the nasal cavity and trachea in hamsters. There was evidence of a dose-response relationship after subcutaneous administration of NNN to rats.

Several metabolites of NNN were tested in mice by intraperitoneal injection, producing lung tumours. NNN-1-N-oxide was also tested in rats and hamsters by oral administration; it produced nasal-cavity and oesophageal tumours in rats.

NNN is mutagenic to *Salmonella typhimurium* in the presence of an exogenous metabolic system. It induces unscheduled DNA synthesis in primary cultures of rat hepatocytes.

4.3 Human data

No case report or epidemiological study of the carcinogenicity of NNN was available to the Working Group.

Overall assessment of data from short-term tests: *N*-Nitrosornicotine^a

	Genetic activity			Cell transformation
	DNA damage	Mutation	Chromosomal effects	
Prokaryotes		+		
Fungi/green plants				
Insects				
Mammalian cells (in vitro)	+			
Mammals (in vivo)				
Humans (in vivo)				
Degree of evidence in short-term tests for genetic activity: Limited				Cell transformation: No data

^aThe groups into which the table is divided and '+' are defined on pp. 16-17 of the Preamble; the degrees of evidence are defined on p. 18.

4.4 Evaluation¹

There is *sufficient evidence*² for the carcinogenicity of *N*-nitrosornicotine to experimental animals.

No data on humans were available.

5. References

- Adams, J.D., Brunnemann, K.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1983a) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXXV. Rapid method for the analysis of tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines by gas-liquid chromatography with a thermal energy analyzer. *J. Chromatogr.*, 256, 347-351
- Adams, J.D., Lee, S.J., Vinchkoski, N., Castonguay, A. & Hoffmann, D. (1983b) On the formation of the tobacco-specific carcinogen 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone during smoking. *Cancer Lett.*, 17, 339-346
- Adams, J.D., Lee, S.J. & Hoffmann, D. (1984) Carcinogenic agents in cigarette smoke and the influence of nitrate on their formation. *Carcinogenesis*, 5, 221-223

¹For description of the italicized term, see Preamble, pp. 15-16.

²In the absence of adequate data on humans, it is reasonable, for practical purposes, to regard chemicals for which there is *sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity in animals, as if they presented a carcinogenic risk to humans.

- Andersen, R.A., Kasperbauer, M.J., Burton, H.R., Hamilton, J.L. & Yoder, E.E. (1982) Changes in chemical composition of homogenized leaf-cured and air-cured burley tobacco stored in controlled environments. *J. agric. Food Chem.*, **30**, 663-668
- Andrews, A.W., Thibault, L.H. & Lijinsky, W. (1978) The relationship between mutagenicity and carcinogenicity of some nitrosamines. *Mutat. Res.*, **51**, 319-326
- Bartsch, H., Malaveille, C., Camus, A.-M., Martel-Planche, G., Brun, G., Hautefeuille, A., Sabadie, N., Barbin, A., Kuroki, T., Drevon, C., Piccoli, C. & Montesano, R. (1980) *Bacterial and mammalian mutagenicity tests: Validation and comparative studies on 180 chemicals*. In: Montesano, R., Bartsch, H. & Tomatis, L., eds, *Molecular and Cellular Aspects of Carcinogen Screening Tests (IARC Scientific Publications No. 27)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 179-241
- Bharadwaj, V.P., Takayama, S., Yamada, T. & Tanimura, A. (1975) N'-Nitrosornicotine in Japanese tobacco products. *Gann*, **66**, 585-586
- Boylard, E., Roe, F.J.C. & Gorrod, J.W. (1964) Induction of pulmonary tumours in mice by nitrosornicotine, a possible constituent of tobacco smoke. *Nature*, **202**, 1126
- Brittebo, E. & Tjälve, H. (1980) Autoradiographic observations on the distribution and metabolism of N'-¹⁴C/nitrosornicotine in mice. *J. Cancer Res. clin. Oncol.*, **98**, 233-242
- Brittebo, E.B. & Tjälve, H. (1981) Formation of tissue-bound N'-nitrosornicotine metabolites by the target tissues of Sprague-Dawley and Fisher rats. *Carcinogenesis*, **2**, 959-963
- Brittebo, E.B., Castonguay, A., Furuya, K. & Hecht, S.S. (1983) Metabolism of tobacco-specific nitrosamines by cultured rat nasal mucosa. *Cancer Res.*, **43**, 4343-4348
- Brunnemann, K.D., Hecht, S.S. & Hoffmann, D. (1983a) N-Nitrosamines: Environmental occurrence, in vivo formation and metabolism. *J. toxicol.-clin. Toxicol.*, **19**, 661-688
- Brunnemann, K.D., Scott, J.C. & Hoffmann, D. (1983b) N-Nitrosoproline, an indicator for N-nitrosation of amines in processed tobacco. *J. agric. Food Chem.*, **31**, 905-909
- Castonguay, A., Lin, D., Stoner, G.D., Radok, P., Furuya, K., Hecht, S.S., Schut, H.A.J. & Klaunig, J.E. (1983a) Comparative carcinogenicity in A/J mice and metabolism by cultured mouse peripheral lung of N'-nitrosornicotine, 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone, and their analogues. *Cancer Res.*, **43**, 1223-1129
- Castonguay, A., Stoner, G.D., Schut, H.A.J. & Hecht, S.S. (1983b) Metabolism of tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines by cultured human tissues. *Proc. natl Acad. Sci. USA*, **80**, 6694-6697
- Castonguay, A., Rivenson, A., Trushin, N., Reinhardt, J., Spathopoulos, S., Weiss, C.J., Reiss, B. & Hecht, S.S. (1984) Effects of chronic ethanol consumption on the metabolism and carcinogenicity of N'-nitrosornicotine in F344 rats. *Cancer Res.*, **44**, 2285-2290
- Chamberlain, W.J. & Arrendale, R.F. (1983) An alternate method for the analysis of N-nitrosornicotine in tobacco. *J. agric. Food Chem.*, **31**, 909-911

- Chen, C.-H.B., Hecht, S.S. & Hoffmann, D. (1978) Metabolic α -hydroxylation of the tobacco-specific carcinogen, *N*'-nitrosoornicotine. *Cancer Res.*, **38**, 3639-3645
- Chen, C.-H.B., Fung, P.T. & Hecht, S.S. (1979) Assay for microsomal α -hydroxylation of *N*'-nitrosoornicotine and determination of the deuterium isotope effect for α -hydroxylation. *Cancer Res.*, **39**, 5057-5062
- Chen, C.B., Hecht, S.S., McCoy, G.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1980) Assays for metabolic α -hydroxylation of *N*'-nitrosoornicotine and *N*-nitrosopyrrolidine and the influence of modifying factors. In: Walker, E.A., Gricute, L., Castegnaro, M. & Börzsönyi, M., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Analysis, Formation and Occurrence* (IARC Scientific Publications No. 31), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 349-359
- Chung, F.-L., Juchatz, A., Vitarius, J. & Hecht, S.S. (1984) Effects of dietary compounds on α -hydroxylation of *N*-nitrosopyrrolidine and *N*'-nitrosoornicotine in rat target tissues. *Cancer Res.*, **44**, 2924-2928
- Egan, H., Preussmann, R., O'Neill, I.K., Eisenbrand, G., Spiegelhalder, B. & Bartsch, H., eds (1983) *Environmental Carcinogens. Selected Methods of Analysis*, Vol. 6, *N-Nitroso Compounds* (IARC Scientific Publications No. 45), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer
- Hecht, S.S., Ornaf, R.M. & Hoffmann, D. (1975a) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. XXXIII. *N*'-Nitrosoornicotine in tobacco: Analysis of possible contributing factors and biologic implications. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, **54**, 1237-1244
- Hecht, S.S., Raineri, R., Maronpot, R., Hoffmann, D. & Wynder, E.L. (1975b) *N*'-Nitrosoornicotine: Presence and origin in tobacco and carcinogenicity in rats (Abstract No. 605). *Proc. Am. Assoc. Cancer Res.*, **16**, 152
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Ornaf, R.M., Hoffmann, D. & Tso, T.C. (1978a) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LVI. Tobacco specific nitrosamines: Origins, carcinogenicity and metabolism. In: Walker, E.A., Castegnaro, M., Gricute, L. & Lyle, R.E., eds, *Environmental Aspects of N-Nitroso Compounds* (IARC Scientific Publications No. 19), Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 395-413
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Hirota, N., Ornaf, R.M., Tso, T.C. & Hoffmann, D. (1978b) Tobacco-specific nitrosamines: Formation from nicotine *in vitro* and during tobacco curing and carcinogenicity in strain A mice. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, **60**, 819-824
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., McCoy, G.D., Hoffmann, D. & Domellöf, L. (1979) α -Hydroxylation of *N*-nitrosopyrrolidine and *N*'-nitrosoornicotine by human liver microsomes. *Cancer Lett.*, **8**, 35-41
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B. & Hoffmann, D. (1980a) Metabolic β -hydroxylation and *N*-oxidation of *N*'-nitrosoornicotine. *J. med. Chem.*, **23**, 1175-1178
- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Ohmori, T. & Hoffmann, D. (1980b) Comparative carcinogenicity in F344 rats of the tobacco-specific nitrosamines, *N*'-nitrosoornicotine and 4-(*N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone. *Cancer Res.*, **40**, 298-302

- Hecht, S.S., Chen, C.-H.B., Young, R. & Hoffmann, D. (1981a) Mass spectra of tobacco alkaloid-derived nitrosamines, their metabolites, and related compounds. *Beitr. Tabakforsch. int.*, 11, 57-66
- Hecht, S.S., Lin, D. & Chen, C.-H.B. (1981b) Comprehensive analysis of urinary metabolites of N'-nitrosonornicotine. *Carcinogenesis*, 2, 833-838
- Hecht, S.S., Young, R., Rivenson, A. & Hoffmann, D. (1982a) On the metabolic activation of N-nitrosomorpholine and N'-nitrosonornicotine: Effects of deuterium substitution. In: Bartsch, H., O'Neill, I.K., Castegnaro, M. & Okada, M., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Occurrence and Biological Effects (IARC Scientific Publications No. 41)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 499-507
- Hecht, S.S., Reiss, B., Lin, D. & Williams, G.M. (1982b) Metabolism of N'-nitrosonornicotine by cultured rat esophagus. *Carcinogenesis*, 3, 453-456
- Hecht, S.S., Young, R. & Masura, Y. (1983a) Comparative carcinogenicity in F344 rats and Syrian golden hamsters of N'-nitrosonornicotine and N'-nitrosonornicotine-1-N-oxide. *Cancer Lett.*, 20, 333-340
- Hecht, S.S., Lin, D. & Castonguay, A. (1983b) Effects of α -deuterium substitution on the mutagenicity of 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (NNK). *Carcinogenesis*, 4, 305-310
- Hilfrich, J., Hecht, S.S. & Hoffmann, D. (1977) A study of tobacco carcinogenesis. XV. Effects of N'-nitrosonornicotine and N'-nitrosoanabasine in Syrian golden hamsters. *Cancer Lett.*, 2, 169-175
- Hoffmann, D. & Adams, J.D. (1981) Carcinogenic tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in snuff and in the saliva of snuff dippers. *Cancer Res.*, 41, 4305-4308
- Hoffmann, D. & Hecht, S.S. (1983) Tobacco and tobacco smoke (volatile and tobacco-specific nitrosamines). General aspects. In: Egan, H., Preussmann, R., O'Neill, I.K., Eisenbrand, G., Spiegelhalder, B. & Bartsch, H., eds, *Environmental Carcinogens. Selected Methods of Analysis*, Vol. 6, *N-Nitroso Compounds (IARC Scientific Publications No. 45)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 63-67
- Hoffmann, D., Hecht, S.S., Ornaf, R.M. & Wynder, E.L. (1974) N'-Nitrosonornicotine in tobacco. *Science*, 186, 265-267
- Hoffmann, D., Raineri, R., Hecht, S.S., Maronpot, R. & Wynder, E.L. (1975) A study of tobacco carcinogenesis. XIV. Effects of N'-nitrosonornicotine and N'-nitrosoanabasine in rats. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, 55, 977-981
- Hoffmann, D., Hecht, S.S., Ornaf, R.M., Wynder, E.L. & Tso, T.C. (1976) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. XLII. Nitrosonornicotine: Presence in tobacco, formation and carcinogenicity. In: Walker, E.A., Bogovski, P. & Gričute, L., eds, *Environmental N-Nitroso Compounds. Analysis and Formation (IARC Scientific Publications No. 14)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 307-320
- Hoffmann, D., Adams, J.D., Brunnemann, K.D. & Hecht, S.S. (1979) Assessment of tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in tobacco products. *Cancer Res.*, 39, 2505-2509

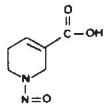
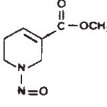
- Hoffmann, D., Chen, C.-H.B. & Hecht, S.S. (1980a) *The role of volatile and nonvolatile N-nitrosamines in tobacco carcinogenesis*. In: Gori, G.B. & Bock, F.G., eds, *A Safe Cigarette? (Banbury Report No. 3)*, Cold Spring Harbor, NY, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, pp. 113-127
- Hoffmann, D., Adams, J.D., Piade, J.J. & Hecht, S.S. (1980b) *Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXVIII. Analysis of volatile and tobacco-specific nitrosamines in tobacco products*. In: Walker, E.A., Castegnaro, M., Gričute, L. & Börzsönyi, M., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Analysis, Formation and Occurrence (IARC Scientific Publications No. 31)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 507-516
- Hoffmann, D., Castonguay, A., Rivenson, A. & Hecht, S.S. (1981) Comparative carcinogenicity and metabolism of 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone and N'-nitroso-nornicotine in Syrian golden hamsters. *Cancer Res.*, 41, 2386-2393
- Hoffmann, D., Adams, J.D., Brunnemann, K.D., Rivenson, A. & Hecht, S.S. (1982) *Tobacco specific N-nitrosamines: Occurrence and bioassays*. In: Bartsch, H., O'Neill, I.K., Castegnaro, M. & Okada, M., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Occurrence and Biological Effects (IARC Scientific Publications No. 41)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 309-318
- Hoffmann, D., Rivenson, A., Amin, S. & Hecht, S.S. (1984) Dose-response study of the carcinogenicity of tobacco-specific N-nitrosamines in F344 rats. *J. Cancer Res. clin. Oncol.*, 108, 81-86
- Hu, M.W., Bondinell, W.E. & Hoffmann, D. (1974) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. XXIII. Synthesis of carbon-14 labelled myosmine, nornicotine and N'-nitrososnornicotine. *J. labelled Compd.*, 10, 79-88
- IARC (1978) *IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of the Carcinogenic Risk of Chemicals to Humans*, Vol. 17, *Some N-Nitroso Compounds*, Lyon, pp. 281-286
- Klimisch, H.J. & Stadler, L. (1976) The formation of N-nitrososnornicotine from nicotine-N'-oxide (Ger.). *Talanta*, 23, 614-616
- Klus, H. & Kuhn, H. (1975) Studies on the nonvolatile N-nitrosamines of the tobacco alkaloids (Ger.). *Fachl. Mitt. Austria Tabakwerke*, 16, 307-317
- Löfberg, B., Brittebo, E.B. & Tjälve, H. (1982) Localization and binding of N'-nitrososnornicotine metabolites in the nasal region and in some other tissues of Sprague-Dawley rats. *Cancer Res.*, 42, 2877-2883
- McCoy, G.D., Hecht, S.S., Katayama, S. & Wynder, E.L. (1981a) Differential effect of chronic ethanol consumption on the carcinogenicity of N-nitrosopyrrolidine and N'-nitrososnornicotine in male Syrian golden hamsters. *Cancer Res.*, 41, 2849-2854
- McCoy, G.D., Chen, C.-H.B. & Hecht, S.S. (1981b) Influence of mixed-function oxidase inducers on the in vitro metabolism of N'-nitrososnornicotine by rat and hamster liver microsomes. *Drug Metab. Disposition*, 9, 168-169
- McCoy, G., Katayama, S., Young, R., Wyatt, M. & Hecht, S.S. (1982) *Influence of chronic ethanol consumption on the metabolism and carcinogenicity of tobacco-related nitros-*

- amines. In: Bartsch, H., O'Neill, I.K., Castegnaro, M. & Okada, M., eds, *N-Nitroso Compounds: Occurrence and Biological Effects (IARC Scientific Publications No. 41)*, Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, pp. 635-642
- Munson, J.W. & Abdine, H. (1977) Determination of *N*-nitrosonornicotine in tobacco by gas chromatography/mass spectroscopy. *Anal. Lett.*, **10**, 777-786
- Nair, J., Ohshima, H., Friesen, M., Croisy, A., Bhide, S.V. & Bartsch, H. (1985) Tobacco-specific and betel nut-specific *N*-nitroso compounds: Occurrence in saliva and urine of betel quid chewers and formation *in vitro* by nitrosation of betel quid. *Carcinogenesis*, **6**, 295-303
- Neurath, G. & Duenger, M. (1966) *N*-Nitroso compounds from tobacco alkaloids (Ger.). *Beitr. Tabakforsch. int.*, **3**, 339-345 [*Chem. Abstr.*, **67**, 64605s]
- Rühl, C., Adams, J.D. & Hoffmann, D. (1980) Chemical studies on tobacco smoke. LXVI. Comparative assessment of volatile and tobacco-specific *N*-nitrosamines in the smoke of selected cigarettes from the USA, West Germany and France. *J. anal. Toxicol.*, **4**, 255-259
- Schweinsberg, F., Sander, J., Schweinsberg, E. & Kollat, P. (1975) Possibility of nitrosation of nicotine and nor nicotine and of the formation of *N*-nitrosonornicotine in the stomach of smokers (Ger.). *Z. Krebsforsch.*, **84**, 81-87
- Singer, G.M. & Taylor, H.W. (1976) Carcinogenicity of *N*'-nitrosonornicotine in Sprague-Dawley rats. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, **57**, 1275-1276
- Sipahimalani, A.T., Chadha, M.S., Bhide, S.V., Pratap, A.I. & Nair, J. (1984) Detection of *N*-nitrosamines in the saliva of habitual chewers of tobacco. *Food Chem. Toxicol.*, **22**, 261-264
- US Department of Health and Human Services (1981) *The Health Consequences of Smoking, The Changing Cigarette, A Report of the Surgeon General (DHHS(PHS)81-50156)*, Rockville, MD, Public Health Service, Office on Smoking and Health, p. 34
- US Department of Health and Human Services (1982) *The Health Consequences of Smoking, Cancer, A Report of the Surgeon General (DHHS(PHS)82-50179)*, Rockville, MD, Public Health Service, Office on Smoking and Health, p. 208
- Waddell, W.J. & Marlowe, C. (1980) Localization of [¹⁴C]nitrosonornicotine in tissues of the mouse. *Cancer Res.*, **40**, 3518-3523
- Waddell, W.J. & Marlowe, C. (1983) Inhibition by alcohols of the localization of radioactive nitrosonornicotine in sites of tumor formation. *Science*, **221**, 51-53
- Wenke, G., Brunnemann, K.D., Hoffmann, D. & Bhide, S.V. (1984) A study of betel quid carcinogenesis. IV. Analysis of the saliva of betel chewers: A preliminary report. *J. Cancer Res. clin. Oncol.*, **108**, 110-113
- Williams, G.M. & Laspia, M.F. (1979) The detection of various nitrosamines in the hepatocyte primary culture/DNA repair test. *Cancer Lett.*, **6**, 199-206

SOME N-NITROSAMINES DERIVED FROM ARECA-NUT ALKALOIDS

1. Chemical and Physical Data

1.1 Synonyms and structural and molecular formulae

Chemical name [Chem. Abstr. Services Reg. No.]	Chem. Abstr. Name [Synonym] IUPAC Systematic Name	Structural and molecular formulae and molecular weight
3-Methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde [85502-23-4]	Propanal, 3-(methylnitrosoamino)- [MNPA] 3-(Methylnitrosamino)propionaldehyde	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3-\text{N}-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHO} \\ \\ \text{N}=\text{O} \end{array}$ $\text{C}_4\text{H}_8\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$ Mol. wt: 116.1
3-Methylnitrosaminopropionitrile [60153-49-3]	Propanenitrile, 3-(methylnitrosoamino)-[MNPN] 3-(Methylnitrosamino)propionitrile	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3-\text{N}-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{C}\equiv\text{N} \\ \\ \text{N}=\text{O} \end{array}$ $\text{C}_4\text{H}_7\text{N}_3\text{O}$ Mol. wt: 113.1
N-Nitrosoguvacine [55557-01-2]	3-Pyridinecarboxylic acid, 1,2,5,6-tetrahydro-1-nitroso- [NGC; nitrosoguvacine] 1,2,5,6-Tetrahydro-1-nitroso- nicotinic acid	 $\text{C}_6\text{H}_8\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$ Mol. wt: 156.1
N-Nitrosoguvacoline [55557-02-3]	3-Pyridinecarboxylic acid, 1,2,5,6-tetrahydro-1-nitroso- methyl ester [NGL; NGL; nitrosoguvacoline] Methyl 1,2,5,6-tetrahydro-1- nitrosonicotinate	 $\text{C}_7\text{H}_{10}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3$ Mol. wt: 170.2

1.2 Chemical and physical properties*

Chemical/physical property	MNPA	MNPN	NGC	NGL
(a) Description	No data	Light-yellow liquid (Chang <i>et al.</i> , 1976)	Colourless, crystal- line solid (Lijinsky & Taylor, 1976)	Yellow oil (Lijinsky & Taylor, 1976)
(b) Melting-point	No data	No data	175.5-177°C (Lijinsky & Taylor, 1976)	No data
(c) Boiling-point	No data	102-103°C (0.04 mm Hg) (Chang <i>et al.</i> , 1976); 97°C (0.075 mm Hg) (Wenke & Hoffmann, 1983)	No data	137-178°C (4 mm) (Lijinsky & Taylor, 1976)
(d) Spectroscopy data	NMR and MS data have been reported (Wenke & Hoffmann, 1983) Synthetic MNPA is a mixture of E- and Z-isomers in a ratio of 1.4 (Wenke & Hoffmann, 1983)	IR, NMR and MS data have been reported (Chang <i>et al.</i> , 1976; Wenke & Hoffmann, 1983) Synthetic MNPN is a mixture of E- and Z-isomers in a ratio of 1.7 (Wenke & Hoffmann, 1983)	MS data have been reported (Rainey <i>et al.</i> , 1978)	MS data have been reported (Rainey <i>et al.</i> , 1978) Synthetic NGL is a mixture of E- and Z-isomers in a ratio of 2.5 (Wenke & Hoffmann, 1983)

*Abbreviations: MNPA, 3-methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde; MNPN, 3-methylnitrosaminopropionitrile; NGC, N-nitrosoguvacine; NGL, N-nitrosoguvacoline; NMR, ^1H -nuclear magnetic resonance; MS, mass spectrometry; MS, mass spectrometry; IR, infrared

2. Production, Use, Occurrence and Analysis

2.1 Production and use

3-Methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde was prepared by Wenke and Hoffmann (1983) by the reaction of 3-methylaminopropionaldehyde diethyl acetal with nitrite, followed by hydrolysis. 3-Methylnitrosaminopropionitrile was prepared by Chang *et al.* (1976) by the reaction of sodium nitrite with a solution of 3-methylaminopropionitrile hydrochloride. *N*-Nitrosoguvacine was prepared by Lijinsky and Taylor (1976) by nitrosation of guvacine that was synthesized from 3-carbethoxy-4-piperidone by hydrogenation to the piperidonol, followed by dehydration and de-esterification with hydrogen chloride gas at 200°C, followed by esterification with diazomethane. *N*-Nitrosoguvacoline was also prepared by Lijinsky and Taylor (1976) using the same process as that for *N*-nitrosoguvacine.

In in-vitro experiments, *N*-nitrosation of arecoline, the major alkaloid of the areca nut, resulted in the formation of *N*-nitrosoguvacoline, 3-methylnitrosaminopropionitrile and 3-methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde (Wenke & Hoffmann, 1983).

No evidence was found that any of these compounds has ever been produced in commercial quantities or has any use other than as a laboratory chemical.

2.2 Occurrence

N-Nitrosoguvacoline was found in the saliva of chewers of betel quid with tobacco at levels of 4.3-350 ng/g (mean, 75 ng/g) (Wenke *et al.*, 1984a) and up to 7.1 ng/ml (mean, 0.9 ng/ml) (Nair *et al.*, 1985); it has been found in the saliva of chewers of betel quid alone at levels of 2.2-9.5 ng/g (mean, 5.6 ng/g) (Wenke *et al.*, 1984a) and up to 5.9 ng/ml (mean, 0.9 ng/ml) (Nair *et al.*, 1985) and in the saliva of cigarette smokers at levels of 1.2-7.6 ng/g (Wenke *et al.*, 1984a).

N-Nitrosoguvacine was found in the saliva of chewers of betel quid with tobacco at levels of up to 30.4 ng/ml (mean, 4.0 ng/ml) and in the saliva of chewers of betel quid alone at levels of up to 26.6 ng/ml (mean, 3.2 ng/ml) (Nair *et al.*, 1985).

In-vitro experiments support the hypothesis that, during the chewing of betel quid, nitrosation of arecoline, the major alkaloid of areca nut, produces *N*-nitrosoguvacoline, 3-methylnitrosaminopropionitrile and 3-methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde. It was concluded that the conditions prevailing in the oral cavity of betel-quid chewers are likely to favour the formation of these three compounds (Wenke & Hoffmann, 1983; Wenke *et al.*, 1984b).

2.3 Analysis

Wenke and Hoffmann (1983) reported a method for analysis of 3-methylnitrosaminopropionitrile, 3-methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde and *N*-nitrosoguvacoline by a technique using gas chromatography with a thermal-energy analyser.

3. Biological Data Relevant to the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risk to Humans

3.1 Carcinogenicity studies in animals

(a) 3-Methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde

No data on the carcinogenicity of 3-methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde were available to the Working Group.

(b) 3-Methylnitrosaminopropionitrile

Subcutaneous and/or intramuscular administration: A group of 15 male and 15 female Fischer 344 rats, seven weeks of age, received thrice-weekly s.c. injections of 2.13 mg 3-methylnitrosaminopropionitrile (MNPN) (purity, >99%, as determined by high-performance liquid chromatography) in 0.3 ml saline for 20 weeks (total dose, 129 mg/rat or 646 mg/kg bw). A group of 12 males and 12 females served as vehicle controls. The experiment was terminated after 24 weeks because of significant weight loss in the treated animals. Statistically significant increases in tumour incidence were observed for the following neoplasms: (i) papillomas of the oesophagus in 12/15 treated males ($p < 0.01$) and 14/15 treated females ($p < 0.01$); 3/15 males and 2/15 females treated with MNPN also developed carcinomas of the oesophagus (significant at $p < 0.05$ for both sexes combined); (ii) papillomas of the nasal cavity in 11/15 treated males ($p < 0.01$) and 9/15 treated females ($p < 0.01$); (iii) papillomas and carcinomas of the tongue in 5/15 treated males ($p < 0.05$) and 6/15 treated females ($p < 0.05$). No tumour was seen in controls (Wenke *et al.*, 1984).

(c) N-Nitrosoguvaccine

No data on the carcinogenicity of N-nitrosoguvaccine were available to the Working Group.

(d) N-Nitrosoguvacoline

Oral administration: A group of 15 male and 15 female Sprague-Dawley rats, eight to 10 weeks of age, were given drinking-water containing 150 mg/l N-nitrosoguvacoline (no impurity detected by silica-gel thin-layer chromatography) on five days per week for 50 weeks (total dose, 750 mg/rat). All animals survived to the end of treatment and were observed until death or 133 weeks. At 100 weeks, 12 males and nine females were still alive; the four survivors were killed at 133 weeks. Thirty female and 26 male rats served as untreated [matched or historical unspecified] controls. No statistically significant increase in tumour incidence was found (Lijinsky & Taylor, 1976). [The Working Group noted the short duration of the treatment and the small number of animals used.]

3.2 Other relevant biological data

(a) Experimental systems

No data were available to the Working Group on toxic effects, on effects on reproduction and prenatal toxicity, or on absorption, distribution, excretion and metabolism.

Mutagenicity and other short-term tests

N-Nitrosoguvacine was not mutagenic to *Salmonella typhimurium* TA1535, the only strain tested, at doses of up to 600 µg/plate (3.8 µmol/plate) in the presence or absence of a liver microsomal preparation (S9) from non-induced or from Aroclor- or phenobarbital-induced rats (Rao *et al.*, 1977).

N-Nitrosoguvacoline caused a dose-dependent increase [at doses of 200-600 µg/plate (1.2-3.6 µmol/plate)] in mutations in *S. typhimurium* TA1535 in the presence of S9 from Aroclor- or phenobarbital-induced rats, the former being more active. No mutagenicity was observed in the absence of S9 or in the presence of S9 from uninduced rats (Rao *et al.*, 1977, 1978).

Concentrations of 10 and 20 mM *N-nitrosoguvacoline* fed to adult *Drosophila melanogaster* for two to three days did not induce sex-linked recessive lethal mutations in mature sperm or spermatids (Nix *et al.*, 1979).

No data were available on the mutagenicity of 3-methylnitrosaminopropionitrile or 3-methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde.

(b) Humans

No data were available to the Working Group.

3.3 Case reports and epidemiological studies of carcinogenicity in humans

No data were available to the Working Group.

4. Summary of Data Reported and Evaluation**4.1 Exposure data**

N-Nitrosoguvacoline and *N-nitrosoguvacine* have been found in the saliva of betel-quid chewers. Thus, there is some evidence that chewers are exposed to these compounds.

4.2 Experimental data

N-Nitrosoguvacoline was tested in one experiment in rats by administration in drinking-water. Although no increase in the incidence of tumours was detected, the experiment was not adequate to allow an evaluation of its carcinogenicity.

3-Methylnitrosaminopropionitrile was tested in one 24-week experiment in rats by subcutaneous injection. Within this short period, it produced multiple papillomas and carcinomas of the oesophagus and tongue, and papillomas of the nasal cavity.

No data were available to evaluate the carcinogenicity of *N-nitrosoguvacine* or 3-methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde to experimental animals.

The one available study was inadequate to evaluate the mutagenicity of *N-nitrosoguvacine* to *Salmonella typhimurium*.

N-Nitrosoguvacoline was mutagenic to *Salmonella typhimurium* in the presence of a metabolic system. It did not induce sex-linked recessive lethal mutations in *Drosophila melanogaster*.

No data were available to assess the mutagenic or related effects of 3-methylnitrosaminopropionitrile or 3-methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde.

Overall assessment of data from short-term tests: *N*-nitrosoguvacoline^a

	Genetic activity			Cell transformation
	DNA damage	Mutation	Chromosomal effects	
Prokaryotes	+			
Fungi/green plants				
Insects		—		
Mammalian cells (<i>in vitro</i>)				
Mammals (<i>in vivo</i>)				
Humans (<i>in vivo</i>)				
Degree of evidence in short-term tests for genetic activity: <i>inadequate</i>				Cell transformation: No data

^aThe groups into which the table is divided and '+' and '—' are defined on pp. 16-17 of the Preamble; the degrees of evidence are defined on p. 18.

4.3 Human data

No case report or epidemiological study of the carcinogenicity of these compounds to humans was available to the Working Group.

4.4 Evaluation¹

There is *sufficient evidence*² for the carcinogenicity of 3-methylnitrosaminopropionitrile to experimental animals. There is *inadequate* evidence to evaluate the carcinogenicity of *N*-nitrosoguvacoline to experimental animals. No data were available to assess the carcinogenicity of *N*-nitrosoguvacine or 3-methylnitrosaminopropionaldehyde to experimental animals.

No data on humans were available.

¹For description of the italicized term, see Preamble, pp. 15-16.

²In the absence of adequate data on humans, it is reasonable, for practical purposes, to regard chemicals for which there is *sufficient evidence* of carcinogenicity in animals as if they presented a carcinogenic risk to humans.

5. References

- Chang, S.K., Harrington, G.W., Veale, H.S. & Swern, D. (1976) The unusually mild and facile basic hydrolysis of *N*-nitroso-2-(methylamino)acetonitrile. *J. org. Chem.*, **41**, 3752-3755
- Lijinsky, W. & Taylor, H.W. (1976) Carcinogenicity test of two unsaturated derivatives of *N*-nitrosopiperidine in Sprague-Dawley rats. *J. natl Cancer Inst.*, **57**, 1315-1317
- Nair, J., Ohshima, H., Friesen, M., Croisy, A., Bhide, S.V. & Bartsch, H. (1985) Tobacco-specific and betel-nut-specific *N*-nitroso compounds: Occurrence in saliva and urine of betel quid chewers and formation *in vitro* by nitrosation of betel quid. *Carcinogenesis*, **6**, 295-303
- Nix, C.E., Brewen, B., Wilkerson, R., Lijinsky, W. & Epler, J.L. (1979) Effects of *N*-nitrosopiperidine substitutions on mutagenicity in *Drosophila melanogaster*. *Mutat. Res.*, **67**, 27-38
- Rainey, W.T., Christie, W.H. & Lijinsky, W. (1978) Mass spectrometry of *N*-nitrosamines. *Biochem. Mass Spectrometry*, **5**, 395-408 [Chem. Abstr., **90**, 86151t]
- Rao, T.K., Hardigree, A.A., Young, J.A., Lijinsky, W. & Epler, J.L. (1977) Mutagenicity of *N*-nitrosopiperidines with *Salmonella typhimurium*/microsomal activation system. *Mutat. Res.*, **56**, 131-145
- Rao, T.K., Hardigree, A.A., Young, J.A., Winton, W. & Epler, J.L. (1978) Mutagenicity of *N*-nitrosopiperidines: *in vitro* studies with the *Salmonella typhimurium* system (Abstract No. 2). *Mutat. Res.*, **53**, 66
- Wenke, G. & Hoffmann, D. (1983) A study of betel quid carcinogenesis. 1. On the *in vitro* *N*-nitrosation of arecoline. *Carcinogenesis*, **4**, 169-172
- Wenke, G., Brunnemann, K.D., Hoffmann, D. & Bhide, S.V. (1984a) A study of betel quid carcinogenesis. IV. Analysis of the saliva of chewers. A preliminary report. *J. Cancer Res. clin. Oncol.*, **108**, 110-113
- Wenke, G., Rivenson, A. & Hoffmann, D. (1984b) A study of betel quid carcinogenesis. III. 3-(Methylnitrosamino)propionitrile, a powerful carcinogen in F344 rats. *Carcinogenesis*, **5**, 1137-1140